Acknowledgments

During my time at the University of Liverpool I was the recipient of a Studentship awarded by GlaxoSmithKline. Without this financial support my studies would not have been possible. I would like to thank GlaxoSmithKline for the opportunity they have given me.

There are also a number of individuals I must thank. Firstly my supervisors, Prof Susan Higham for her advice, guidance, support and encouragement throughout my PhD studies. I would also like to thank both Dr Sabeel Valappil and Prof Richard Lynch for these same reasons and for lending me their expertise and insight. The encouragement I have received throughout my studies has proven invaluable and for this I will always be grateful. The advice of Dr Christopher Hope regarding the design and proper execution of in vitro biofilm models has also been instrumental in enabling the progression of this work.

I would also like to extend my thanks to Mr Lee Cooper for all of his tireless efforts, his skilful technical support, wisdom and advice. In particular, the execution of transverse micro-radiographic procedures and the exploration of electrophoretic separations would have not been possible if it were not for his assistance. For sharing their considerable knowledge concerning all aspects of transverse micro-radiography, I thank also Dr Elbert de Josselin de Jong and Dr Gleb Komorov. Thanks also to Dr Girvan Burnside for his help with matters more statistical.

The help of Dr Gary Burdette and Dr Richard Wilson is also greatly appreciated. Thanks also to all in the Dental Research Wing (Ms Khush Bakht, Ms Karen Van Daelen, Ms Emma Miles, Dr Jumoke Adeyemi, Dr Sophie Desmons, Ms Gill Lloyd, Ms Karen Billingsley and Dr John Stanbury). Having the opportunity to work with each of the persons above has been one of the best experiences.

Last, but by no means least, thanks to my friends and family. My Mum, Jay, Debbie, Nick, Ben, Danny, Laura, Rhodri and Jonathan. You read my work, spurred me on and kept me focused. For this, I owe you my deepest thanks.

You made good times great.

Thanks, Gareth.
Declaration

This thesis is the result of my own work. The work presented in this thesis has not been presented, nor is currently being presented, either wholly or in part for any other degree or qualification.

Research works were carried out within the School of Dentistry in the University of Liverpool.

Name: ..........................................................  Signed: ..................................................
# Thesis Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure Index</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table Index</td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>xv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research Communications</td>
<td>xvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 1: General Introduction</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 History and Evolution</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Modern Epidemiology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Current Concepts in Caries</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1 Enamel Mineral and Solubility</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2 Saliva and Dental Caries</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.3 Microbial Influence and the Ecological Plaque Hypothesis</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.4 Caries Lesion Formation</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Biological and Non-Biological Caries Models</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 General Objectives and Thesis Structure</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 2: Artificial Occlusal Surface Morphology and Enamel Demineralisation</strong></td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.0 Introduction</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.1 Aims and Objectives</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.0 Materials and Methods</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.1 Hydrogel Investigation Model (AGS)</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.2 pH Cycling Investigation Model</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.3 Transverse Micro-Radiography</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.4 Statistical Analysis</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.0 Results</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.1 QLF-D Inspection of Enamel Tissue Quality</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.2 Demineralisation at various Groove Depth in Static AGSs</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.3 Demineralisation at various Groove Depths in pH-Cycled Systems</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.0 Discussion</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.0 Conclusions</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 3: Enamel Tissue Orientation and the Onset of Enamel Demineralisation</strong></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.0 Introduction</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1 Aims and Objectives</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.0 Materials and Methods</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1 Prism Orientation and Enamel Demineralisation</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2 Demineralisation within U-Shaped Grooves</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3 Scanning Electron Microscopy</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4 TMR Experimental Specifics</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.0 Results</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1 SEM of Transverse Enamel Sections</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2 TMR of both Lateral- and Surface-Created Enamel Lesions</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3 TMR of U-Shaped Grooves</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.0 Discussion</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.1 Lesion Progression on Lateral and Natural Surfaces</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2 Preparation and Production of Lesions within U-Shaped Grooves</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.0 Conclusions</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 4: Abiotic Considerations for Biological Caries Models</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.0 Introduction</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1 Aims and Objectives</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.0 Materials and Methods</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.1 Buffering Capacity of Salivary Growth Medium (STGM)</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.2 Analysis of the Salivary Growth Medium (STGM)</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.0 Results</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.1 Buffering Capacity of Salivary growth Medium (STGM)</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.2.1CE Qualitative Composition of the Salivary Growth Medium (STGM)</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.2.2 CE Quantitative Composition of the Salivary Growth Medium (STGM)</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4.0 Discussion</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4.1 Buffering Capacity of the STGM</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4.2 Ionic Composition of the STGM</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5.0 Conclusions</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 5: Effect of Growth Medium Supply and on Enamel Demineralisation and Substratum Type on Biofilm Formation</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.0 Introduction</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.1 Aims and Objectives</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.0 Materials and Methods</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.1 Inoculum Preparation</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.2 CDFF design and dCDFF Set-Up</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.3 Biofilm Sampling and Substratum Extraction</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.2.4 Recovery and Enumeration of Oral Bacteria .......................................................... 99
5.2.5 TMR Experimental Specifics ................................................................................. 102
5.3.0 Results.................................................................................................................. 104
5.3.1 Enumeration of Biofilm Bacteria ......................................................................... 104
5.3.2 Transverse Micro-Radiography ........................................................................... 109
5.4.0 Discussion.............................................................................................................. 115
5.4.1 Biofilm Formation on HA and Enamel Substrata .................................................. 115
5.4.2 Biofilm Growth and Formation and Caries Lesions .............................................. 117
5.5.0 Conclusions ......................................................................................................... 122

Chapter 6: Influence of Sucrose vs. dH₂O on In Vitro Biofilm Formation and Sucrose-Induced Acidogenic Capacity................................................................. 123

6.1.0 Introduction .......................................................................................................... 123
  6.1.1 Aims and Objectives............................................................................................ 124
6.2.0 Materials and Methods......................................................................................... 125
  6.2.1 Biofilm Sampling Procedure .............................................................................. 127
  6.2.2 Plaque Fluid Extraction ...................................................................................... 127
  6.2.3 Organic Acid, Anion and Cation Analysis ........................................................... 128
6.3.0 Results.................................................................................................................. 129
  6.3.1 Enumeration of Biofilm Bacteria ........................................................................ 129
  6.3.2 Organic Acid, Anion and Cation Analysis ............................................................ 132
6.4.0 Discussion.............................................................................................................. 141
  6.4.1 Comparative Plaque-Fluid Composition ............................................................. 142
6.5.0 Conclusions ......................................................................................................... 147

Chapter 7: Bi-Circadian NaF vs. dH₂O Exposures, Sucrose-Induced Cariogenic Potential and Enamel Demineralisation. ................................................................. 148

7.1.0 Introduction .......................................................................................................... 148
  7.1.1 Aims and Objectives............................................................................................ 149
7.2.0 Materials and Methods......................................................................................... 150
7.3.0 Results.................................................................................................................. 155
  7.3.1 Enumeration of Biofilm Bacteria ........................................................................ 155
  7.3.2 Organic Acid and Anion Analysis ...................................................................... 166
  7.3.3 TMR of dCDFF Exposed Enamel Disks ............................................................. 174
7.4.0 Discussion.............................................................................................................. 179
  7.4.1 Microbial Composition of Plaque Biofilms ......................................................... 179
  7.4.2 Comparative Plaque Fluid Composition and Microbial Ecology......................... 181
Figure Index

Figure 1.1 (Factors Influencing the Development of Dental Caries) .................................................. 1
Figure 1.2a (World Health Organisation Data) .................................................................................. 3
Figure 1.2b (World Health Organisation Data) .................................................................................. 4
Figure 1.3 (Hydroxyapatite Structure) ............................................................................................... 5
Figure 1.4 (Chemical Structures of Enamel Minerals) ....................................................................... 6
Figure 1.5 (Oral Biofilm Development) ............................................................................................. 14
Figure 1.6 (Cariogenicity of Dental Plaque) ....................................................................................... 15
Figure 1.7 (Caries Lesion Formation) ................................................................................................. 17
Figure 1.8 (Carious Lesion Porosity) .................................................................................................. 19
Figure 1.9 (Constant Depth Film Fermenter; CDFF) ......................................................................... 21
Figure 1.10 (Thesis Structure) ........................................................................................................... 24
Figure 2.1.1 (Inverted Occlusal Surfaces) .......................................................................................... 25
Figure 2.1.2 (Average Occlusal Surface Angles) .............................................................................. 26
Figure 2.2.1 (Initial Enamel Sectioning Process) ............................................................................. 27
Figure 2.2.2 (BEBs Painting Process) ............................................................................................... 28
Figure 2.2.3 (BEB Groove Assembly Process) ................................................................................... 29
Figure 2.2.4 (Diamond Impregnated Grinding Disks) ....................................................................... 31
Figure 2.2.5 (Sample Frame Assembly) ............................................................................................ 31
Figure 2.2.6 (Sample Frame Radiography) ........................................................................................ 32
Figure 2.3.1 (QLF-D Aided Inspection of Enamel Tissue Quality) .................................................... 34
Figure 2.3.2 (TMR Parameters in Relation to θ) ............................................................................... 36
Figure 2.3.3 (Reconstructed Micro-Radiographs) ............................................................................. 37
Figure 2.3.4 (ΔZ Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions) .............................................. 37
Figure 2.3.5 (LD Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions) ............................................ 38
Figure 2.3.6 (R Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions) .............................................. 38
Figure 2.3.7 (S_{Max} Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions) ...................................... 39
Figure 2.3.8 (TMR Parameters in Relation to θ) ................................................................. 41
Figure 2.3.9 (ΔZ Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions) ................................ 41
Figure 2.3.10 (LD Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions) ................................ 42
Figure 2.3.11 (R Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions) ................................. 43
Figure 2.3.12 (S_{\text{Max}} Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions) .................. 44
Figure 3.1.1 (Chemical Heterogeneity of the Enamel Tissue) ............................................. 50
Figure 3.2.1 (BEBs Paining Process) ..................................................................................... 52
Figure 3.2.2 (BEBs Paining Process: Continued) ................................................................... 53
Figure 3.2.3 (BEBs Paining and Groove Carving) ................................................................. 54
Figure 3.2.4 (Comparison of the Various Demineralisation Systems Used) ......................... 55
Figure 3.3.1 (SEM Images of the Transverse Section before Acid-Etching) .......................... 57
Figure 3.3.2 (SEM Image of Dentine before Acid-Etching) .................................................. 58
Figure 3.3.3 (SEM Images of the Transverse Section after Acid-Etching) ............................ 59
Figure 3.3.5 (Reconstructed Micro-Radiographs) ................................................................. 60
Figure 3.3.6a (TMR Scan Profiles for Enamel Lesions created on Natural Surface of Lateral Sides) .... 61
Figure 3.3.6b (TMR Parameters for Lesions Created on Natural Surfaces or Lateral Sides) ..........62
Figure 3.3.7a (ΔZ Measurements at Increments from the EDJ) .............................................. 63
Figure 3.3.7b (LD Measurements at increments from the EDJ) .............................................. 63
Figure 3.3.8 (Example Micro-Radiographs) ......................................................................... 64
Figure 3.3.9 (Groove Depth Plotted against Distance from the EDJ) ....................................... 65
Figure 3.3.10 (Example Micro-Radiographs) ........................................................................ 66
Figure 3.3.11a (ΔZ Measurements from Carved Grooves incremented from the Enamel Surface) .... 67
Figure 3.3.11b (LD Measurements from Carved Grooves incremented from the Enamel Surface) ....68
Figure 3.3.11c (R Measurements from Carved Grooves incremented from the Enamel Surface) ......69
Figure 3.3.11d (S_{\text{Max}} Measurements from Carved Grooves incremented from the Enamel Surface) ..69
Figure 3.4.1 (Variation in the EDJ with Respect to the Enamel Surface) .................................. 74
Figure 4.2.1 (Calculation of Buffering Capacity) .................................................................... 79
Figure 4.2.2 (Schematic Design of the CE Technique) ................................................................. 79
Figure 4.2.3 (CE Sample Preparation) .......................................................................................... 80
Figure 4.3.1 (STGM Buffering Capacity both Before and After Sterilisation) .............................. 82
Figure 4.3.2 (Electropherogram of Anions Separated from the STGM) ........................................ 83
Figure 4.3.3 (Electropherogram of the Anion Level 1 Stock Solution) ........................................ 84
Figure 4.3.4 (Electropherogram of Cations Separated from the STGM) ........................................ 85
Figure 4.3.5 (Concentrations of Inorganic Ions with the STGM following Autoclaving) ............... 86
Figure 4.3.6 (Concentrations of Organic Ions within the STGM Following Autoclaving) .............. 86
Figure 4.4.1 (Buffering Capacity of Unstimulated Human Whole Saliva) ....................................... 87
Figure 4.4.2 (Bicarbonate Equilibrium) ...................................................................................... 88
Figure 4.4.3 (Amino Acids) ........................................................................................................ 89
Figure 4.4.4 (Saturation with Respect to Calcium Salts within the STGM) .................................. 92
Figure 5.2.1 (Cross-Sectional View of a Single PTFE Sample Pan) .............................................. 97
Figure 5.2.2 (Pulsing Strategy for Feast-Famine vs. Continuous-Flow Strategies) ....................... 98
Figure 5.2.3 (dCDFF Schematic Set-Up) .................................................................................... 103
Figure 5.3.1 (Fastidious Anaerobes; FA) ...................................................................................... 106
Figure 5.3.2 (Lactobacillus Spp.) ................................................................................................ 106
Figure 5.3.3 (Streptococcus Spp.) ................................................................................................ 107
Figure 5.3.4 (Mutans Streptococci; MS) ...................................................................................... 107
Figure 5.3.5 (Veillonella Spp.) .................................................................................................... 108
Figure 5.3.7 (TMR Scan Profiles for Lesions Created under a Continuous Flow of STGM) .......... 110
Figure 5.3.8 (TMR Scan Profiles for Lesions Created under a Feast-Famine Flow for STGM) ....... 110
Figure 5.3.9 (Radiographic Images of Transverse Enamel Sections) ........................................... 111
Figure 5.3.10 (ΔZ Measurements taken from CF and FF Conditions) .......................................... 112
Figure 5.3.11 (LD Measurements taken from CF and FF Conditions) ......................................... 113
Figure 5.3.12 (R Measurements taken from CF and FF Conditions) ........................................... 113
Figure 5.3.13 (Smax Measurements taken from CF and FF Conditions) ....................................... 114
Figure 5.4.1 (Successive Basis of Lamination Zone Formation) .......................................................... 119
Figure 6.1.1 (Sucrose Catabolism) ........................................................................................................ 123
Figure 6.2.1 (dCDFF Schematic Set-Up) ............................................................................................... 126
Figure 6.2.2 (Pulsing Strategy for 100 mM Sucrose vs. dH₂O Exposures) ................................................. 127
Figure 6.3.1 (Fastidious Anaerobes; FA) .................................................................................................. 129
Figure 6.3.2 (Lactobacillus Spp.) ............................................................................................................ 130
Figure 6.3.3 (Streptococcus Spp.) ........................................................................................................... 130
Figure 6.3.4 (Lactate PF Concentrations in Comparison by CDFF Condition) ............................................ 132
Figure 6.3.5 (Acetate PF Concentrations in Comparison by CDFF Condition) .......................................... 133
Figure 6.3.6 (Phosphate PF Concentrations in Comparison by CDFF Condition) ....................................... 134
Figure 6.3.7 (Butyrate PF Concentrations in Comparison by CDFF Condition) ........................................ 135
Figure 6.3.8 (Calcium PF Concentrations in Comparison by CDFF Condition) ......................................... 136
Figure 6.3.9a (Plaque Fluid Composition at 2 Days; 7 min after a 100 mM Sucrose Pulse) ...................... 137
Figure 6.3.9b (Plaque Fluid Composition at 2 Days; 7 min after a dH₂O Pulse) ......................................... 137
Figure 6.3.9c (Plaque Fluid Composition at 4 Days; 7 min after a 100 mM Sucrose Pulse) ...................... 138
Figure 6.3.9d (Plaque Fluid Composition at 4 Days; 7 min after a dH₂O Pulse) ......................................... 138
Figure 6.3.9e (Plaque Fluid Composition at 6 Days; 7 min after a 100 mM Sucrose Pulse) ...................... 139
Figure 6.3.9f (Plaque Fluid Composition at 6 Days; 7 min after a dH₂O Pulse) ......................................... 139
Figure 6.3.9g (Plaque Fluid Composition at 8 Days; 7 min after a 100 mM Sucrose Pulse) ...................... 140
Figure 6.3.9h (Plaque Fluid Composition at 8 Days; 7 min after a dH₂O Pulse) ......................................... 140
Figure 6.4.1 (Pyruvate Catabolism) ........................................................................................................ 143
Figure 7.2.1 (Enamel Disk Painting Process: Smooth Surfaces) .............................................................. 150
Figure 7.2.2 (Enamel Disk Painting Process: Fissured Surfaces) ............................................................. 151
Figure 7.2.3 (dCDFF Pulsing Strategy for both FF and CF Cycles: NaF vs. dH₂O) ................................. 153
Figure 7.2.4 (dCDFF Schematic Set-Up) ................................................................................................ 154
Figure 7.3.1a (Fastidious Anaerobes in Exp. 1; FA) .................................................................................. 155
Figure 7.3.1b (Fastidious Anaerobes in Exp. 2; FA) .................................................................................. 156
Figure 8.2.1 (dCDFF Sample Pan Arrangements) ................................................................. 193
Figure 8.2.2 (dCDFF Pulsing Strategies for Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O) ........................................ 195
Figure 8.2.3 (dCDFF Schematic Set-Up) ............................................................................. 196
Figure 8.3.1 (Fastidious Anaerobes; FA) ................................................................................ 197
Figure 8.3.2 (Lactobacillus Spp.) ......................................................................................... 198
Figure 8.3.3 (Streptococcus Spp.) ......................................................................................... 199
Figure 8.3.4 (Mutans Streptococci; MS) ............................................................................... 200
Figure 8.3.5 (Veillonella Spp.) ............................................................................................. 200
Figure 8.3.7a (TMR Parameters of Initially Sound Enamel Surfaces; Day 8) ......................... 203
Figure 8.3.7b (TMR Parameters of Initially Sound Enamel Surfaces; Day 16) ........................ 203
Figure 8.3.8 (TMR Parameters of Pre-Made Lesions Following Exposure within the dCDFF) 205
Figure 8.3.9 (CE Anion Trace) ............................................................................................ 206
Figure 8.3.10 (PF Lactate Concentrations) .......................................................................... 207
Figure 8.3.11 (PF Acetate Concentrations) .......................................................................... 207
Figure 8.3.12a (Plaque Fluid Composition on Day 8; Ca-Lactate Condition) ....................... 209
Figure 8.3.12b (Plaque Fluid Composition on Day 8; dH₂O Condition) ............................... 209
Figure 8.3.12c (Plaque Fluid Composition on Day 16; Ca-Lactate Condition) .................... 210
Figure 8.3.12d (Plaque Fluid Composition on Day 16; dH₂O Conditioned) ......................... 210
Figure 8.3.13 (PF Fluoride Concentrations) ......................................................................... 211
Figure 8.3.14 (PF Phosphate Concentrations) ..................................................................... 212
Figure 8.3.15 (PF Ammonium Concentrations) .................................................................. 212
Figure 8.3.16 (PF Calcium Concentrations) ....................................................................... 213
Figure 9.2.1 (sCDFF Pulsing Strategies for NaF vs. Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O) ......................... 225
Figure 9.2.2 (sCDFF Schematic Set-Up) ............................................................................. 227
Figure 9.3.1 (Fastidious Anaerobes; FA) .............................................................................. 229
Figure 9.3.2 (Lactobacillus Spp.) ......................................................................................... 230
Figure 9.3.3 (Streptococcus Spp.) ......................................................................................... 231
Table Index

Table 2.2.1 (Composition of De- and Re-Mineralising Solutions) ........................................................................29
Table 2.3.1 (TMR Parameters from AGS-Exposed Grooves) ........................................................................35
Table 2.3.2 (TMR Parameters from pH Cycling Exposed Grooves) .................................................................40
Table 3.3.1 (TMR Parameters from Natural and Lateral Enamel Surfaces) ......................................................60
Table 3.3.2 (TMR Parameters within Carved Grooves) ....................................................................................67
Table 4.2.1 (Composition of the STGM) ........................................................................................................78
Table 4.3.1 (Qualitative Analysis of Anions within the STGM) .......................................................................83
Table 4.3.2 (Qualitative Analysis of Cations within the STGM) ....................................................................84
Table 5.3.1 (TMR Parameters) ......................................................................................................................109
Table 7.2.1 (Experimental Parameters) .........................................................................................................152
Table 7.3.2 (TMR Parameters; Exp. 3) ..........................................................................................................174
Table 8.3.1 (TMR Parameters of Initially Sound Enamel Surfaces) ................................................................202
Table 8.3.2 (TMR Parameters of Pre-Made Enamel Lesions) .........................................................................204
Table 9.3.1 (TMR Parameters of SCDFF Enamel Lesions) .............................................................................235
Abstract

Dental caries is a significant disease world-wide and although a massive reduction in prevalence has occurred over the past 50 years, incidents of this disease persist (particularly on the occlusal or proximal surfaces and concerning younger demographics). The main reason for the observed reduction is exposure to fluoride either though water fluoridation and delivery by dentifrice. Environmental exposure reduces incidence by incorporation into the mineral phase of the hard tissue and, as a result, increases the resistance of the enamel mineral to acid-induced demineralisation. Several mechanisms have been proposed in an attempt to explain the caries-inhibiting effects of fluoride however its influence on the balance between de- and re-mineralisation episodes appears to be the principal route by which fluorides exert their effects.

Efforts geared towards the continual improvement of fluoride delivery systems have also been successful to some extent and thus further exploration shows promise of improving the anticaries efficacy further. However, a complication is met in that, in vivo, multiple factors interrelated and consequently, differences in the consortia within natural oral biofilms combined with unavoidable inter-individual variations confound clinical investigations and make the distinction between relevant aspects of the process difficult. One possible alternative strategy is the development of in vitro biological models to simulate this process to a point of reflecting the in vivo situation whilst retaining control over the parameters which are known to be crucial to the progression of the disease. To this end, the Constant-Depth Film Fermenter (CDFF) has emerged as powerful tool to potentially meet the needs of current in vitro research.

However, due to the lack of an inter-disciplinary approach to multi-faceted disease process, the full potential of the CDFF has not yet been reached. Therefore, the CDFF model was applied to study of anti-caries strategies which aimed to increase the persistence of the fluorides within natural microcosm biofilms. Enamel lesions were successfully produced within this system and, using a combination of both biological and non-biological demineralisations systems, the effects of anticaries agents (calcium and fluoride) were also investigated for their effects on lesion progression or reversal. Sodium fluoride (NaF; 300 ppm F) exposures exhibited an ambiguous response on the microbial community although definite anticaries activity. Conversely, calcium lactate pre-rinses (Ca-lactate; 100 mM) appears to possess some inhibitory activity on the biofilms produced within the model whereas a less effective anticaries activity was observed in comparison to NaF exposures alone. Thus, further investigation of the effects of Ca-lactate should be pursued.

Operation of the CDFF was also further developed to meet the needs of this study and analyses were performed on an integrative basis in order to capture the physiochemical events which take place during caries lesion formation. Microcosm plaques were shown to be highly diverse with respect to their community although homology was found on the bias of their ultimate definition, cariogenicity. The synthesis of inorganic mineral reservoirs within microcosm biofilms holds great potential for augmenting the physiology of the plaque and for increasing the efficacy of fluorides for prevention of enamel demineralisation. Microcosm biofilms may also have an adaptive capacity which could result in predicable response patterns. Ultimately, a holistic approach to the study of caries within a biological context provides greater insight into the caries process than approaches which lack specific interactions for the purposes of assigning direct relationships. With the successful development of a fully functional enamel caries model, the possibilities are endless.
Research Communications

Owens, GJ; Lynch, RJM; Valappil, SP; Higham, SM (2014) “Evidence of an In Vitro Coupled-Diffusion Mechanism of Lesion Formation within Microcosm Dental Plaque” Manuscript in Preparation.†

Owens, GJ; Valappil, SP; Lynch, RJM; Hope, CK; Higham, SM (2014) “Ecological Modification of In Vitro Microcosm Biofilms through Twice-Daily NaF Exposures” Manuscript in Preparation.†

Owens, GJ; Valappil, SP; Hope, CK; Lynch, RJM; Higham, SM; (2013) “In Vitro Biofilm Formation: NaF Exposures within a Sucrose Pulsing Strategy” 60th Annual ORCA Congress, Liverpool, UK.‡

Owens, GJ; Lynch, RJM; Valappil, SP; Higham, SM; (2011) “Artificial Occlusal Surface Morphology and In Vitro Enamel Demineralisation”. 58th Annual ORCA Congress, Kaunas, Lithuania.‡

Owens, GJ; Lynch, RJM; Valappil, SP; Hope, C; Lynch, RJM; Higham, SM; (2011) “Occlusal Surface Morphology and pH Cycling Effect on Enamel Demineralisation”. BSODR Conference, Sheffield, UK.‡

Owens, GJ; Lynch, RJM; Valappil, SP; Cooper, L; Higham, SM; (2010) “Tooth Surface Proximity and Orientation in Relation to Light-Induced Fluorescence”. ICQ2010 Conference, Liverpool, UK.†

Owens, GJ; Lynch, RJM; Valappil, SP; Cooper, L; Higham, SM; (2010) “Effect of hydrogel concentration and calcium activity on demineralisation”. 57th Annual ORCA Congress, Montpellier, FR.‡

Owens, GJ; Valappil, SP; Miller, G; Clowes, R; Lynch, RJM; Higham, SM; (2010) “Role of Gallium in Dental Mineralisation”. IADR Barcelona, Barcelona, ES.‡


Owens, GJ; Valappil, SP; Lynch, RJM; Cooper, L; Hope, CK; Higham, SM (2012) “In Vitro Caries: Dental Plaque Formation” PGR Conference (University of Liverpool), Liverpool, UK.§


Owens, GJ; Valappil, SP; Lynch, RJM; Cooper, L; Higham, SM (2011) “Dental Plaque as a Reservoir for Anti-Caries Active Agents” Dental Seminars (University of Liverpool), Liverpool, UK.§

Owens, GJ; Lynch, RJM; Cooper, L; Valappil, SP; Higham, SM (2011) “Dental Plaque as a Reservoir for Anti-Caries Active Agents: Occlusal Surface Morphology”. GSK Science Symposium, Weybridge, UK.§

Owens, GJ; Valappil, SP; Lynch, RJM; Cooper, L; Higham, SM (2010) “Dental Plaque as a Reservoir for Anti-Caries Active Agents: Calcium and Fluoride Relationships” Dental Seminars (University of Liverpool), Liverpool, UK.§

Owens, GJ; Lynch, RJM; Cooper, L; Valappil, SP; Higham, SM (2010) “Dental Plaque as a Reservoir for Anti-Caries Active Agents: Non-Biological Models”. GSK Science Symposium, Weybridge, UK.§

† Original Paper (Proposed Publication)
‡ Conference Contribution (Published Communication)
§ External or Internal Presentation (Unpublished Communication)
### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%Vol</td>
<td>Mineral Volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>µg</td>
<td>Microgram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>µL</td>
<td>Microliter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>µM</td>
<td>Micromolar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>µm</td>
<td>Micrometre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D</td>
<td>Three-Dimensional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGS</td>
<td>Acid-Gel System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANOVA</td>
<td>Analysis of Variance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMDL</td>
<td>Below the Minimum Detection Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDFF</td>
<td>Constant-Depth Film-Fermenter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CE</td>
<td>Capillary Electrophoresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>Continuous-Flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFU</td>
<td>Colony Forming Units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cm</td>
<td>Centimetre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dCDFF</td>
<td>Dual Constant Depth Film Fermenter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dH₂O</td>
<td>De-Ionised Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DS</td>
<td>Degree of Saturation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDJ</td>
<td>Enamel-Dentine Junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEPH</td>
<td>Extended Ecological Plaque Hypothesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELT</td>
<td>Enamel-Layer Thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPH</td>
<td>Ecological Plaque Hypothesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAA</td>
<td>Fastidious Anaerobe Agar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF</td>
<td>Feast-Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHA</td>
<td>Flour-Hydroxyapatite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>Gram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>Hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HA</td>
<td>Hydroxyapatite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAP</td>
<td>Ionic Activity Product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KₛP</td>
<td>Solubility Product Constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Litre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LD</td>
<td>Lesion Depth (µm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Molar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDL</td>
<td>Minimum Detection Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min</td>
<td>Minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mL</td>
<td>Millilitre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mM</td>
<td>Millimolar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mm</td>
<td>Millimetre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSA</td>
<td>Mitis-Salivarius Agar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSPH</td>
<td>Non-Specific Plaque Hypothesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCP</td>
<td>Octacalcium Phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pf</td>
<td>Plaque Fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFL</td>
<td>Pyruvate-Formate Lyase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pKₐ</td>
<td>Acid Dissociation Constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ppm</td>
<td>Parts per Million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Average Mineral Loss (%Vol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>Standard Deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEM</td>
<td>Scanning Electron Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sₘₐₓ</td>
<td>Surface Later Mineralisation (%Vol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPH</td>
<td>Specific Plaque Hypothesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Tricalcium Phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMR</td>
<td>Transverse Micro-Radiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TYCSB</td>
<td>Tryptone Yeast-Extract Cystine Agar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w/v</td>
<td>Weight for Volume (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΔLD</td>
<td>Change in Lesion Depth (µm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΔR</td>
<td>Change in Average Mineral Loss (%Vol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΔSₘₐₓ</td>
<td>Change in Surface Later Mineralisation (%Vol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΔZ</td>
<td>Integrated Mineral Loss (%Vol.µm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΔΔZ</td>
<td>Change in Integrated Mineral Loss (%Vol.µm)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1: General Introduction

Dental caries is a progressive demineralisation of the dental hard tissues which occurs as a result of acidogenic bacterial metabolism. It is considered one of the most prevalent diseases worldwide [Selwitz et al., 2007] and develops through a complex interaction between acid-producing or acidogenic bacteria, the availability of fermentable carbohydrate and various other host-specific factors such as the teeth themselves and the saliva. It is the concerted action of these factors (Figure 1.1) which results in the characteristic breakdown of the hard tissues (enamel or dentine) known as a caries lesion [Fejerskov et al., 2008a]. Over time and in the absence of intervention, the disease may often progress to a painful and debilitating condition and, dependent on location and extent, further problems may arise with regard to mastication or ascetic perception [Locker, 1992]. Ultimately, a significant reduction in health-related quality of life is the result [Gerritsen et al., 2010].

![Figure 1.1 (Factors influencing the Development of Dental Caries):](image)

Carious lesions form from a specific interaction of the microbial consort present in the oral environment, the dental hard tissues (the enamel, cementum or dentine) and the oral environment itself (Figure 1.1b). The non-shedding dental hard tissues provide a stable surface for the formation of multi-species microbial biofilms [Marsh, 2004] and the oral cavity provides both nutrients for growth and a relatively stable environment [Marsh and Martin, 2009a]. Problems arise once a biofilm community becomes established; frequent exposure to carbohydrates affect a shift in the
biofilm composition to one which is able to metabolise these substrates more efficiently and in the process, produce acids which dissolve the underlying enamel substratum. Essentially, the physical state of the plaque biofilm modulates the process of both de- and re-mineralisation [Kidd and Fejerskov, 2004].

1.1 History and Evolution
Some of the earliest known evidence suggests that caries has been present since the very beginnings of human existence [Hillson, 2008; Lanfranco and Eggers, 2012] (i.e. the point at which the human species may be defined). Moreover, evidence also suggests common parallels in various mammals including the great apes [Hillson, 1996] and therefore advocates the assertion that the mechanistic basis of the disease itself may predate the Homo sapien species in an evolutionary sense. Further to this, the frequency with which archaeological evidence of dental caries is found is with such consistency that post-mortem dental assessment is generally considered as an appropriate source of anthropological data on prehistoric dietary habits of [Hillson, 2008]. In this respect, dental caries may be considered as a natural phenomenon, part of the expected or ingenerate deterioration of the teeth, but it is important to remember that, with respect to the individual, the disease is one which is influenced by collective behaviours and the environment (Figure 1.1). In support of this view, stochastic arguments [Manji et al., 1991] have also provided evidence that such a non-deterministic epidemiology could be true for modern day populations to some extent.

Diet is a well-established contributing factor but by no means the only one (Figure 1.1). Further factors involved such as the necessity for microbial inoculation [Featherstone, 2008], communicability [Caufield et al., 2005; Hanada, 2000] and opportunities to alleviate or circumvent the condition [Fejerskov and Manji, 1990] also have an influence. This creates an opposition to the view that caries will occur with or without human intervention and therefore allows research to strive towards a point of complete or near complete eradication [NIH, 2001].

Unlike many diseases, for dental caries there is no singular, clearly-defined causation pathway. Rather, pathogenesis is the result of many factors which must be present under the correct conditions over a sustained period of time. Nevertheless, multifaceted diseases such as caries may still be understood in terms of their associated factors and the weighted risk thereof [Burt et al., 2008; Fejerskov, 2004]. Although definite diagnoses cannot be always drawn, these associated factors may in turn be used as a proxy to identify those individuals whom are at most risk and thus may provide an opportunity for prophylactics if necessary [Balakrishnan et al., 2000].
1.2 Modern Epidemiology

Dental caries is regarded as a significant community health problem [Bedi et al., 2013; NIH, 2001]. In modern history, major leaps forward have been achieved, particularly in the more developed countries [Burt et al., 2008] and most notably due to the introduction of fluorides either through dentifrices [Marinho et al., 2003a, b; Walsh et al., 2010] or water fluoridation [Featherstone, 1999; Kumar, 2008]. However distribution and severity of prevalence still tends to be weighted towards more socioeconomically deprived or geographically isolated populations [Burt et al., 2008; Delgado-Angulo et al., 2009; Kumar, 2008; ten Cate, 2009]. Further, the aetiology within those populations which have seen a greater overall improvement over the past decades appears increasingly altered [Batchelor and Sheiham, 2004; Beltrán-Aguilar et al., 2005; Brown and Selwitz, 1995; Caplan and Weintraub, 1993; Delgado-Angulo et al., 2009; ten Cate, 2009]. In developed countries, incidence of caries have now been greatly reduced on the coronal and smooth surfaces of the teeth but are still present particularly at plaque retention sites on the occlusal or approximal surfaces [Batchelor and Sheiham, 2004; Berman and Slack, 1973; Hannigan et al., 2000]. There are a number of important factors which have contributed to these altered trends; most notably the introduction of fluorides and access to oral health care [NIH, 2001]. The WHO Oral Health Report [Petersen, 2003] stated that dental caries is thought to affect between 60% and 90% of school children and the vast majority of adults within linked demographic groups. Within this same report it was also noted that in many areas of the world dental caries is still considered one of the most prevalent of all oral diseases and that variations between and within demographics are continually apparent (Figure 1.2a).

**Figure 1.2a (World Health Organisation Data):** Summary of WHO data on caries severity for all countries where data was made available. Scores are normalised world-wide ranked as: Very High (■) > High (■) > Moderate (■) >Low (■) >Very Low (■) and Unknown (■). This data was based on DMFT scores collected for 12 year old children by the WHO [WHO, 2000].
Considering the cost of dental caries, recent figures from the British Dental Association (2005 - 2006) estimate the cost of oral diseases to the United Kingdom National Health Service to be £2.57bn per annum with a further £2bn billed through the private sector [Moynihan, 2009]. In equivalence for the year 2013, these values approach £2.9bn and £2.26bn respectively. Economic costs are further exacerbated by a consequential impact on the rates of absenteeism from education or work.

The relationships between changing access to healthcare and diet have been demonstrated here as some of the factors for which knowledge has contributed to our understanding of a revised trend. However, the differences visually apparent in Figure 1.2a and Figure 1.2b may mask deeper trends as we see these differences not only between countries but also between demographics and at an individual level [Burt et al., 2008]. It is these differences which cause the majority of problems when healthcare providers attempt to devise new and improved treatment plans since they need to be applied to an entire population. Efforts which strive towards a preventative approach have also become increasingly attractive as an alternative to surgical management [Selwitz et al., 2007] although this view is not held without the realisation that the best way to alleviate caries is to augment the behaviour of the individual [NIH, 2001].

1.3 Current Concepts in Caries
Factors such as socio-demographic status, income, habits or oral hygiene, attitudes and education are all able to be used as determiners for those individual who are at greater risk of developing the disease (Figure 1.1). Persons on a lower income are generally more likely to experience caries than
those who earn more. Likewise, negative or apathetic attitude towards oral health or regular clinical examinations are usually associated with the same problem. However although these factors are considered useful in identifying at-risk individuals, their efficacy is low [Reisine and Psoter, 2001]. Even the correct designation of an individual into one of these groups does not ensure the correct treatment plan would be applied. For this reason it is important to look further into the factors which are known to contribute. These are the factors which are specific to the oral environment. Knowledge of these internal factors may enable a much more accurate determination of the risk of developing dental caries.

1.3.1 Enamel Mineral and Solubility

Dental enamel is composed of a highly mineralised tissue similar to hydroxyapatite (HA) with the unit cell $\text{Ca}_{10}(\text{PO}_4)_6\text{OH}_2$ [Kay et al., 1964]. However, the biological apatite structure of enamel is able to accept various substitutions whilst still retaining a generally hexagonal crystal structure [LeGeros, 1981] as opposed to the monoclinic form associated with pure stoichiometric HA [Ruben et al., 1999]. Therefore, dental enamel is often considered an impure form of carbonated hydroxyapatite and the significance of this is that both the degree and combination of these substitutions alters mineral solubility [Robinson et al., 1995a].

![Figure 1.3](Hydroxyapatite Structural Arrangement: The inclusion of various ions within the stoichiometric crystal structure results in an expansion of contraction of the axis and thus alteration from the structural form illustrated. This can increase or decrease in stability and therefore alter the dissolution kinetics of the mineral; hydroxyl ions are shown in green ($\bullet$) phosphate ions in red ($\bigcirc$) and calcium ions in orange ($\bigcirc$); a) view down the hydroxyl column; both diagrams were adapted from Robinson et al. [1995b].)

A central factor which dictates the initiation of caries is the degree of saturation (DS) of the solution in immediate contact with the enamel surface as it is dissolution of the mineralised tissue which is an essential factor for caries progression (Figure 1.1). The DS for any salt is calculated from the ionic activity product (IAP) divided by the solubility product constant ($K_{sp}$) for the salt in question. In the case of dental enamel, many approximations as the $K_{sp}$ have been made [Aoba, 2004; Patel and Brown, 1975]. However, the effect on saturation is complicated by factors including the ability of
apatites to incorporate substitutions (and the resultant affects these on the $K_{sp}$) [LeGeros, 1981] and a natural variability of tissue itself [Theuns et al., 1986b]. Hence, several approximations have been made as to a representative stoichiometry for the enamel mineral (Figure 1.4) although it is widely accepted that substitutions which create strain in the lattice will increase the $K_{sp}$ and those which reduce strain or lattice dimensions will lower it. Figure 1.4a illustrates a generalised structure calculated using human enamel [Aoba, 2004]. Clearly, the natural tissue itself would provide the best substrate for experimentation [Mellberg, 1992]. However, for the general purpose of studying the factors which alter the potential for de- or re-mineralisation, a simpler model is usually adopted (HA; Figure 1.4b) as an analogue [Driessens, 1982].

The importance of adopting this putative composition is that from this, the $K_{sp}$ can be calculated. This allows for the determination of the point at which any solution would become saturated with respect to this mineral and therefore the point at which de- or remineralisation would be favoured. However, calculation of the $K_{sp}$ alone does not provide full information on the mineralisation process. The ionic activity product (IAP) of the solution in immediate contact with the surface of the enamel must also be known in order to provide reference point within the physical environment. Furthermore, such thermodynamic qualities only provide information on how a reaction should proceed when in reality the kinetics of mineralisation will also have a significant influence. The IAP is the $n^{th}$ root of the product of the activities of the ions relevant to the salt in question raised to the proportion to which they constitute the salt where “$n$” is the sum of ions within the unit cell (Figure 1.4d). When the IAP is equal to the $K_{sp}$ the solution is at equilibrium. When the IAP is a value greater than the $K_{sp}$ remineralisation is be favoured and when the IAP is less than the $K_{sp}$ the result is an indication for demineralisation. As is evident from Figure 1.4d, a reduction in the chemical activity of any one of the species which constitute the mineral will result in a reduction in the IAP. Based on Le Chatellier’s principle that any system at equilibrium will react to dissipate any change imposed on it, the introduction or removal of one species will result in a shift in the system so that IAPs will again

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical Structures of Enamel Minerals:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| a) $(Ca)_{5-x}(Mg)_x(Na)_4(HPO_4)_6(CO_3)_w(PO_4)_{3-y}(OH)_{1-2}(F)_2$ | b) $(Ca)_3(PO_4)_3(OH)$  
| c) $(Ca)_5(PO_4)_3(OH)_{1-x}(F)_x$ | d) $IAP_{HA} = \sqrt[5]{(\text{Ca}^5)(\text{PO}_4^3)(\text{OH})}$

Figure 1.4 (Chemical Structures of Enamel Minerals): a) Proposed ionic formula for human enamel [Aoba, 2004] where $y = x - q - u$; b) Stoichiometric structure of the mineral hydroxyapatite; c) Ionic formula for the fluoridated hydroxyapatite mineral (a mineral composed of both hydroxyapatite and fluorapatite); d) Ionic activity product calculation for hydroxyapatite.
satisfy $K_{sp}$. Thus, it is apparent from the definition of IAP that additional $Ca^{2+}$ would increase IAP and so would reduce the likelihood of mineral dissolution (as would the addition of $PO_4^{3-}$ or $OH^-$).

Although the oral environment is not a closed system, sources of calcium are nevertheless appreciable [ten Cate, 2004], particularly from a perspective of raising the IAP to encourage remineralisation or cariostaticity. The determination of IAP and $K_{sp}$ is also particularly useful when comparing the effect of ionic substitutions such as those of $F^-$ and $CO_3^{2-}$. Different substitutions may also incorporate into the HA lattice heterogeneously and so when evaluating the DS for a complex mixture, such calculations may not provide a complete picture of the mineralisation process [Aoba, 2004] and therefore the DS should only be used as an approximation to the situation which may occur or to provide support for conclusions draw from further, more definitive, parameters.

One of the most important substitutions is the inclusion of ionic fluoride ($F^-$) in place of $OH^-$ ($Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH_{1-x}F_x$) [Fejerskov et al., 1994; Robinson, 2009]. As noted above, the enamel mineral is composed primarily of $Ca^{2+}$, $PO_4^{3-}$ and $OH^-$ each of which contribute the IAP when present in solution. It is their contribution to the IAP in solution and their susceptibility to pH-induced changes which results in the sensitivity of enamel to acidic challenges. Interactions of ionic hydrogen ($H^+$) with $PO_4^{3-}$ and $OH^-$ effectively remove these species from the system by reactions which form $HPO_4^{2-}$ and $H_2O$ respectively [Featherstone, 1977]. Although not removed completely, the relevant ionic species are lost and a decreases in the DS results. The incorporation of $F^-$ in place of $OH^-$ is not impervious to this phenomenon however $F^-$ is capable of reducing enamel solubility and enhancing remineralisation though an alteration of these, and other, processes [Bollet-Quivogne et al., 2005].

Fluoride significantly reduces the $K_{sp}$ of the enamel mineral [Larsen, 1986; Margolis et al., 1986]. Interestingly the greatest reduction in bulk mineral solubility is achieved by only partial inclusion in the lattice [Moreno et al., 1974]. This heightened stability with only partial substitution has been explained on the basis of the fluoride-induced disorder in the orientation of the $OH^-$ column along the lattice [Aoba, 1997] therefore stabilising the $OH^-$ column within [Robinson et al., 1995a]. However, the protective effects of fluoride are not instantaneous. Fluoride is thought to be incorporated into the enamel mineral over a period of time [Featherstone, 1999] and an explanation for this lies in the mechanism by which fluoride is incorporated.

As noted above, enamel is a chemically heterogeneous mineral [Robinson et al., 1995a] and the fluoride-free mineral is more liable to acid-induced dissolution than the fluoridated form [Robinson et al., 2000]. Before exposure to the oral environment the enamel mineral is partially composed of impurities such as $CO_3^{2-}$ and $Mg^{2+}$ however ions such as these reduced the stability of the mineral whereas fluoride increase it [Aoba, 1997; Robinson, 2009]. The result of this is that as the pH is
reduced during acidic challenge, the solution in immediate contact with the enamel surface remains saturated with respect to the fluoridated mineral for longer than for the fluoride-free mineral [Lynch et al., 2006] therefore favouring the replacement of the fluoride-free mineral by the precipitation of a fluoridated phase. Further to this, fluoride bound to the immediate enamel surface may also protect from acid dissolution [Robinson et al., 1995a] by reducing the surface pH and thus inhibiting protonation [Robinson et al., 2006]. The requirement of lattice vacancies or opportunities for precipitation for fluoride incorporation means that fluoride must be available during a demineralising challenge in order to exert its protective effect(s) [Featherstone, 1999].

Fluoride is a unique in that it is both an accelerator of mineralisation and an inhibitor of demineralisation. The exact process by which the enamel mineral precipitates is still a subject for debate however there is compelling evidence that the HA form precipitates from hydrated layers of plate-like octacalcium phosphate (OCP) and to this end, fluoride is able to facilitate the re-arrangement of adjacent OCP layers into a HA lattice [Tomazic et al., 1989]. However, if the formation of OCP is not kinetically favoured in the mineralising media, fluoride can also be precipitated directly into the HA lattice or substitute for OH⁻ [Aoba et al., 2003] if the driving force (i.e. the degree of saturation) is high enough.

Free ionic species and the medium in which they exist are therefore of crucial importance in determining dissolution behaviour. In addition, the DS may not be solely dependent on bulk mineral dissolution but may also be significantly affected by further aspects of the media. Aspects such as the influence of interchangeable ionic species noted above but also inter-chelating agents [Rose, 2000b; ten Cate et al., 2008] and mechanistic [Buzalaf et al., 2011] or biological reservoirs [Rose, 2000b; Vogel et al., 2010]. The reasons for this are due to the dynamic nature of the interactions between ionic species. When considering the interaction between ions which are relevant to mineralisation, it is important to note that a number of interactions may occur, this can result in the formation of non-apatitic mineral phases such as CaF₂ [Christoffersen et al., 1995], calcite and brushite. By their very nature as ions, the elements are also able to bind to many other sites such as carbonate and phosphate groups. Furthermore, it is important to consider that the oral fluids which surround the dental hard tissues are considerably dissimilar with respect to their composition and may also be compositionally localised such as is the case for the plaque-fluid (PF) [Jenkins, 1966].

1.3.2 Saliva and Dental Caries
Saliva is the principle fluid present in the oral environment. Its primary purposes include to lubricate the oral surfaces [Amerongen and Veerman, 2002; Ship, 2004], confer protection from viruses, bacteria and other invading organisms [Marsh and Martin, 2009b; Tenovuo, 2004], to aid in the
digestive process and mastication [Amerongen and Veerman, 2002; Mandel, 1987] and to provide a protective environment for the dental hard tissues [Hannig, 2002; ten Cate, 2004]. The composition of saliva has been the subject of several in-depth books and review papers [Amerongen and Veerman, 2002; Dowd, 1999; Edgar and Higham, 1995; Larsen and Pearce, 2003; Lenander-Lumikari and Loimaranta, 2000]. Each of which sought, in part, to delineate the relationship between salivary composition and dental mineral dissolution (the beginnings of the caries process discussed above).

With respect to dental caries, the main protective effects conferred by saliva are due to buffering [Edgar and Higham, 2004; ten Cate, 2004] and the clearance of dietary carbohydrates [Dawes, 2004b]. Saliva also contains various constitutes which are able to help maintain a relatively neutral pH (such as PO$_4^{3-}$ and peptide fragments) although buffering capacity is principally derived by the presence of bicarbonate (H$_2$CO$_3$) [Dowd, 1999], phosphate may play a minor role [Lenander-Lumikari and Loimaranta, 2000]. Increased salivary flow increases the buffering capacity of the saliva [Bardow et al., 2000] and therefore conferring improved protection from cariogenic challenges [Dodds et al., 2005]. However, a definitive relationship between unstimulated salivary flow rate and caries incidence remains to be proven conclusively [Lenander-Lumikari and Loimaranta, 2000] perhaps due to the inter-individual variations which are inherent in clinical trials [Larsen et al., 1999]. Various other constitutes of saliva are nevertheless crucial for it to fulfil the variety of the functions which it has [Amerongen and Veerman, 2002; Bardow et al., 2008; Dodds et al., 2005; Rudney, 2000]. Within the oral environment the invasion of pathogenic organisms and virus is hindered by immunological factors (sIgA, Lysozyme Lactoferrin and Myeloperoxidases) [Amerongen and Veerman, 2002] and enhanced clearance following bacterial aggregation [Tenovuo, 2004]. However during a cariogenic challenge, saliva is not in direct contact with the point of lesion formation rather it is the fluid phase of dental plaque (the PF) which is [Duckworth and Gao, 2006].

Although the major source of fluid within the oral environment, saliva only forms the basis of supragingival PF due in part to the fact that life in the biofilm state enables microbial communities mediate their environment [Gilbert et al., 2002]. It is therefore plays a role in maintaining (but does not dictate) PF composition and mineral equilibrium. Nowhere is this more important than during metabolic activity within the biofilm where the PF may become under-saturated with respect to the mineral phase of the dental tissue [Margolis and Moreno, 1994] however the composition of the PF is nevertheless mediated by the physiology of the microbes which exist within the biofilm [Bowden and Li, 1997; Edgar and Higham, 1990; Margolis and Moreno, 1994; Vogel et al., 1990]. Saliva is able to return the PF to a point of saturation through the neutralisation of harmful plaque acids [Stookey, 2008] helping to maintain a stable environment and thus prevent mineral dissolution [Duckworth
Further to this, the PF is able to accumulate ions which are relevant to the caries process [Edgar and Tatevossian, 1971] which are themselves provided by both the saliva and retained from the mineral following some level of dissolution.

Since the early measurements conducted by Tatevossian and Gould [1976], it has become apparent that with analysing the composition of the PF, an array of species are involved in determining saturation respect to enamel mineral [Higham and Edgar, 1989; Margolis and Moreno, 1992; Margolis et al., 1985] as are the length of exposure to undersaturated conditions, the severity of the demineralising challenge and the frequency at which these “cariogenic challenges” occur [Marsh and Nyvad, 2008; ten Cate et al., 2008].

The ability of saliva to deliver caries inhibiting agents to the tooth surface is also an important property of this fluid. The immunological factors may help to inhibit pathogenic organisms and prevent bacterial overgrowth but these functions are not fully maintained within the PF. Biofilms provide an anchorage within the physical environment and a generally greater resistance to environmental stresses or antimicrobial agents [Gilbert et al., 2002]. Specifically to dental plaque, the aspects of the immunological system (such as slgA, IgG and IgM) are degraded by proteolysis within the plaque whilst retaining some ability for agglutination [Hsu and Cole, 1985] and therefore providing an example of the ability of microbial populations within biofilms to take advantage of factors which would present a disadvantage to life in the planktonic state.

Saliva is also naturally supersaturated with respect to the enamel mineral [Hay et al., 1982] however, spontaneous precipitation of calcium-containing mineral phases are inhibited by the presence of proteins such as proline-rich proteins (PRPs), histatins, cystatins and statherin [ten Cate, 2004]. The same proteins are also able to adhere to the enamel surface producing a thin film approximately 0.1 µm thick known as the acquired enamel pellicle (AEP). Following adherence, salivary proteins may undergo a conformational change [Lendenmann et al., 2000] and the resulting AEP layer both protects the surface enamel from dissolution [Featherstone et al., 1993; Zahradnik et al., 1976] and enables pioneer organisms to such as Streptococcus spp. [Gibbons et al., 1986; Gibbons and Hay, 1989] and Actinomyces viscous [Gibbons and Hay, 1988; Gibbons et al., 1988] to adhere to the surface thus forming biofilms [Marsh and Martin, 2009c]. Given the antimicrobial actions and attachment-facilitating properties of saliva, this fluid therefore provides both negative selection for life in the planktonic state and positive selection for the formation of a biofilm [Rudney, 2000] and therefore the construction of micro-environments which are essentially unique from that of the saliva [Beer and Stoodley, 2006; Edgar and Higham, 1990; Vogel et al., 1990].
One of the most important roles of saliva is that of a nutrient source for microbial community itself [Bowden and Li, 1997]. Once a biofilm community has become established, a complex network of physical interactions and food webs become established whereby the metabolic end products of some species become the nutrient sources for others. The most well-know of these is the relationship between Veillonella spp. and lactic acid-producing bacteria [Spratt and Pratten, 2003]. Veillonella spp. are able to metabolise lactate releasing energy in the form of ATP and weaker high pKₐ acids as metabolic end products [Rogosa and Bishop, 1964]. In such a relationship the benefit for the consumer is clear although there are wider implications which could result from the higher pKₐ acid anion as is described in the following the sections (Section 1.3.3 and Section 1.3.4). Further to this, the saliva helps to perpetuate the very existence of the microbes which inhabit the oral environment by acting as a vehicle for transmission of the community from one host to another [Balakrishnan et al., 2000].

Furthermore, the vast array of microbes present in vivo [Aas et al., 2005] are likewise able to metabolise a wide range of organic substrates. As noted above, this is this may result in the utilisation of end products however the collective metabolic capacity of several species may also enable direct utilisation of different salivary constitutes or co-operative degradation through action of externally secreted enzymes. Also, it should be noted that constitutes of the saliva are not all used in a classical sense of nutrition. In viewing a biofilm as a collective or super-organism [Buchen, 2010] it is understood that the physical structure and composition thereof plays a central role in modulating the physiological conditions of the biofilm. To this end, nutrients which are provide by the saliva may also be utilised for the formation of exo-polymeric substances (EPS) which form the mature biofilm matrix and thus modulate the diffusion of salivary nutrients themselves and the end products noted above [Bowden and Li, 1997].

1.3.3 Microbial Influence and the Ecological Plaque Hypothesis

Since the theory of “The Worm” (5000 BC), advances in our understanding of dental caries have been progressed enormously [Flannigan, 2005]. Miller [1890] was the first to summarise that the role of microbial fermentation (and the subsequent production of acids) which lead to the disintegration of the mineral within dental hard tissues [Köhler, 1974]. Currently the Ecological Plaque Hypothesis (EPH) [Marsh, 1994] is the most widely accepted theory to explain the formation and progression of dental caries [Marsh and Martin, 2009a]. This theory emphasises the point that no one specific organism or agent is responsible for the formation of a cariogenic plaque. This is in opposition to other, theories where all dental diseases (not least of all dental caries) were thought to be the result of a discrete disease causing factor (Specific Plaque Hypothesis; SPH) [Loesche, 1976]. Like the SPH, the EPH accepts that something unique must exist about an established plaque
community which results in caries formation [Marsh, 2003b] but essentially, both of these are in contrast to the Non-Specific Plaque Hypothesis (NSPH) which associates oral diseases with a build-up plaque without distinction of the ecology or capacity of the biofilm [Theilade, 1986]. The distinction of the EPH is that the specific ecology of the plaque following establishment and, crucially, frequent exposure to fermentable carbohydrates are the determining factors for the carcinogenicity of the biofilm [Marsh, 2003b].

Recently however, the EPH has been revisited with the aim of taking account of the processes which are known to result in the ecological shift toward a cariogenic state and how this relates to both clinical presentations and the assumed condition of the underlying substratum. This refinement has been dubbed the Extended Ecological Plaque Hypothesis (EEPH) [Takahashi and Nyvad, 2008] and in its entirety, the EEPH expresses great similarity to the EPH. Dental plaque is noted as a dynamic microbial ecosystem in which Streptococcus spp. (both mutans and non-mutans groups) and Actinomyces spp. are central in maintaining a point known as dynamic stability [Takahashi and Nyvad, 2008]. This is the point at which the biofilm has matured and is followed by adaptation and changes in the relative proportions of the biofilm community. However, at this point the properties of the biofilm remain stable with respect to cariogenic potential. The bacteria present have the ability to produce acids via fermentation and these acids have the potential to demineralise the dental hard tissues although these events are quickly offset and the biofilm pH is easily returned to neutral level by buffering agents within and the metabolic activity of the microbes themselves [Marsh and Martin, 2009a]. In effect, cariogenic challenges are produced by microbial fermentation and it is the severity of the challenge which is altered by a change in the microbial ecology.

If buffering capacity proves inadequate or the frequency of carbohydrate intake is excessive, the biofilm will become exposed to increasingly prolonged acidic conditions [Marsh and Bradshaw, 1997]. As a result of an adaptive selection process, species which are able to withstand this pH shift gain a selective advantage over those which are not [Marsh, 2003b]. Thus these resistant community members proliferate along with those which produce acids themselves (as acidogenic bacteria are, through their own evolution, aciduric). The pH of the biofilm thus decreases further during each cariogenic challenge further enhancing acidogenicity. However, the persistence of this state following an ecological shift has yet to be addressed fully. The acidic conditions produced by fermentation confer a selective advantage over for those species which are unable to tolerate such conditions [Bradshaw et al., 1989]. However if the acidic episodes are reduced then this selective advantage would be lost. Colonisation resistance may maintain the community for a period of time [Sissons et al., 1995] but in the absence of this selective pressure may, in effect, alter the niche
environment to one in which less acidogenic species can compete and thus replace proportions of the acidogenic species. In this way, the plaque biofilm may have the capacity to revert back to a less cariogenic state if the removal of the selective pressure presents some benefit to such a community.

Although consensus agreement has moved away from the use of the SPH to explain caries aetiology, alterations to the plaque ecology facilitate the predomination of specific acidogenic and aciduric species [Marsh, 2006]. Streptococcus spp. and Lactobacillus spp. were some of the first microorganisms to be implicated in the causation of dental caries [Fitzgerald et al., 1966; Orland et al., 1954]. Since this point, Streptococcus spp. [Bowen, 1996; Kivelä et al., 1999b; Kleinberg, 2002], Lactobacillus spp. [Becker et al., 2002; Kivelä et al., 1999b; Marsh and Martin, 2009b] and mutans streptococci [Balakrishnan et al., 2000; Bowen, 1996; Frandsen et al., 1991; Loesche, 1986] have been consistently implicated in both aetiology of this disease and in biofilm formation. Although first implicated over 50 years ago [Mikx et al., 1972] the role of Veillonella spp. is now receiving increasing attention [Arif et al., 2008; Palmer et al., 2006; Periasamy and Kolenbrander, 2010] as the concept of microbial ecology within the EPH has become more widely adopted.

The thickness of the plaque biofilm ranges depending on the specific site on which it accumulates [Sissons, 1997]. On smooth surfaces this can range up to 200 µm [Main et al., 1984] with approximal and fissured surfaces being able to support a much greater biological mass (≥2 mm) [Igarachi et al., 1989; Newman and Morgan, 1980]. Furthermore, the intra-oral experiments performed by Auschill et al. [2004] demonstrated that the topography of the site is an important factor which augments the formation of plaque biofilms. It can further be deduced that the amount of support which tooth’s surface provides is responsible for this relationship however variation in relatively un-restricted biofilm have been demonstrated in situ [Auschill et al., 2004].

The microbial consortia which gives rise to dental plaque has a significant impact on the buffering capacity [Shellis and Dibdin, 1988] and ionic composition of PF and so would be central to the mineralisation dynamic of the underlying enamel surface [Jenkins, 1966]. The collective microbial population which is able to inhabit the human oral cavity is also thought to consist of more than 700 species [Aas et al., 2005; Marsh, 2004; Paster et al., 2001] many of which are as yet “uncultivated” [Wade, 2002]. For a given individual approximately 100 different species are expected to be present [Chhour et al., 2005] therefore creating an extremely complex set of relationships which govern an already multifactorial disease. This highly diverse array of microorganisms interact to form an ordered community with a structure which provides optimal conditions for proliferation within their given environment [Kolenbrander et al., 1999; Kolenbrander et al., 2006; Marsh and Martin, 2009a]. Existence within the biofilm state may also result in a phenotypic change in the microorganisms
within [Stoodley et al., 2002] therefore altering their interactions with, and influence on, their immediate environment. With time, an ecological balance is reached which may be subject to alterations [Marsh, 2003a, 2011] but ultimately, a generalised shift toward a greater proportion of anaerobic and gram-negative species [Marsh and Nyvad, 2008].

The actual stages involved in biofilm formation are complex [Marsh and Martin, 2009c]. With a limited number of species, the interactions between cells and the individual contributions made by each can be determined [Filoche et al., 2010; Sissons, 1997]. This has led to further understanding how the microbial community behaves however the relationships between microcosm biofilms which include collective representation of the natural oral flora [Wimpenny, 1988] are not fully understood. As noted above, interpretation on the basis of ecology and the general principles of competition and selection is the most suitable method of describing such situations and to this end, generalised stages which are common to all biofilms can be applied [Marsh and Martin, 2009c].

Within the mouth, the first stage of biofilm formation is surface conditioning (Figure 1.5a). This involves the formation of the AEP layer which aides in the initial attachment of microorganisms [Hermansson, 1999]. Once microbes become anchored to the proteinaceous components within the AEP they may go on to from other inter- and intra-specific attachments all of which serve to secure cells to the solid surface [Marsh and Bradshaw, 1995] and each other [Rose et al., 1994; Rose and Turner, 1998]. This stage if often termed initial or reversible attachment (Figure 1.5b).

Figure 1.5 (Oral Biofilm Development): a) the accumulation of conditioning film (AEP) generated from a mixture of proteinaceous substances within the oral environment; b) initial attachment of pioneer organisms weakly bound to each other and components of the AEP; c) irreversible attachment community organisation (early maturation); d) matured biofilm illustrating both active dispersal and particulate dispersal through fragmentation.

The microbial population then proliferates and begins to invest in the production of EPS-forming enzymes such as glucosyltransferases (GTFs) and fructosyltransferases (FTFs) which can remain within the cells walls of the microbes themselves or become embedded in the AEP and the EPS itself.
[Burne, 1991; Leme et al., 2006; Marsh and Martin, 2009a]. At this point the microbial cells become more securely attached within the EPS matrix [Banas and Vickerman, 2003; Bowen and Koo, 2011] and although the connections involved in initial attachment may still be active, the matrix renders the community in a state which is referred to as irreversible attached (Figure 1.5c). However, changes to the biofilm structure do not cease at this point [Marsh and Martin, 2009c; Spratt and Pratten, 2003]. The biofilm undergoes a process of maturation whereby community succession takes place and complex networks of channels and voids are created by the activity of the members within the community [Wood et al., 2000]. Hitherto, a series of physical [Kolenbrander and London, 1993] and nutritional dependencies may also develop some of which being mutualistic [Spratt and Pratten, 2003] or actively competitive [Tong et al., 2007].

Further to this, microbes such as Streptococcus mutans are able to produce endodextranases which degrade the α1-6 linkages of the EPS-associated dextrans produced by earlier colonisers such as Streptococcus mitis and Streptococcus sanguinis thus enabling their invasion into an established biofilm [Balakrishnan et al., 2000]. Mechanisms such as this and the maturation process itself do not run to a terminal end point rather (as described above for the EPH) [Marsh, 1994], the community retains a degree of plasticity enabling it to react in order to exploit the changes in its environment [Marsh and Martin, 2009c]. In this way, the concept of a “mature biofilm” relates only to an

![Figure 1.6](image_url)
established structure. Whilst existing in the mature state further episodes of dispersal can take place (Figure 1.5d). Dispersal is proliferative mechanism which allows community members to colonies other sites within their environment or to escape unfavourable conditions within the biofilm. It should also be noted that dispersal need not be triggered by the microbes themselves, in this sense damage resulting from physical sheering forces can dislodge fragments of the biofilm which, retaining their viability, can then go on to colonise other areas.

As noted above, in the presence of fermentable carbohydrates member of the biofilm community produce acids which lower the pH of the biofilm and over time this leads to the selection of more acidogenic or aciduric species [Marsh, 2003b]. Figure 1.6 (above) illustrates the relationship of this response to the cariogenicity of biofilm. Acidification alone is not sufficient to result in carious demineralisation rather the extent to which PF becomes undersaturated with respect to the enamel mineral, the length of the demineralising challenge and the frequency of the exposures are what determine whether or not caries will develop [Takahashi and Nyvad, 2008]. When periods of demineralisation outweigh opportunities for remineralisation the net result is mineral loss.

1.3.4 Caries Lesion Formation
One defining aspect of a carious lesion is a relatively intact surface layer (SL) covering a deeper area of greater demineralisation [Silverstone, 1968]. Various methods are available for the study of the degree of mineralisation in dental tissues although TMR [Angmar et al., 1963] is currently considered the foremost reliable and definitive technique [Arends and ten Bosch, 1992] enabling quantification of the fine structures which develop within the carious lesions. These lesions are unique in that bulk tissue loss does not immediately occur. Under exposure to relatively weak acidic challenges the undissociated acid is able to diffuse through natural pores in the tissue and focal holes produced by the acidic challenge itself. This allows for deep subsurface penetration where the acid then dissociates. At this point reactions take place between the components of the dissociated acid and the enamel mineral itself. As described above, the general principles of mineral dissolution apply. However, further physical parameters are now involved as the reaction products are not localised to one place, rather the liberated lattice ions, H₂O and Ca-acid salts are free to diffuse through the tissue establishing new equilibria in the process. Over time a caries lesion will develop (Figure 1.7). This is essentially different from erosion where bulk tissue loss is observed as the ultra-structure of the enamel tissue is destroyed [Larsen, 1991].

Several theories have been put forward which aimed to consolidate experimental observations into a singular theory [Anderson and Elliott, 1992; Arends and Christoffersen, 1986]. Of these, it appears that some aspects may be applicable to the situation in vivo whereas others may be less influential.
[Arends and Christoffersen, 1986]. Clearly, any process which is proven to elicit an effect would do so if the conditions favoured such event. In essence, the exclusion of theories consolidated by Arends and Christofferson [1986] is based on those which exert the greatest effect and thus which would presumably be the most likely to result in clinical presentation.

The first of the theories reviewed by Arends and Christoffesen [1986] attribute some aspects of lesion formation to the structural arrangement of the enamel tissue and to the compositional gradients which exist within. As noted above, enamel is not homogenous with respect to composition [Shore et al., 1995b] and gradients exist which alter the solubility of the mineral [Theuns et al., 1986b]. Therefore it is plausible that during an acidic or cariogenic challenge, the less soluble phases which exist near the surface would remain stable while deeper, more soluble phases would dissolve. As simplistic as it is, this mechanism is perfectly reasonable but it does not explain the fact that lesions have been created in compressed HA aggregates [Anderson and Elliott, 1992; Langdon et al., 1980] which do not possess these physiochemical features [Arends and Christoffersen, 1986]. However, for a natural enamel surfaces it is possible that the process of chemical maturation [Shore et al., 1995b] would exaggerate such a solubility gradient within the tissue.

Figure 1.7 (Caries Lesion Formation): Mineral density profile in describing some of the discreet stages involved in typical caries lesion formation. Note that lesions need not develop a full character in order to present clinically as “white-spot lesions”. If conditions remains relatively stable, lesion formation generally flows the order indicated (Sound Enamel > Surface Softened Enamel > initial Lesion Character > Full Lesion Character)
In a similar way, the attachment of agents which inhibit demineralisation has also been proposed to play a role in the retention of SL at the expense of deeper areas of the tissue [Gray and Francis, 1963]. However, subsequent research has been able to indicate that the SL was not composed entirely of the original mineral when artificial lesions were created in vitro [Lagerweij and ten Cate, 2006; Theuns et al., 1984]. Thus, the concept that the SL feature was actually the remnants of a more protected layer of the tissue could not be entirely true. Further theories where thus brought forward to help described a mechanistic basis for subsurface demineralisation.

An obvious candidate is the fluoride-induced precipitation of a less soluble mineral phase during enamel demineralisation. This has been supported by the in vitro studies which have definitively shown that during a dynamic process of de- and re-mineralising challenges, fluorides accumulate in the SL resulting in less acid-susceptible mineral phase [Lagerweij and ten Cate, 2006]. The concept behind this is known as the dissolution-precipitation mechanism and it is based on the fact that the reactive species (fluoride) will enhance precipitation in the outer layers of the tissue whereas undissociated acids are able to diffuse further into the porous tissue structure, the driving force of demineralisation is able to penetrate further than that of remineralisation [Margolis and Moreno, 1985]. In reality, the combination of a surface protection (due mainly to fluorides) and the diffusion-precipitation mechanism is the most likely cause of subsurface character observed in caries lesions [Arends and Christoffersen, 1986; Ingram, 1990].

Whilst it is appreciated that caries lesion may form through a diffusion-precipitation mechanism in conjunction with a degree of conferred surface protection, it is also clear that the rate of diffusion through the enamel tissue would strongly influence the process [Margolis and Moreno, 1985]. To this end, SL formation had been attributed to both incongruent dissolution [Brown and Martin, 1999] and couple diffusion [Anderson and Elliott, 1987]. The factors which govern the actual progress of caries lesions in terms of the volume of mineral lost are dependent efflux of mineral ions out of the lesion as opposed to a redistribution of the mineral itself however the distribution of mineral can restrict diffusion [Featherstone, 1977]. It would appear that either of these concepts can dictate mineral loss and may work in conjunction to do so. However, the degree to which either limitation is imposed may depend on the parameters of both the demineralising challenge used and the physical structure of the substrate.

As noted above, several chemical changes phase transitions occur as carious lesions develop. However, one of the most important changes are differences which develop in the porosity of the tissue [Robinson et al., 1995b]. Between tissue substrates this can be an important factor as, for example, bovine enamel is more porous than human enamel and therefore the diffusion of agents
through the tissue is less restricted in the bovine tissue [Featherstone and Mellberg, 1981]. As would be expected, bovine tissue is more susceptible to cariogenic challenges. Within carious enamel, variations in the porosity of the tissue do exist. This is due to the preferential dissolution of inter-prismatic enamel leaving the enamel prisms largely intact [Kidd and Fejerskov, 2004]. Generally a decrease in the level of porosity occurs from the natural surface of the enamel to the advancing front of the lesion however precipitation in the SL means that the porosity within this area is lower than in the surrounding tissue (Figure 1.8). This feature means that subsurface mineralisation may be depended on the porosity of SL as this would determine diffusion into and out of the lesion body.

![Figure 1.8](image)

Figure 1.8 (Carious Lesion Porosity): Darker areas indicate a more porous structure a) external cariogenic environment; b) Surface layer (SL); c) lesion body; d) developing lesion front; d) sound enamel. Adapted from Robinson et al. [1995b].

The fact that scaffold is retained during the initial stages of demineralisation means that this can act as a point of nucleation for the formation of new mineral and thus provide opportunities for remineralisation presumably to a point of sound structural integrity. However maintaining porosity in the SL is essential if diffusion into the deeper layers is to occur, if this is not possible or otherwise severely impeded then a reduction in the efficacy of remineralisation would result. Expectedly this has led investigators towards efforts which have aimed to maintain porosity in the SL. In such circumstance, the use of ionic inhibitors have been applied [Lynch et al., 2011] as have acid buffer solutions [Cochrane et al., 2008; Yamazaki and Margolis, 2008]. As both the structural integrity of the tissue and the ability to facilitate subsurface remineralisation are strongly influenced by the SL, an appreciation of the abiotic principles which govern its formation is necessary.

From the above discussion, it therefore follows that the removal of plaque biofilm would eradicate the disease however, due to the ubiquitous nature of microbial species this is not a realistic scenario. Mechanical removal of the plaque biofilm is effective in controlling the disease but for instances where this is not possible the concept that the biofilm may be altered to a wholly less cariogenic state is a more viable alternative. Clearly, any investigation which aims to explore such an avenue would need to account for the microbiology of the biofilm and, to this end, various biological models have been developed [Sissons, 1997; Tatevossian, 1988]. Of these the film fermenters aim to
simulate the conditions which preclude oral biofilm formation most comprehensively although physiochemical interaction between the biofilm and the enamel substrate are often not included. Given the relevance of inorganic processes to caries lesion formation an understanding of these should be applied within a biological context. Notwithstanding that caries is regarded as a highly complex and multifactorial disease and the complexity of each aspect often necessitates a concentrated approach, with a greater conceptual understating and assessment of the process, greater insight can gained.

1.4 Biological and Non-Biological Caries Models

*In vitro* dental research has achieved major advance over the past 50 years. In comparison to *in situ* or clinical trials, the quality of the information (and thus the wealth of understanding) provided from *in vitro* research has been recognised as far greater [NIH, 2001]. The advantages of *in vitro* research over *in situ* studies are afforded by their ability allow investigators to study specific mechanisms whilst ensuring that only the desired parameters are altered at any one time [Arends and Christoffersen, 1986; White, 1995]. Although the measures imposed may be deliberate, key aspects of the complex biological interactions of the caries process are removed by the use of *in vitro* models [White, 1995; White et al., 1992]. An obvious solution to this would therefore be to incorporate into *in vitro* studies some of the factors which are important *in vivo* [Arends, 1995] and this has thus led to the development of *in vitro* biological models to complement the more stringent abiotic models.

Abiotic systems are able to produce caries-like lesions through the control of ions which are specific to the process (such as those described in Section 1.3.4). Further to this, many include other specific ions for the purposes of investigating their influence lesion formation, progression or reversal [Lippert et al., 2012; Lynch, 2011; Valappil et al., 2012] and the exclusion of biological variation enables the effect(s) of these additive(s) to be concluded more effectively [Valappil et al., 2013]. Conversely, bacterial systems tend not tend to include the same emphasis on ionic composition. However, benefits such as simplification and environmental standardisation are provided [Sissons et al., 2007] which are not readily controlled *in situ* [ten Cate, 1994]. Biofilms are able to form using human saliva as the sole substrate whereas some *in vitro* cultures are limited by the availability of cannulated saliva (such as has been employed in the more basic Orofax system [Bibby and Huang, 1980; Yaari and Bibby, 1976]) and thus artificial growth media are often deemed necessary [Sissons et al., 2007; Tatevossian, 1988]. However, multispecies biofilm communities have proven extremely resilient [Gilbert et al., 2002]. In a global sense, human oral biofilms are ubiquitous and develop regardless of natural influences on the oral environment.
One of the most advanced model systems available is the constant depth film ferment (CDFF; Figure 1.9) [Peters and Wimpenny, 1988]. This model is able to support microbial growth and enables a high degree of control over the almost all extraneous variables [Kinniment et al., 1996; Peters and Wimpenny, 1988]. This, in turn, allows for control over the environment in which the biofilms are produced which is not possible in vivo [Sissons, 1997; Tatevossian, 1988]. Further to this, physical parameters are also accounted for within the CDFF which are not in other biological models [Pratten, 2005]. The entire unit is sealed and sterilised before inoculation with filtered vents to allow for gas
exchange whilst ensuring against air-borne contamination (Figure 1.9f). The inoculum (Figure 1.9a), growth medium (Figure 1.9b), and any combination of additional exposure solutions (Figure 1.9c) can be introduced by a series of inlet ports which feed-out onto a rotating turntable (Figure 1.9i) which supports microbial growth. The area for biofilm growth is permitted by a recessed area (Figure 1.9h) within the turntable itself.

Due to the benefits of using microcosm inoculum [Wimpenny, 1988] and the problems associated with the reproducibility of microcosm plaques [Sissons, 1997] the use of a shared inoculum between multiple CDFF units has been proposed [Hope et al., 2012]. This had led to the development of the dual CDFF (dCDFF) model which provides a powerful tool for applications where highly variable multispecies biofilms are required [Hope et al., 2012]. However, technical limitations are an issue as the distribution of the inoculant across an increasing number of units leads to heterogeneity in the fraction which reaches either unit [Spratt, Personal Communication] therefore limiting the expansion of this design past 3 concurrent CDFFs. However, as noted above the microcosm biofilm inoculum (and thus the microcosm biofilm) is inclusive of the entire potential of natural plaque biofilms [Wimpenny, 1988] and as such an enormous adaptive capacity is also afforded.

 Nevertheless, the CDFF can provide a simulation of physical parameters which are not provided by other currently available biological caries models [Sissons, 1997; Tatevossian, 1988]. The rotating action of the turntable ensures biofilm thickness is kept constant (Figure 1.9g). Starvation periods, proximity to atmosphere, sheering forces and growth medium or adjunct agent exposures can all be maintained at a constant or varies depending on the requirements of the study at hand. Thus, an environment for oral biofilm growth can be modelled in a precise fashion without the need for an in situ or in vivo approach. To date, enamel caries lesions have not been simulated within a CDFF although the model itself is currently gaining increased popularity within the field of dental research as the importance of considering both the mineral dynamics and the state of biofilm ecology in unison is becoming more widely appreciated. To this end, dentine lesions have been produced within the CDFF system [Deng and ten Cate, 2004; Deng et al., 2005; Zaura et al., 2011] and the CDFF has been used to produce biofilms which have subsequently induced demineralisation in enamel samples [Arthur et al., 2013]. However, the production of enamel lesion within the model has not yet been demonstrated. Further to this, approaches which have aimed to monitor parameters which would be likely to induce demineralisation or the augment the caries process have also been explored [Cenci et al., 2009; Deng et al., 2005; McBain et al., 2003; Pratten et al., 1998b; Vroom et al., 1999; Zaura et al., 2011].
Several other methods have been developed in the pursuit of developing an orally representative situation. Modifications of the chemostat [Bradshaw et al., 1996], are particularly useful as the conditions within can be controlled and dictated directly by the investigator. In this system (the chemostat) the indirect effects of microbial metabolism are not able to significantly alter growth conditions but with modifications which introduce surfaces for biofilm formation, biofilms form. Thus whilst the general composition of the growth medium in bulk solution can be maintained, microenvironments within the biofilms would exist. Whist the chemostat has provided extremely useful information and unequivocally proven relationships such as the dependency of pH on cariogenic population shifts as opposed to the affinity of cariogenic species for sugar substrates [Bradshaw et al., 1989]. However, film fermenters offer the distinct advantages in that the physical properties of life in the biofilms are reproduced [Tatevossian, 1988]. Oxygen tension, the diffusion of substrates, the a biphasic formation area up to a controlled volume are all provided within the CDFF [Peters and Wimpenny, 1988] Clearly, the reproduction of these parameters is not always necessary or appropriate as any specific interaction can be modelled by a specific experimental design. However, for a disease which is known to result from the accumulation of a biofilm [Marsh, 1995b], a biofilm model is ultimately a central aspect which is worth of study.

The fact that a model is currently in use which enables the production and, to a large degree, the controlled growth of oral biofilms [Kinniment et al., 1996] creates exiting opportunities to contribute to the current state of understating within carious lesion development and in elucidating the protective effects of anti-caries ages or strategies. In the case of the former, the production of enamel caries has not yet been demonstrated within the CDFF model although the model certainly retains the capacity for this function. Moreover, the production of orally representative caries lesions may be improved with further refinements to the CDFF system, particularly with greater control over the chemical parameters within. Nevertheless, a powerful model is demonstrated for the study of the effects of recommended sodium fluoride (NaF) exposures [Parnell and O’Mullane, 2013] on the microbial ecology, metabolic activity and cariogenicity. Furthermore, methods which aim to enhance the plaque-bound oral fluoride reservoirs *in vivo or in situ* [Vogel, 2011] typically lack the degree of control or ability to simulate biological aspects of the caries process (respectively) which is afforded by the use of a model such as the CDFF. In a controlled setting, the variably antimicrobial and robust anticaries properties of NaF are observable as is the mechanistic action of strategies which enhance the calcium and fluoride reservoirs within natural plaque. Although the anticaries activity of such methods are debatable, they are nonetheless worthy of further investigation.
1.5 General Objectives and Thesis Structure

The general aims of this thesis are to further develop the CDFF model specifically for the study of occlusal caries whereas secondary aims were to test the efficacy of this model on both known and proposed anti-caries strategies. In order to develop the model in this way, a full account of the operating conditions must be gained. Whilst it has been accepted that biological caries models may be subject to high levels of variation, an attempt to find common response factors by interpretation of the most relevant aspects of the particular situation will be made. The influence of the plaque biology on the abiotic foundations of caries production and protection is of direct interest. In essence, a holistic approach towards the caries process will be adopted within an in vitro model.

As noted above, the CDFF will also be used to investigate known cariogenic mechanisms and anti-caries strategies. Specifically, the relationship between sucrose exposures and the presence or persistence of fluorides within plaque-bound reservoirs will be investigated. Moreover, the applicability of the CDFF for providing an approximation to the natural situation will also be evaluated and possible improvements implemented for the benefit of future research.

Figure 1.10 (Thesis Structure): Non-experimental sections are illustrated in grey, abiotic investigations are illustrated in blue and investigations which employ a biological element are illustrated in purple. Non biological models were used to help define a practical basis for biological systems which were in turn used to investigate atrocities agents. An alternative strategy for investigating the effects of these agents was also explored in relation to the primary mode of investigation.

The general structure of this thesis (Figure 1.10) follows a logical progression through the use of non-biological models to develop the CDFF to simulate of occlusal caries (Chapters 2 and 3) and further characterisation of the previously unknown parameters of the CDFF model (Chapter 4) so as that it can be used to accurately assess factors which may influence enamel caries lesion formation (Chapter 5). The primary aim of this thesis is met through the use of a dCDFF model and adjunct agent exposures during biofilm formation (Chapters 6 to 8) however the secondary aims are investigated further within an alternative model (sCDFF) in order to quantify their effect on both fully-formed and cariogenic plaque biofilms (Chapter 9).
Chapter 2: Artificial Occlusal Surface Morphology and Enamel Demineralisation

2.1.0 Introduction

Occlusal surfaces of human molar (and pre-molar) teeth are some of the most prone to the formation of dental caries [Aoba, 2004; Kidd and Fejerskov, 2004]. Furthermore, these surfaces also exhibit an extremely diverse and complicated structure [Ekstrand et al., 1991; Juhl, 1983b]. The structure of the occlusal surfaces (illustrated in Figure 2.1.1) results from the process of ameoleogensis [Shore et al., 1995a] whereby the lobes of developing surfaces contact producing jagged ridges on these biting surfaces of the teeth thus serving to aide in mastication. During this period of development hard tissue deposition also occurs. As a result, fusion of the lobes is incomplete and the result is a complex network of pits and groves which extend further into fossas and fissures respectively. This structure thus provides stagnation sites which form a convenient habitat for the accumulation of bacteria and the persistence of food particles. The finer areas of these structures also prevent removal by conventional oral hygiene methods and therefore drastically increase the probability of caries developing.

Figure 2.1.1 (Inverted Occlusal Surfaces): SEM images of a cast made from an occlusal surface of a 3rd human molar following HCl digestion of the tooth’s structure. The perspective is tilted at an angle 60° to the planer surface of the tooth. a) mesial view; b) distal view; c) lingual view. Reconstructed from Juhl [1983a].

Modelling of the occlusal surfaces has thus been a focus of modern research both in vitro [Deng et al., 2004; Deng et al., 2005; Smits and Arends, 1986] and in situ [Zaura et al., 2002; Zaura et al., 2005] as the unique anatomy and microbiology of these sites distinctly separates occlusal caries from their smooth-surface counterpart. However one fundamental disconnect between these models and the natural situation arises from the physical structure of the enamel tissue.

Lesion progression is known to follow the orientation of the enamel prisms [Bjørndal and Thylstrup, 1995; Kidd and Fejerskov, 2004] due to higher solubility of inter-prismatic enamel in relation to that of the enamel prisms themselves facilitating diffusion along the path of the prism structures. These structure are generally oriented length-wise between the enamel surface and the enamel-dentine
juncture (EDJ) whereas the crystals within can be approximated as parallel to the long axis of the prisms [Dowker et al., 1999]. Further to this point, Anderson and Elliott [2000] were able to show essentially dissimilar patterns of enamel demineralisation whether or not the enamel prisms were orientated parallel or perpendicular to the demineralising challenge. Therefore, in a situation where a groove is cut directly into the natural enamel surface, the proper orientation of the tissue is lost. To accurately simulate occlusal caries, a representative prismic orientation should be maintained.

![Figure 2.1.2 (Average Occlusal Surface Angles): Exposed blue sectors indicate the proportion of angles below 20° and thus termed as fissures whereas grey sectors indicate the inter-lobal angles which would be described as grooves; a) Some representative cross-sectional angles which occur on natural occlusal surfaces. Data reconstructed from Ekstrand et al. [1991].](image)

However, the definition of a structure which is both appropriate to the situation and feasible within the demands of an in vitro experiment is difficult. Various structural angles occur on the occlusal surfaces and (as illustrated in Figure 2.3.1) these structures vary greatly within a 3-dimensional (3D) context. Nevertheless, some standardisation is possible [Ekstrand et al., 1991] and within this range the definition of grooves and fissures can be made. In Figure 2.1.2 (above) fissures appear to make-up a minor proportion of the occlusal surfaces whereas the majority of structural angles correspond to those more obtuse groove structures. From this, a set of groove angles can be identified which would reflect the majority of those found on occlusal surfaces thus enabling the reconstruction of such surfaces. Lesion formation within various abiotic models can therefore be used to assess how such artificial structures would behave and thus their feasibility.

**2.1.1 Aims and Objectives**

The central aim of the work presented within this chapter was to develop a method for producing artificial occlusal surfaces. Further to this, alternative abiotic systems will also be employed in order to test their efficacy in producing lesions within such structures. The design of the artificial occlusal surface structures will be evaluated on the basis of its feasibility for use within a CDFF caries model.
2.2.0 Materials and Methods

Bovine incisors were sourced from cattle aged ≤ 36 months old (Battlefield Road Abattoir, Harlescott, United Kingdom) reared in the absence of known fluoridated water sources. Teeth were stored in a fully de-ionised 0.1 % w/v thymol solution before use (BDH Laboratory Supplies, Poole, UK) to avoid decomposition or tissue alteration. All teeth were examined under a dissecting microscope (Nikon SMZ-10; Nikon UK Ltd., Surrey, UK) and by quantitative light induced fluorescence (QLF) to ensure they were initially caries- and defect- free. For QLF assessment, enamel surfaces were examined under a custom-made workstation (Inspektor Research Systems BV., Amsterdam) equipped with a SLR camera (Cannon EOS 450D; Cannon UK Ltd., Surrey, UK) and a working light emission wavelength of 405 nm (QLF-D; C3 Version 1.20.0.0; Inspektor Research Systems BV., Amsterdam).

When required, teeth were first sectioned into blocks of approximate dimensions 8 x 5 x 3 mm using a hand-held diamond-coated cutting disk (Skillbond Direct Ltd., High Wycombe, UK) connected to Marathon-N7 micromotor (Saeyang Microtech, Daegu, Korea) so as to result in an enamel surface of 8 x 5 mm. The source of each section as it relates to the incisors surface are illustrated in Figure 2.2.1. Once fashioned into blocks, the enamel surfaces were then successively abraded on carburundum paper using a Buehler 8-inch Ecomet Grinder (Buehler GmbH., Düsseldorf, Germany). Curvature in the enamel surface was first levelled using 240-P abrasive sheets (Wet and Dry Abrasive Sheets; ABL Resin and Glass, Cheshire, UK) and subsequently finished with 1200-P paper (Rhynowet Sheets; Insasa, Indústria de Abrasivos, Spain).

Prepared BEBs were then painted in an acid resistant varnish (MaxFactor Nailfinity; Procter and Gamble, Weybridge, UK) with the use of a 6 x 3 mm or 6 x 4 mm piece of non-residual masking tape (Guangzhou Broadya Adhesive Products Co., Ltd., Guangdong, China) stencil placed over the enamel surface and immediately adjacent and central to one of the 8 mm edges of the enamel surface. Figure 2.2.2 illustrates this process. Once the varnish had begun to dry, the masking-tape was
removed using fine-tipped tweezers leaving a highly-polished area of enamel exposed. This process was then repeated to create both left- and right- hand sets. In total 24 BEBs were prepared for both the 90 and 180° conditions and 6 for the 20° condition.

![Figure 2.2.2 (BEBs Painting Process): a) Bovine incisors were first sectioned into BEBs; b) non-residual masking-tape was cut and placed over the enamel surface immediately adjacent to edges; c) making-tape was then smoothed down to ensure it met flush with the enamel surface; d) the entire BEB painted in an acid-resistant varnish; e) approximately 15 min was allowed to pass so as that the varnish became tacky; f) the masking-tape “stencil” was removed leaving an exact area of 6 x 3 mm or 6 x 4 mm of enamel the enamel surface exposed.](image)

2.2.1 Hydrogel Investigation Model (AGS)

Once dried, painted BEB pairs with a 6 x 3 mm window were mounted in Green-Stick impression compound (Kerr Corporation, California, United States) at 20, 90, and 180° angles so as to correspond to the mean fissure angles of natural occlusal surfaces defined above (Figure 2.1.2). A specifically-made plastic wedge was used for each given angle so as to ensure that the BEBs were mounted correctly and in as reproducible as of a way as possible (Figure 2.2.3). Each angle was investigated in at least triplicate conditions.

Assembled BEB pairs were then placed in acid-gel systems (AGSs) based on the “Laboratory D” method described previously by ten Cate et al. [1996]. In brief, an 8% (w/v) MeC gel (15000cp at 2% w/v in 20 °C dH₂O; Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Dorset, UK) was created by dispersing the MeC powder in dH₂O at approximately 80°C. During this time, one of each angle condition was placed into the bottom of a disposable 50 mL Sterilin container (Sterilin Ltd. Newport, UK) and secured in place with Carding Wax (Associated Dental Products Ltd., Kemdent Works, Swindon, UK).
Artificial Occlusal Surface Morphology and Enamel Demineralisation

Figure 2.2.3 (BEB Groove Assembly Method): a) Painted BEBs were paired and aligned at angle θ (20, 90 or 180°); b) Exact alignment of the BEBs at the chosen angle was achieved by the use of a plastic wedge cut to an exact angle (θ) and placed within the groove; c) BEBs were secured in position with green-stick impression compound. Once the impression compound has hardened, the plastic wedge could be removed with BEB pairs secured at the exact angle of the wedge used.

Once cooled to approximately 50°C, 20 g volumes of the MeC gels were poured into each of the Sterilin containers and allowed to set. A further 20g of 0.1M lactic acid solution (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Dorset, UK) containing 10mM phosphate (KH$_2$PO$_4$; Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Dorset, UK) was then poured over the gel. The completed acid-gel systems were then incubated for 12 d at 37 ºC before the BEBs were carefully extracted from the AGS and rinsed in dH$_2$O to remove residual gel.

2.2.2 pH Cycling Investigation Model

With a slight difference from the procedure described in Section 2.2.1, fixed BEB pairs were created with a window of 6 x 4 mm (comparable to Figure 2.2.2) and placed, one of each angle condition (20, 90 and 180° sets), into the bottom of a disposable 50 mL Sterilin container (Sterilin Ltd. Newport, UK) and secured with Carding Wax (Associated Dental Products Ltd., Kemdent Works, Swindon, UK) as in Section 2.2.1. Each Sterilin then formed the basis of a pH-cycled demineralisation model exposed to 2 (de- and re-mineralising) solutions described in Table 2.2.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Solution A</th>
<th>Solution B</th>
<th>Supplier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glacial Acetic Acid</td>
<td>75 mM</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium Chloride (CaCl$_2$.2H$_2$O)</td>
<td>2 mM</td>
<td>1.5 mM</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Phosphate (NaH$_2$PO$_4$)</td>
<td>2 mM</td>
<td>0.9 mM</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEPES Buffer (C$_8$H$_18$N$_2$O$_4$S)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>20 mM</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Chloride (NaCl)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>130 mM</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Fluoride (NaF)</td>
<td>0.03 ppm</td>
<td>0.05 ppm</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Acidity Adjusted (NaOH)</td>
<td>pH 4.6</td>
<td>pH 7.2</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DS$_{na}$</td>
<td>0.1776</td>
<td>7.2047</td>
<td>IPQ3 [Shellis, 1988]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DS$_{rap}$</td>
<td>0.6248</td>
<td>13.854</td>
<td>IPQ3 [Shellis, 1988]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.2.1 (Composition of De- and Re-Mineralising Solutions): Solution A was sued for demineralisation stages of the pH-cycling system whereas Solution B was used during the remineralisation stages. Each reagent and the concentrations in which they were added to the solutions are listed along with the supplier from which they were sourced.

The pH cycling system employed in this experiment consisted of a 24 h cycle of 6 h exposure to 40 mL of demineralisation solution (Solution A) followed by 18 h exposure to 20mL of remineralisation solution (Solution B). Each cycle involved a 6 hour exposure to a demineralising solution followed by a 18 hour exposure to a remineralising solution.
solution (Solution B) [ten Cate and Duijsters, 1982]. Solutions were added to each Sterilin for the corresponding phase of the cycle and the system was subject to continual agitation using a magnetic stirrer (Stuart SB301; Bibby Scientific Ltd., Staffordshire, UK) and flea. Between solution changes the Sterilin vessel (Sterilin Ltd., Newport, UK) was briefly rinsed 3 times with dH₂O. This cycle continued for 6 days following which, all Sterilins were filled with 20 mL of Solution B and left for 24 h. BEBs were then removed and separated according to condition before sectioning and analysis by TMR.

2.2.3 Transverse Micro-Radiography
BEBs were first marked with a small groove cut into the out-facing sides of each pair using a hand-held diamond-coated cutting disk (Skillbond Direct Ltd., High Wycombe, UK) connected to Marathon-N7 micromotor (Saeyang Microtech, Daegu, Korea). The purpose of this was so as that the inner and outer edges of enamel surface could be distinguished following thin section preparations. Separated BEBs were first mounted in Green-Stick impression compound (Kerr Corporation, California, USA) onto a ceramic anvil and sectioned to an approximate thickness of 1.2 mm at an angle transverse to the exposed enamel surfaces using a precision diamond wire saw (Model 3241; Well Diamantdrahtsagen GmbH., Mannheim, Germany). These sections were then fixed lengthwise to 10 mm brass anvils using the same varnish as was used to create the exposed enamel windows and polished on a diamond impregnated grinding disc (Custom-Made with a 15 µm particles size; Buehler, Illinois, USA; Figure 2.2.4) to a thickness of 250 µm. Sections were then removed with analytical-grade acetone (AnalaR; VWR Instruments, Poole, UK) and re-mounted on the opposite side before being ground to a final thickness of 80 µm to be consistent with an appropriate thickness for radiographic analysis [Angmar et al., 1963].

Each thin section was then removed from the anvils and mounted on a plastic template using double sided sticky-tape (Q-Connect, Derbystraat, Belgium). The outer surface of the template was then covered in an X-ray film membrane (3525 Ultralene; Spex Sample Prep, New York, USA) to complete the frame (Figure 2.2.5). Frames were assembled as necessary. Each completed frame was placed film-side down on high-resolution x-ray film plates (Kodak type 1A High-Resolution Plates; Kodak, Rochester, USA) along with a 13-piece aluminium step-wedge and exposed to a CuKα X-ray source operating at 10 mA and 30 kV (Figure 2.2.6). Exposure time was 25 min and the distance from source to sample frame was 300mm. X-ray sensitive films were developed in solutions provided by the manufacturer (Kodak D-19 Professional Developer; Kodak, Rochester, UK and Kodak Unifix; Kodak, Rochester, UK) as per standard instruction which were also provided.
Figure 2.2.4 (Diamond-Impregnated Grinding Disks): Thin enamel sections were mounted a brass anvil with a height of exactly 11 mm. The anvil was attached to a top plate which was placed over an end plate so as that the brass anvil faced a diamond-impregnated disk (15 µm particle size). The top plate was supported by steel ball bearings each with an exact diameter (11.25 mm, 11.13 mm or 11.08 mm). The excess diameter of the ball bearings determined the final thickness of the enamel sections; a) assembly view; b) assembled view.

Figure 2.2.5 (Sample Frame Assembly): Thin-sections were secured to the frame with their enamel surfaces facing into the voids of the frame. The membrane was placed over the thin sections protecting the x-ray film during radiographic imaging; a) assembly view; b) assemble view.
Examination of the radiographic image subsequently produced was performed by use of an optical microscope (Leica, Wetzlar, Germany) fitted with a CCD camera (Sony, Tokyo, Japan). Before acquisition of the lesion images, the exposure of the radiograph itself was first calibrated by the aluminium step-wedge. Following slide calibration, 5 to 6 images (depending on the homogeneity of the lesion) were acquired at magnifications of x5/0.11, x10/0.22 and x20/0.40 (thus capturing an area of 1200 µm, 600 µm and 300 µm respectively). All images and step-wedge calibration curves were acquired on TMR 2000 software (Version 2.0.27.16; Inspektor Research Systems BV., Amsterdam) and parameters of integrated mineral loss (ΔZ), lesion depth (LD), SL mineralisation (S_{\text{Max}}) and average mineral loss (R; calculated as the product of ΔZ divided by LD) were quantified by TMR 2006 (Version 3.0.0.10; Inspektor Research Systems BV., Amsterdam). Although a straight surface was ground into the initial BEBs, corrections for curvature were enabled to account for defects resulting from the preparation process itself.

Limits set within TMR 2006 were a maximum sample thickness of 162 µm and a appropriate minimum thickness of 25 µm to account for variations in the section preparations process leading to an altered final thickness from that which was expected (80 µm). Samples which fell outside of this range were rejected on the basis of being outside of an accurate calibration range set by the 13-piece aluminium step-wedge. Likewise, maximum inhomogeneity was set to 1.5%, samples which failed to meet this criteria were rejected due to the potential for excessive deviations in the scan profiles generated. However, in the event that sample scan profile deviations from the step-wedge calibration curve occurred outside of the lesion and sound patch measures, TMR results were accepted as just on the basis that the areas which were analyses were done so within calibration.
Depth profiles were calculated from an enamel surface defined as 20 %Vol assuming 87 %Vol of sound mineral (calculated by the sound patch) and were normalised in relation to a zero patch placed adjacent to the enamel surface; as opposed to the normalising measurements to the step-wedge zero-point calibration. The depth of the lesion (LD) was measured as the depth at which 95 %Vol was reached with respect to sound enamel (87 %Vol) patch [Ruben and Arends, 1993].

In the event that caries lesions were not produced or that enamel surfaces had disintegrated over the course of the experiment, 2-step image analysis [Amaechi et al., 1998] was applied to the images captured from the micro-radiographs. This entailed specifically capturing the exposed surface along with an area of un-exposed sound enamel. Under these circumstances all analysis was applied using the TMR 2000 software (Version 2.0.27.16; Inspektor Research Systems BV., Amsterdam). Analysis was first applied to the area of sound enamel immediately adjacent to the crater; this was used to define the starting point of the enamel surface (20 %Vol), an un-shielded area on the radiographs and an area of sound enamel beneath the point which the crater progressed to. Once these points were defined, the analysis window was moved over to cover the crater and thus ΔZ and LD were be quantified by theoretical reconstruction of the enamel surface.

2.2.3.1 TMR Experimental Specifics
Several equidistant images were captured across the length of the exposed enamel surface at a magnification of x10/0.22. This comprised a step of approximately 600 µm from the peripheral edge of the lesions towards the apex of the artificial groove. Due to the relative difference in the size of the enamel windows, this enabled 5 areas to be captured in AGS-exposed BEBs and 6 areas to be captured in those BEBs which were exposed to the pH-cycling system. Due to the exact trapezoid shape of the grooves this meant that the inner 5 areas of each of grooves which were created in either system were directly comparable topographically.

2.2.4 Statistical Analysis
Analysis of data was performed using SPSS Statistics 20 (Version 20.0.0.1; IBM UK Ltd., Portsmouth, UK) and Microsoft Excel 2010 (Version 14.6112.5000; Microsoft Office Professional Plus; Microsoft Ltd., Berkshire, UK). Calculations for the mean and standard deviation (SD) were performed using functions within SPSS Statistics 20 whereas, where appropriate, the standard error (SE) and t-distribution based confidence intervals were generated within Microsoft Excel 2010 using the mean and SD values calculated as described above. Analysis of Variance (ANOVA) was applied to all data sets and, if applicable, on ascending levels of increasingly focused matrices (e.g. 1-Way, 2-Way and 3-Way ANOVA). In the event that significant differences were found within groups containing more than 2 sets, Tukey’s HSD post-hoc test was applied. For all statistical tests, correlations and confidence intervals a 95% certainty was applied (α = 0.05).
2.3.0 Results

2.3.1 QLF-D Inspection of Enamel Tissue Quality
Following examination using QLF-D, approximately 10% of bovine incisors were rejected. None of the BEBs brought to inspection were rejected before fluorescent imaging however defects were sometimes noted under QLF-D which were initially missed when examined under white-light alone. Examples of enamel surfaces which were initially deemed acceptable but which were later reconsidered when inspected under QLF-D are given in Figure 2.3.1. The example in Figure 2.3.1a and 2.3.1c were rejected following QLF-D inspection. In Figure 2.3.1a the areas indicated by directional arrows were possible carious demineralisation although the central arrow indicates a fracture. The defects noted in Figure 2.3.1c are almost certainly carious however in Figure 2.3.1b, these same arrows point towards suspected fractures (although this particular BEB was not rejected and therefore still used within the present work). In general, suspected carious demineralisation occurred most often in BEBs which were sectioned from areas which were closest to the gingival margin whereas fractures were more common in tissues which were sectioned from close to the incisal edge. As a result, the majority of tissue came from between these 2 areas.

![Figure 2.3.1 (QLF-D-Aided Inspection of Enamel Tissue Quality)](image)

In all cases the a white-light image is shown on the left and a QLF-D image is shown in the right: a) BEB which was rejected after inspection, b) BEB which was accepted after inspection and c) BEB which was rejected after inspection. Directional arrows indicate possible defects which have become visible under QLF-D.
2.3.2 Demineralisation at various Groove Depth in Static AGSs

For each angle condition, multiple thin sections survived the sectioning process at an acceptable quality to allow for image analysis by TMR. Each of these analyses were then combined on the basis of the BEB from which they were sectioned and parameters of $\Delta Z$, LD, R and $S_{\text{Max}}$ recorded for each and these data are presented in Table 2.3.1. Each condition and analysis point (ie. distance from the peripheral edge of the artificial groove) defined groups and the number of measurements were taken to be the number of separate enamel blocks which were analysed. No significant difference was found between left- and right-hand sets at each analysis point for any of the parameters measured ($P \geq 0.362$).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$\theta$°</th>
<th>Step</th>
<th>n (BEBs)</th>
<th>$\Delta Z \pm SD$</th>
<th>LD $\pm SD$</th>
<th>R $\pm SD$</th>
<th>$S_{\text{Max}} \pm SD$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>1 (0.6 mm)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2536.67 ± 274.65</td>
<td>88.48 ± 9.84</td>
<td>28.72 ± 1.37</td>
<td>56.53 ± 3.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>2 (1.2 mm)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1031.67 ± 51.320</td>
<td>52.57 ± 3.83</td>
<td>19.75 ± 0.46</td>
<td>67.20 ± 1.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>3 (1.8 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>601.67 ± 184.820</td>
<td>28.53 ± 9.19</td>
<td>23.82 ± 2.70</td>
<td>72.37 ± 2.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>4 (2.4 mm)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>425.00 ± 241.920</td>
<td>16.88 ± 11.1</td>
<td>26.52 ± 1.75</td>
<td>71.02 ± 14.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>5 (3.0 mm)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>425.00 ± 230.920</td>
<td>13.32 ± 6.73</td>
<td>31.28 ± 1.94</td>
<td>66.93 ± 4.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>1 (0.6 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3240.00 ± 250.87</td>
<td>92.55 ± 5.74</td>
<td>34.89 ± 1.14</td>
<td>55.81 ± 2.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>2 (1.2 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2018.67 ± 103.85</td>
<td>72.86 ± 4.21</td>
<td>27.59 ± 0.49</td>
<td>59.30 ± 0.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>3 (1.8 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1470.67 ± 181.78</td>
<td>61.61 ± 5.53</td>
<td>23.66 ± 2.01</td>
<td>62.83 ± 2.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>4 (2.4 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1091.50 ± 167.50</td>
<td>55.67 ± 8.80</td>
<td>19.57 ± 1.59</td>
<td>66.21 ± 3.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>5 (3.0 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>808.00 ± 187.57</td>
<td>48.91 ± 11.7</td>
<td>16.58 ± 1.41</td>
<td>70.28 ± 3.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>1 (0.6 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3434.00 ± 319.86</td>
<td>95.11 ± 3.96</td>
<td>36.05 ± 2.21</td>
<td>51.91 ± 4.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>2 (1.2 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2187.17 ± 181.89</td>
<td>76.66 ± 4.02</td>
<td>28.44 ± 1.34</td>
<td>56.46 ± 2.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>3 (1.8 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1850.33 ± 114.43</td>
<td>71.49 ± 2.85</td>
<td>25.83 ± 0.79</td>
<td>62.75 ± 8.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>4 (2.4 mm)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1792.36 ± 284.57</td>
<td>71.66 ± 9.52</td>
<td>24.79 ± 1.65</td>
<td>59.10 ± 3.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>5 (3.0 mm)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1771.67 ± 439.77</td>
<td>68.33 ± 7.37</td>
<td>25.71 ± 4.61</td>
<td>59.38 ± 3.19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.3.1 (TMR Parameters from AGS-exposed Grooves): The number of BEBs used (n) are presented for each condition at steps 1 to 5 correspond to measurements made from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion in towards the inner crevice of the groove.

Viewing results based only on $\theta$ (ie. surmising all steps along the length of the lesions) determined significant difference in $\Delta Z$, LD and $S_{\text{Max}}$ ($P < 0.001$). Multiple comparisons revealed that $\Delta Z$ and LD increased significantly ($P \leq 0.016$) between 20° and 90° sets whereas no difference was determined in R or $S_{\text{Max}}$ ($P \geq 0.082$). Between 90° and 180° sets, $\Delta Z$, LD and R were all seen in increase ($P \leq 0.042$) however $S_{\text{Max}}$ decreased ($P = 0.004$). These results are illustrated in Figure 2.3.2 where a clear increase is visible in the mean values for LD and $\Delta Z$. However, R does appear to remain relatively steady. On average, $S_{\text{Max}}$ followed an inverse relationship to $\theta$.  


Artificial Occlusal Surface Morphology and Enamel Demineralisation | Ch.2

Figure 2.3.2 (TMR Parameters in Relation to θ): Parameters of LD (µm), R (%Vol), SMax (%Vol) and ΔZ (%Vol.µm) are presented as combined measurements for each groove angle condition (θ). Error bars represent the SD on the sample set. The number of individual values (n) for each series is listed in Table 2.3.1.

Separating each set on the basis of distance from the peripheral edge (Figure 2.3.3), θ had a significant effect at each step on ΔZ, LD, R and SMax (P ≤ 0.041), the only exceptions to this were in the outermost measurement for LD (Step 1; P = 0.292) and in the central measurements of R (Step 3; P = 0.306).

Considering the steps in Figure 2.3.3 separately, ΔZ displays a clear relationship with both θ and distance from the peripheral edge (Figure 2.3.4). ΔZ decreases to a baseline value; this decrease is most pronounced in the 20° set and least pronounced in the 180° set with the 90° occupying an intermediate position. This relationship is also mirrored in Figure 2.3.5 when LD is plotted by the same division. However, results for R showed a much more variable trend (Figure 2.3.6) particularly in the 20° sets.

In the first 2 steps from the peripheral edge, an extremely close relationship was observed between the 90° and 180° sets with respect to ΔZ, LD and R (P ≥ 0.167) and, with respect to R, this close association continued to the 3 step (P = 0.194). However, further into the groove delineation was no longer possible on the basis of these parameters (P ≤ 0.019). In comparing the 20° sets with the 90° and 180° sets, the 20° sets were found to be significantly different with respect to ΔZ, LD and R (P ≤ 0.050) with the expectation of the LD measurements made at the peripheral edge (P ≤ 0.215) and R from the 3rd step onwards (P ≤ 0.100). In viewing these result visually, the gradual decline from a
point at the outer edge can be seen with a hierarchal order for ΔZ (Figure 2.3.4), LD (Figure 2.3.5) and R (Figure 2.3.6). A unique trend in R was also observed in the 20° sets where measurements initially declined but then proceed to rise (Figure 2.3.6).

Figure 2.3.3 (Reconstructed Micro-Radiographs): Dotted white lines indicate the analysis window for each step position. Green areas (■) indicate the patch which was taken as sound enamel and red indicates (●) patch which was sued for zero-point calibration; a) 20° left- and right-hand sets; b) 90° left- and right-hand sets; c) 180° left- and right-hand sets.

Figure 2.3.4 (ΔZ Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions): ΔZ (%Vol.µm) measurements are presented for each step from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion. Series are separated by groove angle condition (θ). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The number of individual values (n) for each series is listed in Table 3.3.1 Multiple comparisons for significant difference between θ groups at like positions are denoted alphabetically where a = 20° vs. 90°, b = 20° vs. 180° and c = 90° vs. 180° sets.
Artificial Occlusal Surface Morphology and Enamel Demineralisation | Ch.2

Figure 2.3.5 (LD Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions): LD (µm) measurements are presented for each step from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion. Series are separated by groove angle condition (θ). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The number of individual values (n) for each series is listed in Table 3.3.1. Multiple comparisons for significant difference between θ groups at like positions are denoted alphabetically where a = 20° vs. 90°, b = 20° vs. 180° and c = 90° vs. 180° sets.

Figure 2.3.6 (R Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions): R (%Vol) measurements are presented for each step from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion. Series are separated by groove angle condition (θ). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The number of individual values (n) for each series is listed in Table 3.3.1. Multiple comparisons for significant difference between θ groups at like positions are denoted alphabetically where a = 20° vs. 90°, b = 20° vs. 180° and c = 90° vs. 180° sets.
Artificial Occlusal Surface Morphology and Enamel Demineralisation

**Figure 2.3.7** ($S_{\text{Max}}$ Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions): $S_{\text{Max}}$ (%Vol) measurements are presented for each step from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion. Series are separated by groove angle condition ($\theta$). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The number of individual values ($n$) for each series is listed in Table 3.3.1. Multiple comparisons for significant difference between $\theta$ groups at like positions are denoted alphabetically where a = 20° vs. 90°, b = 20° vs. 180° and c = 90° vs. 180° sets.

Measurements made for $S_{\text{Max}}$ (Figure 2.3.7) were highly variable and although some points were determined as significant ($P < 0.050$), no clear relationship could be established for either. Figure 2.3.7 illustrates the relationships graphically in $S_{\text{Max}}$. Here a linear increase with recession from the peripheral edge was visible in the 90° set whereas in the 20° and 180° sets, measurements reached a maximum in the central areas of the lesions. For the majority of points, no statistically significant differences were found (Figure 2.3.7).

**2.3.3 Demineralisation at various Groove Depths in pH-Cycled Systems**

From each BEB multiple thin sections survived the sectioning process. These sections were analysed and the results aggregated on the basis of the BEB from which they came. Parameters of $\Delta Z$, $L D$, $R$ and $S_{\text{Max}}$ were recorded for each BEB and are presented in Table 2.3.2. Within this this data, each condition and analysis point (i.e. distance from the peripheral edge of the artificial groove) defined groups and the number of measurements was taken to be the number of enamel blocks which were analysed. No significant difference was found between left- and right-hand sets at each analysis point for any of the parameters measured ($P \geq 0.362$).
## Table 2.3.2 (TMR Parameters from pH-Cycling Exposed Grooves): The numbers of BEBs used (n) are presented for each condition at steps 1 to 6 correspond to measurements made from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion in towards the inner crevice of the groove.

Aggregating results based on θ, significant differences were found between R, LD and $S_{Max}$ ($P < 0.027$) however no significant difference was found between measurements of ΔZ ($P = 0.285$). Multiple comparisons revealed that the average LD was significantly higher ($P = 0.010$) in the 180° set when compared to the 20° set whereas no difference was determined between the 90° set and either of the other two groups ($P ≥ 0.702$) however a decrease in the average LD was observed as θ was reduced (Figure 2.3.8). R was significantly lower between the 20° and 90° sets ($P = 0.025$) and although a numerical decrease was observed as θ was increased, no significant difference was found between the 180° and 90° sets ($P = 0.655$). Significant difference were found between the average value of $S_{Max}$ between the 20° set and each of the other 2 angle conditions ($P ≤ 0.001$) however, between the 180° and 90° sets, no differences were seen between the values obtained for this parameter; this applied to both numerical comparisons and statistical tests ($P = 0.991$).

Finer analysis applied to each set on recession from the peripheral edge found ΔZ to behave in a way which appeared linked to the structure of the grooves (Figure 2.3.9). This was very dissimilar to that which was obtained from the lesions which were produced in the AGSs (Figure 2.3.4). Concerning the present data set (Figure 2.3.9), significant differences were found between θ at each step ($P ≤ 0.001$) apart from at the 4th step (2.4 mm from the peripheral edge ($P = 0.616$).
Artificial Occlusal Surface Morphology and Enamel Demineralisation

Figure 2.3.8 (TMR Parameters in Relation to θ): Parameters of LD (µm), R (%Vol), SMax (%Vol) and ΔZ (%Vol.µm) are presented as combined measurements for each groove angle condition (θ). Error bars represent a 95% t-distribution based confidence interval. The number of individual values (n) for each series is listed in Table 2.3.2.

Figure 2.3.9 (ΔZ Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions): ΔZ (%Vol.µm) measurements are presented for each step from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion. Series are separated by groove angle condition (θ). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The number of individual values (n) for each series is listed in Table 2.3.2. Multiple comparisons for significant difference between θ groups at like positions are denoted alphabetically where a = 20° vs. 90°, b = 20° vs. 180° and c = 90° vs. 180° sets.
In the other three steps (1 – 3), no significant difference were found between the 90° and 180° sets (P ≥ 0.752) was however ΔZ was significantly higher in the 20° set (P ≤ 0.011). From the 5th step onwards, the trend in ΔZ behaved much more similarly between the 90° and 20° sets where the reduction was similar in both conditions and the difference between groups could not be distinguished statistically (P ≥ 0.056). Conversely, ΔZ remained a steady value across this same period in the 180° set therefore differentiating the values obtained from that of either of the other two conditions (P ≤ 0.032).

![Figure 2.3.10](image.png)

**Figure 2.3.10 (LD Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions):** LD (µm) measurements are presented for each step from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion. Series are separated by groove angle condition (θ). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The number of individual values (n) for each series is listed in Table 2.3.2. Multiple comparisons for significant difference between θ groups at like positions are denoted alphabetically where a = 20° vs. 90°, b = 20° vs. 180° and c = 90° vs. 180° sets.

LD followed a similar pattern to ΔZ however the difference between the 20° set and the other two angle conditions were much less pronounced (Figure 2.3.10). In the outer 4 sets of the grooves (1 – 4), no significant differences were found between and of the angle conditions (P ≥ 0.101). However past this point, an obvious divergence in these parameters occurred. In the 20° set, LD decreased markedly and was significantly lower than was found in either of the other 2 conditions (P = 0.044). LD in the 90° set was significantly lower than was found in the 180° set but higher than in the 20° set (P ≤ 0.049). Therefore confirming the visual observations made in that LD behaved differently between angle conditions in the inner areas of the grooves.
The results determined for R (Figure 2.3.11) again demonstrated a similar relationship as was found for LD and ΔZ. Both the 90° and 180° sets were not found to be significantly different between each other in the outer 4 steps (P ≥ 0.137) although R degrease in the inner 2 steps of the groove (5 – 6) from the 90° set resulting a significantly lower value being determined in the set (P ≤ 0.024). However, the decrease in R meant that an initially dissimilar set of values (P ≤ 0.007) between the 90° and 20° sets in the outer 1.8 mm of the groove (steps 1 – 3) was no longer dissimilar in the inner 1.2 mm (P ≥ 0.557) as the trend in the 90° groups diverged from that in the 180° group (steps 4 – 6) and followed a course more similar to what occurred in the 20° set. As with LD and ΔZ, no significant difference were found between an of the angle conditions in the 4th step from the peripheral edge (P = 0.768).

![Figure 2.3.11](image)

**Figure 2.3.11 (R Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions):** R (%Vol) measurements are presented for each step from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion. Series are separated by groove angle condition (θ). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The number of individual values (n) for each series is listed in Table 2.3.2. Multiple comparisons for significant difference between θ groups at like positions are denoted alphabetically where a = 20° vs. 90°, b = 20° vs. 180° and c = 90° vs. 180° sets.

Interesting results were obtained for S_{Max} from this experiment (Figure 2.3.12), these were essentially very different to that which occurred in the AGSs (Figure 2.3.7). In the pH-cycling exposed structures, a much more definitive trend in S_{Max} was observed. The degree of mineralisation in the SL (S_{Max}) was notably lower in the 20° set than in either of the other 2 groove angle (θ) conditions (P ≤ 0.001) however in the inner 2 steps of the grooves, no difference could be determined (P ≤ 0.547) between each of the 3 angle conditions with respect to this parameter.
Artificial Occlusal Surface Morphology and Enamel Demineralisation | Ch.2

**Figure 2.3.12** ($S_{\text{Max}}$ Measured across the Length of the Enamel Lesions): $S_{\text{Max}}$ (%Vol) measurements are presented for each step from the peripheral edge of the enamel lesion. Series are separated by groove angle condition ($\theta$). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The number of individual values (n) for each series is listed in Table 2.3.2. Multiple comparisons for significant difference between $\theta$ groups at like positions are denoted alphabetically where a = 20° vs. 90°, b = 20° vs. 180° and c = 90° vs. 180° sets.

However, during the collection of this data, it was noted that lesion formation appeared to be hindered in the inner 2 steps of the grooves within the pH-cycling model for both the 90° and 20° sets. This result was confirmed by the low LD and $\Delta Z$ measurements presented above (Figure 2.3.9 and Figure 2.3.10 respectively). In the case of an obvious SL, the TMR software was used to determine where the SL appeared and in this case, an imperfect process may have led the observed results. However, clearly definable SLs were apparent in the outer areas of the lesions produced in all conditions, therefore the measurements of $S_{\text{Max}}$ can be confirmed as lower in the 20° set as was indicated by the date present above (Figure 2.3.12).
2.4.0 Discussion

In the AGS-exposed BEBs, $\Delta Z$ (Figure 2.3.4) and LD (Figure 2.3.5) decreased on recession from the peripheral edge of the both 20° and 90° sets. This finding was expected as work which has investigated the demineralisation within similar (albeit smaller scale) structures found similar results. Within artificially created grooves the majority of demineralisation occurs in the outermost regions [Lagerweij et al., 1996; Smits and Arends, 1986] and in reference to natural situation, fluoride accumulates in the outer-most region of the entrance to occlusal fissures [Pearce et al., 1999] therefore indicating past history of demineralising challenges in this area. Within other works this pattern of demineralisation was also found [Deng et al., 2004; Deng et al., 2005; Zaura et al., 2005]. Zaura et al. [2002] attributed this to the buffering capacity of the enamel tissue within the groove [Zaura et al., 2002] and within a static AGS system these same factors would be at work. However, within a pH cycled system, the fluidity of the medium, solution turnover and the rinsing stages should reduce the effect of the accumulation of mineral ions within this space [Buzalaf et al., 2010; White, 1995] although this may not have been the case completely.

Lesion character also varied on recession from the peripheral edge of the grooved in the AGS-exposed BEBs as was the case in those exposed to the pH cycling system although the character was essentially dissimilar in the lesions produced within either system. The viscosity of the solution was minimal within the pH-cycling system therefore allowing greater penetration of the de-and re-mineralising challenges whereas the gel within the AGS hindered the movement of mineral ions within the system [Lagerweij et al., 1996]. This therefore provides an obvious explanation of the marked reduction in total demineralisation in those BEBs which were exposed to the AGS as compared to those which were subjected to the pH-cycling system.

An unusual result was also noted within the AGS-exposed BEBs from the 180° set. Apparently greater demineralisation occurred in the outer areas of the lesions (Figure 2.3.4) and this result did not occur in the same structures which were subject to the pH-cycled model (Figure 2.3.9). Within an AGS this phenomenon is not uncommon. Known as flaring [Lynch, 2006], it results from a comparatively greater deficit in the ionic stagnation layer at the periphery of the lesion [Ruben et al., 1999]. Interestingly, the incremental measurements made for the purposes of this experiment show that the effect of this was limited to the outer 1 mm of the lesions edge and that across the main body of the lesion the difference were not significant in-line with that estimated by Ruben et al. [1999]. However, within a system which aims to visualise how small changes in the topography of the tissue effect the development and progression of caries lesions, this effect may be significant. Therefore, with respect to the applicability in simulating groove or fissured structures a pH-cycled abiotic model would be more appropriate than a static AGS.
In terms of R values, initially unusual results were also found in lesions created within the 20° condition from the AGSs (Figure 2.3.6). Between all groove angle conditions these values were similar in the outer regions but, within the 20° set, a pronounced decrease in R was observed which then proceeded to increase sharply. However, in relations to lesion character, the reasons for these observed results became clear. At surface softening stages [Arends and Christoffersen, 1986], the measurement of R increases as the lesion progresses as R is the average mineral lost over a given area [Arends, 1995] and therefore, as surface softening gives way to initial lesion formation, R decreases as LD increases at greater rate. As the subsurface lesion then begins to grow, R continues to increase once again. LD is limited by the penetration of the un-dissociated acid but R represents the extent of demineralisation over the duration of demineralising challenges. As demineralisation was expected to be hindered by both diffusion [Bollet-Quivogne et al., 2005; Lagerweij et al., 1996] and buffering [Zaura et al., 2002] within the narrow grooves, this relationship can explain the observed trend in R seen. Conversely, the more open structure of the 90° and 180° sets and the fluidity of the medium within the pH-cycling model would have allowed for maintenance of an ionic deficit sufficient for the formation of a more advanced lesion character [Ruben et al., 1999].

No differences were found between any of the angle conditions in outermost areas of the grooves which within the pH-cycled model but, in the 20° and 90° sets, a sharp decline was seen in the parameters of ΔZ (Figure 2.3.9), LD (Figure 2.3.10) and R (Figure 2.3.11) in the inner 1.5 mm of the structure. This may have been due to the residual fluid which remained within these areas. With an expected volume of 160 µL over a length of 8 mm, it is would be reasonable to assume that residual liquid could have remained and therefore prevented the complete action of the rinsing stages. This would result in mixing and a degree of neutralisation of the 2 buffer solutions and a greater time within which the tissue would be exposed to higher fluoride concentrations (Solution B). Diffusion into the porous enamel tissue would be expectedly greater and the demineralising challenged would be lower. This effect is analogous to that experience by Matsunda et al. [2005, 2006] where more narrow structures were found to inhibit demineralisation even within a pH-cycling system.

Moreover, no exact relationships could be determined for SL measurements within either model. In the AGS-exposed BEBs, SL measurements were significantly different at some points but only in the minority of the measurements (Figure 2.3.7). Under pH-cycling conditions, the SL was much lower in areas which were closer to the periphery of the groove (Figure 2.3.12) and between groove angle conditions exposed within this condition, much less variation was seen. This relationship is hard to explain as the consistency of the measured areas do show some pattern in the lesions which were created in the pH-cycling system. It is possible that the difference results from chance however some explanation may lay in the concept that solution residue remained within the grooves of the more
acute 20° set. In much the same way that fine angle in the crevice of the 20°set may have held onto either solution for longer periods of time, this lack of turnover may have led to greater fluoridation of the enamel tissue in the base of the groove would have protected the tissue from dissolution and therefore may have been equivalent to exposing a smaller area of mineral to the bulk solution. The bulk solution would have therefore presented a greater deficit and the demineralising challenges would have been greater leading to a lower mineral volume in the SL. However, further work would be needed in order to confirm that this mechanism was in fact responsible for the observed results.

As was noted for the point of flaring evident in the AGS-exposed BEBs, lesions produced in the 180° set of the pH-cycling model were much less variable along their length (Figure 3.3.9). This was true for the measurements of LD and R therefore supporting the view that the pH-cycling system is able to produce more homogenous lesions [Ruben et al., 1999]. Further to this, a direct relationship can be seen for decreasing ΔZ on recession from the peripheral edge in lesions produced within both systems. Furthermore, this relationship became more pronounced as the groove angle (θ) was reduced therefore supporting the view that the topography of the surface was a key determiner of demineralisation within both systems.

Although the model provides an approximation, several aspects of the natural surface are not accounted for. For example, carious demineralisation usually occurs at areas where accessibility is lowest [Juhl, 1983a]. This is due to the inaccessibility of stagnations sites and the susceptibility of the tissue within such areas [Carvalho et al., 1989; Pearce et al., 1999; Robinson et al., 1995a]. In the current models, the smallest groove angles which was investigated were the 20° set which is actually larger than any fissure would be [Ekstrand and Bjørndal, 1997; Ekstrand et al., 1991] and therefore, more acute angles should be investigated. Secondly, the current model simulates groove structure is cross-section only whereas in actuality, the area within the groove was trapezoid. The deficit produced at either face of the groove was compensated by analysis of central area however the stark geometry of these structures which are in contrast to the natural occlusal surfaces. Moreover, as is also evident from the Figure 2.1.2a that the definition of a groove based on the apex angle alone should be interpreted with caution as the slope of enamel surfaces is seldom straight.

The fluidity of the medium in the pH-cycling model creates an unrealistic situation in that the turnover of mineral ions within the groove is high. On the other hand, the static AGS leads to a build-up of mineral ions which would presumably occur within natural plaques [Duckworth and Gao, 2006]. However the direction of the acidic challenge and concurrent dissolution process [Lagerweij et al., 1996] mean that lesion formation is significantly different from the cycles of acidification which occur in vivo. This is an inescapable shortfall of these abiotic models. In order to afford the
process of de- and remineralisation challenges along with process of ionic stagnation and confinement within a microenvironment, a living biofilm is ultimately required. In this sense, the relative efficacy of either system is not important. However what was shown by the comparison between systems was that somewhat heterogeneous lesion are produced as a result of the topography of the surface and with the use of a gelatinous demineralisation system (AGS).

The assembly of the artificial groove structures proved time consuming and technically difficult due to the manufacture of these groove structures resulted in an extremely low-throughput design due to the tissue required and the extent of preparation involved. Fashioning the enamel tissue into perfectly cuboidal shapes was not always possible and although these technical difficulties were overcome with persistence, a large number of BEBs did not meet the standards required by preparation process. The fact that an entire edge was required so as that adjacent BEB pairs met flush led to the rejection of several BEBs and due to the value of enamel sections, such losses created a limiting situation. However, the groove structures did prove useful in providing a basic experimental model for investigating enamel demineralisation within such areas. However, the removal of one of the main benefits of in vitro research (the requirement of relatively little resources) was ultimately an inescapable shortfall. Moreover, it should also be noted that the difficulties were encountered when using relative simple structures and these differed markedly from natural occlusal surfaces (Figure 2.1.1). Nevertheless, the initial aim of simulating the occlusal surface in a standardised and reproducible way was met albeit with requirements which may prove contradictory to the latter. In summation, less resource-intensive approaches should be explored.
2.5.0 Conclusions
Both pH cycling systems and AGSs provided useful information over the production of caries within groove structures. However, these were essentially dissimilar to what could be expected within a biological model and this was principally due to the directional aspect of the systems. Interestingly, the pH cycling systems provided a noticeably greater degree uniformity within the resultant lesions although these did not prove any more effective than AGSs in that neither fully simulated the pattern of lesion progression exhibited by natural plaque biofilms. The artificial occlusal surface design was, however, effective in providing a basic model to simulate occlusal surfaces although its efficacy was low in comparison to simpler methods as the benefits which could be gained were outweighed by the demands of production.

Moreover, comparisons of the two systems used (AGS and pH-cycling) showed benefits and weaknesses on both sides. Within the present work, a pH-cycling model proved more effective as the fluidity of the medium and penetration into the groove structure was greatly improved although, ultimately, neither met the full criteria of natural plaque biofilm with respect to ionic stagnation, penetration into the occlusal structure and defined episodes of de- and re-mineralisation. Essentially, the lesion character exhibited down the length of the groove structures was, in both cases, significantly different from that which is produced in vivo. As either model was shown to possess some of these aspects, a hybrid system could prove more effective in the absence of a true cariogenic biofilm community.
Chapter 3: Enamel Tissue Orientation and the Onset of Enamel Demineralisation.

3.1.0 Introduction
Enamel tissue exhibits many properties which differ depending on the direction in which the property in question is tested [Shore et al., 1995b]. These include aspects such as: physical strength, propagation of fractures [Bechtle et al., 2010], lesion progression [Bjørndal and Thylstrup, 1995] and mineral dissolution kinetics [Anderson and Elliott, 2000]. Anderson and Elliott [2000] explored the latter concept with the aim of providing specific evidence over dissolution kinetics in relation to enamel prism orientation. However, the experimental design did not fully simulate some of the factors which are known to augment the process of caries lesion formation and this was done in favour of providing a clear view of diffusion during mineral dissolution. Although, as accepted by the authors, this is not the case for natural lesion formation. Nonetheless, what was demonstrated was an increased rate of demineralisation in the enamel tissues which were closer to the EDJ apparent in both cross sections and incremental surface removal reactions [Anderson and Elliott, 2000].

Figure 3.1.1 (Chemical Heterogeneity of the Enamel Tissue): Both images represent a cross-sectional view of the enamel tissue from human molars; a) Mineral density (%Vol) profile [Robinson et al., 1971], b) exemplified carbonate distribution [Leach and Edgar, 1983]; Both diagrams were adapted from Robinson et al. 1995a.

The concept of carving groove structures was first introduced by Smits and Arends [1986]. The convenience of this technique has led to its use in several in vitro [Deng et al., 2004; Deng and ten Cate, 2004; Deng et al., 2005; Smits and Arends, 1986; Yassin, 1995; Zaura-Arite et al., 1999] and in situ studies [Smits and Arends, 1988; Zaura et al., 2002] studies. However, as is partially illustrated above Figure 3.1.1, chemical [Theuns et al., 1986a; Theuns et al., 1986b] and structural [Shore et al., 1995b] variations exist which mean that the extent of demineralisation can be significantly altered depending on the structural organisation of the tissue [Meurman and Frank, 1991]. It would therefore stand to reason that these U-shaped grooves would exhibit the same gradient down their
length as was found on recession from the natural surface [Anderson and Elliott, 2000]. In effect, a groove cut perpendicular to the natural surface of the enamel would penetrate downwards through the natural structure and it is therefore possible that this would influence lesion formation within such grooves.

Diffusion and buffering capacity have also been identified as factors which may augment lesion progression within artificial groove structures [Zaura et al., 2002]. Initially, these factors alone would not result in any alteration as to what would be found between a natural occlusal structure and artificial grooves of the same dimensions and so would provide a reasonable comparison. However, the prismatic orientation of enamel tissue varies depending on the site of the tooth which is encountered [Shore et al., 1995b]. Generally, enamel prisms are orientated transverse between the natural enamel surface and the underlying dentine [Frazier, 1968]. However, due to the deposition of tissue during amelogenesis, several layers are formed which slant toward the cuspal edge of the labial surfaces [Hillson, 2005] (as illustrated in Figure 2.2.1).

In natural occlusal surface, the orientation of the enamel prisms approaches an acute angle of almost 20° to the surface at the entrance to the fissure [Shore et al., 1995b] although as the shape of these sites varies as does the orientation of the prisms and, depending on the intersection of the developing lobes (which dictates the depth and shape of the fissure), this may result in enamel prisms which are orientated almost perpendicular to the enamel surface. For the purposes of producing artificial fissures the specific site which the enamel tissue was sourced from would therefore be important to consider as this would have an influence on the orientation of the enamel prisms as well as the chemical composition within the tissue [Robinson et al., 1995a; Weatherell et al., 1974; Weatherell et al., 1967] or susceptibility [de Groot et al., 1986; Macpherson et al., 1991]. In this case, the assumption that enamel mineral will possess the same characteristics on recession down its depth would be incorrect. If such structures are to be used, the contribution of this to the lesions which are produced within should be investigated.

### 3.1.1 Aims and Objectives

Investigations into the relationship between prism orientation and carious lesion formation will be conducted with the aim of exploring the patterns of enamel demineralisation within U-shaped grooves. A combination of abiotic demineralisation systems will be employed in order to provide a greater comparison. The strengths and weaknesses of using enamel tissue (specifically bovine incisal tissue) will also be evaluated as they would relate to natural occlusal surface demineralisation. Specifically, microstructural and chemical gradients within natural bovine tissue will be investigated for their influence demineralisation within an artificial carved groove structure.
3.2.0 Materials and Methods

3.2.1 Prism Orientation and Enamel Demineralisation
As described in previous sections (Section 2.2.0), bovine incisors were sourced and fashioned into BEBs. Specific to this protocol, BEBs were approximately 8 x 5 x 5mm in size with an enamel surface being 8 x 5mm and were selected on the basis of the thickness of this enamel layer; this being the measured by the distance from the enamel surface and the enamel-dentine junction (EDJ) on all four visible sides. To this end, a depth in excess of 1 mm was deemed acceptable.

Those BEBs which met this criterion were then polished on each 8 mm side composed of both enamel and dentine layers. Surfaces were levelled 240-P carburundumpaper (Wet and Dry Abrasive Sheets; ABL Resin and Glass, Cheshire, UK) and subsequently polished with 1200-P sheets (Rhynowet Sheets; Insasa, Indústria de Abrasivos, Spain). Non-residual making tape (Guangzhou Broadya Adhesive Products Co., Ltd., Guangdong, China) was then cut into rectangles 1 x 6mm and placed over either the side of the enamel sections immediately above the enamel-dentine junction or on the enamel surface of the BEBs. BEBs were then painted in acid-resistant varnish (MaxFactor Nailfinity; Procter and Gamble, Weybridge, UK) and once dried (approx. 15 min) the masking tape was carefully removed leaving an exact area of enamel exposed. Figure 3.2.1 and Figure 3.2.2 illustrate this process for natural surface and lateral demineralisation windows respectively.

![Figure 3.2.1 (BEBs Painting Process)]: a) Bovine incisors were first sectioned into BEBs; b) a 1 x 6 mm piece of non-residual masking-tape was cut and placed central over the enamel surface; c) the making-tape was then smoothed down to ensure it met flush with the enamel surface; d) the entire BEB pained in an acid-resistant varnish; e) a period of approximately 15 min was allowed to pass so as that the varnish became tacky; f) the masking-tape “stencil” was removed leaving an exact area of 1 x 6 mm of the enamel surface exposed.
enamel tissue orientation and the onset of enamel demineralisation

3.2.1 Static Hydrogel Demineralisation Model

Abiotic demineralisation systems used in this experiment were similar to those used in previous sections. In brief, 2 mM phosphate from NaH$_2$PO$_4$ (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) and 2 mM calcium from CaCl$_2$.2H$_2$O (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) were added to both the gel and the liquid phases. The gel consisted of MeC (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) at 8% w/v and the liquid consisted of 100 mM lactic acid adjusted to pH 4.6 by titration with 1 M NaOH (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK). Six BEBs (3 of type “l” and 3 of type “f”; Figure 3.3.2 and Figure 3.3.1 respectively) were affixed to the bottom of a disposable 50mL Sterilin container using Carding Wax (Associated Dental Products Ltd., Kemdent Works, Swindon, UK) so as the exposed enamel surface faced upwards. Approximately 20 g of the gel was first poured into the containers immersing the BEBs completely and was allowed to set before a further 20 g of the acid solution was poured over each gel. In total 9 BEBs of each type were used ensuring that both acid-gel systems and internal replicates could each be considered in triplicate. Completed systems were incubated at 37 °C for 10 days before being carefully removed, rinsed in dH$_2$O and stored with a moist cotton pellet before further analysis.

3.2.2 Demineralisation within U-Shaped Grooves

BEBs were prepared to dimensions of approximately 8 x 5 x 5 mm so as that an enamel surface of 8 x 5 mm was exposed and were selected on the basis of the thickness of the enamel layer which was
visible on the adjacent sides of each BEB. Depth was indicated as the distance of the enamel surface to the enamel-dentine junction (EDJ) and a depth in excess of 1.5 mm was deemed acceptable however it was noted at this point that curvature of the initial tooth structure may still be apparent in the EDJ after correction of the enamel surface by polishing; therefore a uniform distance of < 2 mm could not be guaranteed from inspection of the depth of the EDJ using the visible side alone. Nevertheless, in the absence of a more definitive technique this method was accepted and those BEBs which met with the criterion were selected.

BEBs were then painted completely in acid resistant varnish and allowed to dry for approximately 1 h. Once the varnish had dried completely, BEBs were fixed onto ceramic anvils using Green-Stick (Kerr Corporation, California, USA) and a small groove cut into the enamel surface to a depth of less than 2 mm using a precision wire saw equipped with a 100 µm (width) diamond wire (Model 3241; Well Diamantdrahtsagen GmbH., Mannheim, Germany). Great care was taken to ensure that the groove cut did not penetrate past the EDJ however, as described above, it was not always sufficient to ensure depth in relation to an unknown maximum (the EDJ with respect to the enamel surface). The groove preparation process is illustrated in Figure 3.2.3.

![Figure 3.2.3 (BEBs Painting and Groove-Caving Process): a) Bovine incisors were first sectioned into BEBs; b) the entered bed section was then pained in an acid resistant varnish; c) after approximately 30 minutes (when the varnish had dried) a cut was made into the surface the enamel surface of the pained BEB using a precision diamond wire saw and to an approximate depth of 1.5 mm.](image)

### 3.2.2.1 Enamel Demineralisation Systems

Various demineralisation systems were used in this experiment with the aim of providing as representative as possible examples of how carved groove structures would behave when faced with a demineralising challenge. The systems used where base on 2 of those used previously and a combination of both: static acid-gel (Section 2.2.1), pH cycling (Section 2.2.2) and pH-cycling with an ionic stagnation layer (Combination of the method used in Sections 2.2.1 and 2.2.2).

For all conditions 4 BEBs with carved grooves were fixed into the bottom of 50 mL Sterilin (Sterilin Ltd., Newport, UK) containers using Carling wax (Associated Dental Products Ltd., Kemdent Works, Swindon, UK). For static acid-gel systems (Model #1), an 8% MeC w/v gel was made containing 10
mM phosphate from NaH$_2$PO$_4$ and approximately 20 g of the gel was poured into each Sterilin so as that the BEBs were completely covered. Once the gel had set, a further 20 g of 100 mM lactic acid solution, also containing 10 mM phosphate from NaH$_2$PO$_4$, was poured over the gel layer and the completed acid-gel system left at 20 °C (thermostatically controlled room temperature) for 10 d.

BEBs selected for pH cycling (Model #2) were exposed to a cycle consisting of demineralising (Solution A) and remineralising (Solution B) solutions for 6 days and were left under to Solution B for the entire of the 7th day before the experiment was stopped. The cycle consisted of 6 h exposure to Solution A followed by 18 h exposure to Solution B. The compositions of each of these solutions are listed in Table 2.2.1. BEBs in the 3rd condition (pH cycling with an ionic stagnation layer; Model #3) were exposed to these same conditions however a MeC gel layer consisting of 8% w/v MeC, and with a mass of 20 g, was introduced first so as that, like Condition #1, the BEBs were completely immersed. Figure 3.2.4 depicts this experimental design schematically.

![Figure 3.2.4 (Comparison of the Various Demineralisation Systems Used): a) BEBs immersed in remineralisation solution (ie. Solution B from Table 3.2.1); b) BEBs immersed in demineralisation phase (ie. Solution A from Table 3.2.1); BEBs immersed in an MeC gel layer beneath a remineralisation solution; d) BEBs immersed in an MeC gel layer beneath a demineralisation solution (Model #1). The pH-cycling rhythms used for both models #2 and #3 are indication.

### 3.2.3 Scanning Electron Microscopy

Scanning Electron Microscopy (SEM) was used to provide a confirmation of the supposed tissue orientation sectioning process in Section 3.2.1. BEBs were taken and sectioned along their transverse axis and the cut plane was then ground smooth on custom made diamond impregnated disks with a 15 µm particle size (Buehler, Illinois, USA). At this point, the smoothened surface was then scanned on Hitachi TM3000 desktop Scanning Electron Microscope (SEM; Hitachi High-technologies Europe).
GmbH., Berkshire, UK) up to magnifications of up to x2000. No coating procedures were required to image using this equipment.

Images were captured on software provided by the manufacturer (Version 02.03.02) using several scan points descending from the enamel surface inward towards the EDJ; these images were interpreted with respect to the prism orientation in the samples. The samples were then removed from their mount with the SEM and surfaces acid-etched in 100 mM HCl (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) for 30 seconds before being rinsed x3 in dH2O and scanned a second time at similar positions and to the same magnifications. As with the initial scans performed (those before the acid etching procedure), all images were captured on software provided by the manufacture and interpreted with respect to the orientation of the enamel prisms.

3.2.4 TMR Experimental Specifics

Due to the fact that BEBs were group according to condition it was possible to distinguish the orientation of the lesion by the visual appearance of the EDJ. Therefore, BEBs from the experiment described in Section 3.2.1 were first separated according to group before sectioning for TMR. Sectioning into the transverse orientation and preparation to the point of sample mounting onto the acetate sample frame was performed exactly as described in Section 2.2.3 for all BEBs. Statistics were performed as described in Section 2.2.4.
3.3.0 Results

3.3.1 SEM of Transverse Enamel Sections
Representative examples of the SEM images captured before acid etching of the transverse enamel sections are shown in Figure 3.3.1. At an initial magnification of x250 (Figure 3.3.1a), a grain is visible on both the enamel and the dentine layers of the section. This proceeds un-interrupted from the lower right of the section to the upper left. Also visible at this magnification are what appear to be damaged areas on the enamel surface. The darkened areas, resulting from a less electron-dense signal, serve as an indication of: depth of field, the density of the area which is viewed and the perspective due to electron deflection. It is concluded from the appearance of these darker areas at the enamel surface that they are the result of latter (damage to the enamel section during the TMR preparation process and not a result of reduced electron density by tissue demineralisation). Higher magnification (x2000) of the apparent tissue grain was also performed (Figure 3.3.1b). This higher magnification (x2000) relates to the central portion of the same transverse section as the x250 magnification was made from.

![SEM Images of the Transverse Section before Acid-Etching](image)

Figure 3.3.1 (SEM Images of the Transverse Section before Acid-Etching): a) x250 magnification of the transverse section of an enamel section following grinding on a diamond impregnated disk (scale bar = 300 µm), orange arrows (●) indicate possibly damaged areas at the enamel surface, inter-globular dentine is presented on false-colour orange (●); b) x2000 (scale bar = 30 µm) magnification of the central portion of the same enamel section illustrated in “a”. Enamel prisms are not visible in either image. Striated lines proceed at an angle of approximately 20° to the enamel surface and continue uninterrupted from the enamel portion through the EDJ and across the dentine.

Closer inspection of the grain in the tissue revealed it to be the composed of many small grooves approximately 1 – 3 µm in diameter. Both the uniform and straight alignment of these grooves is indicative of scuff marks. Examination of the dentine layers of these same sections was able to pick out further structures which were characteristic of this tissue. In Figure 3.3.2, the grain which proceeded from lower right to upper left in the example images of Figure 3.3.1 can be seen; this time proceeding almost horizontally with a slight upward-left slop. However, in this image, the grain is almost hidden by a much larger grain-like pattern in the tissue; this time proceeding from the lower left to the upper right of the image. This image was captured at an area immediately blow the
inter-globular dentine regions indicated on Figure 3.3.1a. Both the size and positions of these larger lines are consistent with what would be expected to be found in transverse sections of bovine dentine when in close proximity to the EDJ [Lopes et al., 2009].

Transverse sections viewed following acid-etching (100 mM HCl; 30 sec) are presented below in Figure 3.3.3. An x250 magnification is illustrated (Figure 3.3.3a), and in comparison to images which were captured before exposure to the acid-etch, a distinctly dissimilar pattern can be seen in both the enamel and the dentine portions of the transverse sections. In the outer 200 µm of the enamel layer, a uniform grain is apparent. This pattern continues to the inner 200 µm of the tissue however in less uniform of an arrangement. In the inner 200 µm, the grain as a whole becomes separated by less ordered areas approximately 120 µm apart. Closer inspections of the inner and outer enamel layers are presented in Figure 3.3.3c and 3.3.3b respectively. The areas to which they related are indicated by expansion boxes relative to Figure 3.3.3a.

Magnification at x1000 for these inner and outer enamel layers was able to confirm their identity as enamel prisms which had been exposed by exposure to the acid-etch. In the outer areas of the enamel tissue (approximately 390 µm from the EDJ; Figure 3.3.3c), the orientation of the enamel prisms are highly ordered; they proceed at an angle of approximately 45° to the enamel surface. Their orientation also appears slanted toward the transvers plane of view although it is not possible to conclude at what angle this forward slant existed. In close proximity to the EDJ (approximately 30 µm), the enamel prisms are again visible however in this area of the enamel tissue their order was found to be markedly dissimilar to the outer region described above.
The generalised orientation of enamel prisms is visible in all images as lines running approximately 45° from the enamel surface. This order appears greater at close proximity to the enamel surface as shown in “c” however breaks down on approach to the EDJ as shown in “b.”

The view of the structures within Figure 3.3.3b was enhanced further to a magnification of x2000 and viewed in more detail. On this closer inspection, the visible ends of the enamel prisms are approximately 4 µm in diameter however due to the un-quantified forward slant of the transverses sections it is not possible to determine the length of the prisms. The arrangement of the enamel prisms in Figure 3.3.3 appears cross-hatched; the ends of the prism structures, although frayed, can clearly be identified at between 40 and 60° angles with both left- and right-oriented slopes. From
this view, uniform lines can be made-out within the enamel prisms themselves. These lines run generally parallel to the prisms structure and are therefore indicative of enamel crystal clusters within the prisms themselves.

3.3.2 TMR of both Lateral- and Surface-Created Enamel Lesions

Of the 9 BEBs which were used for each condition (i.e. surface and lateral), 5 thin sections were cut across the length of the exposed enamel window. However, as was common during the TMR preparation, some thin sections were lost mainly due to damage to the fragile corners of the sections (Figure 3.3.5b). However the effects of this were marginal as only the central portions of the lesion were analysed initially (Figure 3.3.5) and in all, representative data sets (n = 9) were gained.

![Figure 3.3.5 (Reconstructed Micro-Radiographs): Examples of the radiographs obtained from lesions created on the lateral enamel surfaces. Dotted white lines indicated the analysis area which was used to generate TMR data. Green areas (■) represent the area taken as sound enamel and red areas (◇) indicate a dark used for zero-point calibration; a) an example of a lateral lesion confined to the enamel only; b) an example of a lateral lesion which progressed past the EDJ; c) an example of an enamel surface lesion; d) an enamel lesion which was formed on an irregular surface.](image)

Some irregularities were also noted in the enamel surfaces which lesions were created on (Figure 3.3.5d). In these case the lesion body invariably followed the contours of the enamel surface, therefore the source of the irregularity must have existed before lesion creation, and as no lack of section integrity could be determined, these section were not rejected. Mean measurements of $\Delta Z$, LD and $S_{\text{Max}}$ are listed in Table 3.3.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>(BEBs)</th>
<th>$\Delta Z \pm SD$</th>
<th>LD $\pm SD$</th>
<th>R $\pm SD$</th>
<th>$S_{\text{Max}} \pm SD$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Natural Surface</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1148.16 ± 222.34</td>
<td>51.32 ± 8.01</td>
<td>22.37 ± 2.58</td>
<td>66.85 ± 4.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral Surface</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1651.61 ± 454.76</td>
<td>62.52 ± 13.25</td>
<td>28.87 ± 13.25</td>
<td>64.21 ± 5.70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 3.3.1 (TMR Parameters from Natural and Lateral Enamel Surfaces):* Integrated mineral loss ($\Delta Z$), lesion depth (LD), average mineral loss (R), SL mineralisation ($S_{\text{Max}}$) and the number of transverse sections analysed along with the number of BEBs assigned to each condition. SDs for both lesion types (Surface and Lateral) are also presented for each TMR parameter measured.

Significant differences was detected ($P = 0.009$) between $\Delta Z$ values taken from either condition. This parameter was lower in lesions created on the natural enamel surface than in lesions created on the lateral sides of the enamel sections. Further to this, differences in LD measurements also reached significance ($P = 0.045$) and LD was greater in the lateral lesions than in the natural surface lesions.
However, the difference in R were not determined as significant (P = 0.127). The relationships between these parameters can also be seen in the mean scan profiles illustrated in Figure 3.3.6a and the graphical illustration of LD, R, S_max and ΔZ in Figure 3.3.6b. These results clearly show a similar lesion character in both conditions however to a lesser degree in the lesions which were created on the natural enamel surfaces.

Closer examination of the scan profiles in Figure 3.3.6a showed that S_max was on average lower in the lesions created on the lateral side of the BEBs. In contrast to the numerical indication from TMR parameters (Table 3.3.1), no significant difference could be detected between measurements of S_max (P = 0.281). Each of the parameters disused above are also illustrated below in Figure 3.3.6b. Within this illustration, the relationships between these parameters became clearer, the source of the difference, however, does not. In Figure 3.3.5, lesions from the lateral surface group appear exaggerated on approach to the EDJ and across the central potions a slope leading towards the EDJ can be seen in the lesion front. In the natural surface groups this profile is almost none-existent, rather lesions appear even across their entire length.

![Figure 3.3.6a (TMR Scan Profiles for Enamel Lesions created on Natural Surfaces or Lateral Sides): Measurements of mineral volume (%Vol) are expressed relative to a sound enamel patch and normalised within each individual measurement. Error bars represent the SD of the sample sets (for lateral surface lesion n = 33 and for natural surface lesion n = 43). Individual mineral volume measurements are presented at depth increments of 5 µm from the enamel surface (20%Vol).](image)
Statistical analysis of the lesions proceeding at a step approximately 300 µm from the EDJ (in the lesions analysed from the lateral condition) or indiscriminate with respect to direction (for lesions taken from the enamel surface conditions) was performed on a subset of 6 randomly selected enamel sections from each condition. These analyses revealed marked difference in the ΔZ measurements taken across the length of lesions created on lateral surfaces and this difference (P < 0.001) was found to exist in the first step (immediately adjacent to the EDJ; Figure 3.3.7a). A similar trend was also observed between LD measurements (Figure 3.3.7b) taken from this same group (P < 0.001). However, no significant difference (P ≥ 0.135) could be determined for any other parameter (R or S_{Max}) within the subset chosen of the lateral lesion group. For the lesions which were created on the natural enamel surfaces, no significant differences (P ≥ 0.456) were determined for any of the TMR parameters across the entire length of the lesions.
Enamel Tissue Orientation and the Onset of Enamel Demineralisation | Ch. 3

Figure 3.3.7a (ΔZ Measurements at increments from the EDJ): The step size used was approximately 300 µm and the image analysis window captured an area of approximately 600 µm. Error bars represent a 95% confidence interval based on a t-distribution (n = 6).

Figure 3.3.7b (LD Measurements at increments from the EDJ): The step size used was approximately 300 µm and the image analysis window captured an area of approximately 600 µm. Error bars represent a 95% confidence interval based on a t-distribution (n = 6). Dotted orange lines indicate a significant difference between sample sets.
3.3.3 TMR of U-Shaped Grooves

Of the 9 BEBs used in these experiments, 4 thin sections were initially cut. Upon removal from their respective demineralisation systems, thick deposits of residual nail varnish were found within the carved grooves. As the entry to the groove was blocked it was concluded that the action of the demineralisation systems would have been altered and the BEBs were therefore discarded. This resulted in 1 BEB being rejected from each group. During TMR preparation, several thin sections were also lost due to damage during the mounting process or because areas of the groove were notable cracked or had otherwise disintegrated. Ultimately, each condition (or demineralisation system) was left with 6 remaining samples from 3 BEBs (2 from each block).

Initial TMR image analysis, performed at x5/0.11 magnification, revealed that residual nail varnish remained within the grooves and was visible post-imaging (Figure 3.3.8). In all, 7 microradiographs exhibited nail varnish residue which made statistical analysis by TMR impossible. Nevertheless, some useful information was gained from the visual inspection of the sections.

![Figure 3.3.8 (Example Micro-Radiographs): Residual varnish is apparent within the grooves of each transverse section illustrated. Also shown are carved grooves which pass the EDJ and those which come close. Fractures on the enamel sections are also indicated by orange directional arrows (●); a) Model #1; b) Model #2; c) Model #3.](image)

Firstly, the grooves which were carved into the enamels surface did not appear consistent with respect to depth, shape or orientation within the tissue. Some grooves exhibited variable width down their shafts (which were expected to be parallel). In Figure 3.3.8, examples of this can be seen in each of the images presented. Further to this, the grooves did not proceed in a straight line from the enamel surface in towards the dentine layers. In Figure 3.3.8a a relative wide entrance fades into
a narrow groove at the base, the trajectory or path of this groove also veers left to right several times along its length. Also illustrated across all 3 example images is difference in orientation within the enamel tissue itself. The groove in Figure 3.3.8a cuts the enamel surface at approximately 80° and continues past the EDJ and into the dentine layers itself. In Figure 3.3.8b, the groove cuts at approximate right angles (90°) to the surface and approaches, but does not cross, the EDJ. The groove cut in Figure 3.3.8c crosses the enamel surface at an angle of almost 85° however appears to be relatively distant from the EDJ.

The actual depth to which each groove was cut also varied greatly in these sections. Measurements made from microscopic analysis of the radiographic images (Figure 3.3.9) determined mean groove depth to be 1.544 mm ± 0.386 SD and the mean distance of the base of the groove from the EDJ as 0.335 mm ± 0.481 SD (in instances where the groove cut past the EDJ a negative value was recorded). Combining the sum of each set provides the enamel layer thickness (ELT) for which a mean was calculated as 1.879 ± 0.223 SD. Comparisons of the actual groove structures by ANOVA found no significant difference between any of the 3 conditions when testing these parameters (P = 0.900, P = 0.605 and P = 0.371 respectively).

![Figure 3.3.9 (Groove Depth Plotted against Distance from the EDJ): The sum of groove depth and distance from the EDJ provides the measurement of ELT. Dotted grey lines represent a 95% confidence interval generated from a Pearson’s correlation.](image)

From the data illustrated in Figure 3.3.9, a strong negative correlation was found between groove depth and the distance of the groove from the EDJ ($R^2 = 0.890; P < 0.001$). However in comparing ELT, opposing relationships were found. ELT showed a weak but non-significant correlation with
groove depth ($R^2 = -0.188; P = 0.455$) whereas distance from the EDJ was found to have a significant correlation with ELT ($R^2 = 0.616; P = 0.007$).

In an effort to counteract the presence of residual nail varnish, enamel sections were again soaked in acetone (as described in the TMR method section; Section 2.2.4) and radiographed a second time in exactly the same manner as was done during the initial preparation. The same sections presented in Figure 3.3.8 are illustrated again (following the second round of preparation) in Figure 3.3.10.

### 3.3.3.1 Secondary TMR Analysis

Subsequent radiographic analysis performed following a repetition of the acetone treatments described in Section 2.2.3 (in this instance, no further cutting or polishing of the 80 µm thin sections was applied) confirmed that the majority of residual nail varnish had been removed from the grooves although some areas did remain at the deepest points of the carved grooves. In comparing like sections from Figure 3.3.10 (below) to those in Figure 3.3.8 (above), the vast majority of residue was clearly removed by repeated processing of the sections. However, some further damage to the enamel surfaces also occurred as a result.

![Figure 3.3.10 (Example Micro-Radiographs): Residual varnish is no longer apparent within the grooves illustrated. Each section related to those in Figure 3.3.8. Areas of lost tissue are indicated in false colour orange ( ); a) Model #1; b) Model #2; c) Model #3.](image)

Areas of demineralisation appeared to be present only in the outermost areas of the groove (with respect to enamel surface) although some suspect areas were noted in the base of the grooves when the EDJ had been breached. The most relevant areas were therefore analysed as 2 equidistant steps in the outer 600 µm of the each groove (x20/0.40 magnification) and the results listed below in Table 3.3.2. Deeper areas of suspected demineralisation are illustrated separately.
Table 3.3.2 (TMR Parameters within Carved Grooves): ΔZ (%Vol.µm), LD (µm), R (%Vol) and S_max (%Vol) along with the number of transverse sections analysed (n). SDs for each set are also presented.

Model #1 resulted in the greatest ΔZ at both the first and second steps (Figure 3.3.11a) and, as expected, ΔZ in the first step was higher than that found in the second (P < 0.001). In those grooves ran in Model #2 and #3, no difference was found (P ≥ 0.210) between the ΔZ measurements taken from either increment (first or second steps). At the first step from the enamel surface (300 µm), lesions from Model #1 had a significantly greater mineral loss those created in either of the other 2 models (P < 0.001) and between Models #2 and #3 no difference was found at this analysis point (P = 0.265). However, by the second step (600 µm), ΔZ in Model #1 was different only from that found in Model #2 (P = 0.005) whereas no significant difference was found between any of the other combinations with respect to this parameter (P ≥ 0.074).

Figure 3.3.11a (ΔZ Measurements from Caved Grooves incremented from the Enamel Surface): Data relates to that presented above in Table 3.3.2. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set and connector lines indicate a significant difference (P < 0.050) between adjoined sample sets.
LD and R also followed almost identical trends within this experiment. Visually, LD data appears the most similar to ΔZ in as much as that, in Figure 3.3.11b, a marked difference can be seen in measurements taken from both the first and second steps on Model #1. However Model #2 and #3 appear similar at both of these points and this observation was confirmed statistically as with ΔZ; a difference was found between each step for Model #1 (P < 0.001) which was not in either of the other 2 models (P ≥ 0.165). Between models a significant difference was found in Model #1 from Model #2 and #3 at the first step (P ≤ 0.001) but not at the second (P = 0.205). As in other cases, no difference was found between Model #2 and #3 at the first step either (P = 0.536).

The relationship in R displays, again, a comparable trend at the first step but seemingly the most different at the second (Figure 3.3.11c). However, R did follow the same trend as ΔZ and LD in comparisons by step position (no significant difference was found in Models #2 and #3 but in Model #1 a difference was found; P ≥ 0.702 and P = 0.022 respectively). Between models at the first step, R measured from lesions create in Model #1 was again larger than Models #2 and #3 (P ≤ 0.003) and both Model #2 and #3 were determined as significantly different (P = 0.147). However at the second step, Model #2 and #3 did generate a significantly different set of R values (P = 0.041) as did Model #1 and Model #2 (P = 0.004) although Models #1 and #3 did not (P = 0.350).
Figure 3.3.11c (R Measurements from Caved Grooves incremented from the Enamel Surface): Data relates to that presented above in Table 3.3.2. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set and connector lines indicate a significant difference (P < 0.050) between adjoined sample sets.

Figure 3.3.11d (S\textsubscript{min} Measurements from Caved Grooves incremented from the Enamel Surface): Data relates to that presented above in Table 3.3.2. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set and connector lines indicate a significant difference (P < 0.050) between adjoined sample sets.
For the remaining parameter of $S_{\text{Max}}$ (Figure 3.3.11d), statistical tests were unable to determine any difference between lesions measured at either step for each model tested ($P \geq 0.118$ and $P \geq 0.265$ respectively). Between models, there was no significant difference found in $S_{\text{Max}}$ at the second step ($P \geq 0.060$). However, in the first step, $S_{\text{Max}}$ was higher in the lesions extracted from Model #1 when compared to Model #2 ($P = 0.009$) although not when compared to Model #3 ($P = 0.377$). Likewise, no significant difference was found between Models #2 and #3 ($P = 0.049$).
3.4.0 Discussion
The initial SEM images which were captured of transverse enamel sections (Figure 3.3.1) showed striated lines which proceeded across both enamel and dentine portions of the tissues. Due to this continuity and the fact that they bore no resemblance to any other structure which is commonly associated with the enamel/dentine tissue, it was concluded that the most likely source was an artefact of the preparation process. Namely scuffs which resulted from the abrasive action of the diamond impregnated grinding disk (Figure 2.2.4). However, the particle size of the grinding disks was made to a specification of 15 µm and close examination of the SEM images estimates the width of the particulate to be between 1 and 3 µm. Initially this would rule-out a forensic link to the source of the artefact however the actual grinding disks which were used were over 10-years old. It is therefore likely that the disks themselves had become worn down which would provide finer grinding surface such as the one that is evident from the marks left in the enamel sections. Further to this, during the successive removal of the tissue a build-up of fine residue occurs on the surface of the grinding disk. This is controlled by rinsing with dH₂O however removal may not be complete meaning that only the more jagged points of the diamond particles protrude; these points being smaller than the actual particle size. Lastly, the multi-directional action used during grinding creates an overlap in the grinding plane, as with the build-up of residue, the result would be that only the grain carved by the tips of the more jagged points would be visible. In reality, it is likely that all three of these factors contributed to the observe result. Even without further preparation some of the natural structures of the dentine layer were visible under the high (x1200) magnification. The structures visible in Figure 3.3.2 are consistent with the size and direction of that which would be expected from the dentine tubules within bovine enamel [Lopes et al., 2009].

Post-acid-etching, the structure and orientation of the enamel prisms was exceptionally clear (Figure 3.3.3). In the outer region of the enamel the prisms were generally more ordered that was found in the areas which were closer to the EDJ and this was in-line with what would expected of enamel tissue [Bechtle et al., 2010]. From the cross-sectional incisal image captured in Figure 2.2.1, Striae of Retzius are visible and these would correspond to the perikymata structures in Figure 3.3.3 [Hillson, 2005]. Although, in the transverse section the enamel prisms did not project the entire length of the enamel tissue, this was most likely due to the orientation of the traverse section. Closer inspection of the prism structures reveals a series of overlapping structures with those closer to the EDJ and above those closer to the natural enamel surface. This would be consistent with a transverse section which was slanted towards the viewing plane. Unfortunately, fully 3-dimentional aspects cannot be accounted for when viewing enamel sections in a single transverse plane however it should be remembered that bovine enamel may exhibit a more disorder structure than human tissue.
3.4.1 Lesion Progression on Lateral and Natural Surfaces

Given relatively small sample sets, the fact that a greater amount of demineralisation was observed in the lateral surface lesion group when compared to the lesions produced on natural enamel surfaces variation in the chemical composition of the enamel tissue itself (Figure 3.1.1) is likely to have played a prominent role in modulating the results. However the effect of this should have been minimised by the use of the relatively flat labial sections. Producing the BEBs from these surfaces would give the added advantage that, generally, the broader and flatter regions of the enamel tissue possess a greater mineral content and, hence would be subject to less variation from the inclusion of organic components or chemical variations [Robinson et al., 1995a; Weatherell et al., 1974].

Shellis [1984] attributed an enhanced rate of lesion progression to a greater disorder of the enamel prisms in human enamel (as measured by mean prism junction density) and in-line with this assertion, the results of the present work show both an increase in disorder (Figure 3.3.3) and greater mineral loss (Figure 3.3.7a) on approach to the EDJ. Consequently this increased creates available space within the enamel tissue and thus allows for a greater inclusion of organic matrix and, enamel H₂O and various other inorganic impurities [Robinson et al., 1995a]. Whilst the intraoral history of the bovine incisors themselves may have contributed to chemical alterations of the enamel tissue [de Groot et al., 1986; Weatherell et al., 1974], the removal of the natural enamel surface [Macpherson et al., 1991] and the controlled sources of the bovine substrate should have limited the influence of these extraneous factors.

The contribution of the structural variations in prismatic order on approach to the EDJ has also been identified in previous work [Anderson and Elliott, 2000; Shellis, 1984] however further histological factors were also identified in the present work; these being the prismatic orientation across the entire thickness of the enamel layer and, more specifically, the prismatic orientation with respect to the natural enamel surface. The assumption that enamel prisms are aligned more or less transverse to the natural enamel surface was applied when planning the current experiments although this assumption was wrong. Instead, the enamel prisms were orientation around 45° to a true transvers line running normal to the natural surface and parallel to the proximal viewing-plane (Figure 3.3.3). However this finding would serve to validate the use of such samples in that due to the slope of the enamel prisms, their orientation with respect to natural or lateral surface lesions would be more similar than was previously thought. Therefore, the greater level of demineralisation seen on approach to the EDJ and the apparent lack of any such trend across the length of the natural surface created lesions (Figure 3.3.7a and Figure 3.3.7b) may have not in fact have been due to the orientation of the enamel prisms. Rather, when using sections produced from the labial surfaces, a comparative prismatic orientation is maintained between both natural surface and groove structures.
This would serve the purpose of direct comparisons between demineralisation within grooves or polished smooth surfaces with anisotropic properties removed as a contributing factor. However, it should also be noted that in natural occlusal surfaces, prismatic orientation may be closer to parallel in some areas of the groove than they would be perpendicular [Shore et al., 1995b].

Moreover, the lack of any mineral loss gradient across the lesions created on the natural enamel surface also raised an interesting point with respect to the process of flaring [Lynch, 2006]. As was noted in previous AGS experiments, an exaggerated point of demineralisation can develop at the periphery of the enamel window and feature as an artefact in static acid gel systems but this was not the case in the current work. Rather, flaring appeared as an artefact which was absent. An explanation of this may lie in size of the enamel windows which were used [Ruben et al., 1999]. The experiments performed in Chapter 2 provided detailed information on the occurrence of flaring in an almost identical AGS. It was found from these that flaring was limited to the outer 1 mm of the lesions. Due to the smaller enamel widows used in the present study (1 x 6 mm), the effects of this would be evenly distributed across the lesion and thus the effects would be mitigated.

Interestingly, in examples taken from the lateral surface group, where the demineralisation window crossed the EDJ, much less mineral loss was observed than would be expected form gradients in the susceptibility of the tissue (Figure 3.3.5b). Initially this result may prove contradictory however, with further consideration, this can be explained on the very same basis as that which is responsible for the points of flaring observed previously. Dentine tissue is more soluble than enamel [Shore et al., 1995b], therefore, under exposure to an acidic challenge dentine shows a greater propensity to demineralise than does the adjacent enamel tissue [Lynch and ten Cate, 2006b]. Within the present study, the effect of this would be a greater contribution to the concentration of dissolved ions in the vicinity of the EDJ. In this case, the DS of the tissue with respect to enamel would be increased as a result of mineral ions liberated by the dissolving dentine tissue [Lynch and ten Cate, 2006b] and thus, the greater susceptibility of the enamel tissue in this particular area (on approach to the EDJ) would be balance by a reduction in the driving force for demineralisation.

3.4.2 Preparation and Production of Lesions within U-Shaped Grooves
Server fractures to the walls of carved grooves were continually apparent as a result of processing to TMR analysis. Clearly the production of grooves within enamel surfaces is an intricate process. Not least TMR analysis of the structures but also the initial carving procedure. From what was gathered in the present work, the actual depth of each groove varied and more importantly, so did the proximity and penetration of the EDJ (Figure 3.3.9). However, the fact that groove depth and the distance from the EDJ correlated negatively demonstrates that ELT was relatively constant. This was
an unexpected finding as the natural tooth structure was expected to be the major contributor to variation in the results. It would therefore appear that the concern over this issue was, to some extent, unfounded as the controls imposed (by the selection process) proved highly effective.

As was described in the preparation methods (Section 3.2.2), the ELT was controlled by inspection of the sides of each BEB where the EDJ was visible. However it was accepted that the labial surfaces of bovine incisors possess a convex curvature which can vary in itself and can also become more pronounced on approach to the root. Within the labial surfaces, the source of the BEBs was not strictly controlled although in choosing relatively equal ELTs (on either side of the BEB in question) inadvertently selected specimens which were closer to the central plane of the labial surface and which therefore possessed an EDJ which was relatively flat (Figure 3.4.1).

Further to prismatic orientation, it should also be noted that the structural integrity of enamel tissue is, in part, afforded by the prismatic structures [Shore et al., 1995a]. The prismatic orientation of fractured samples was not ascertained directly although it is perfectly possible that a source of the fragility experienced may have been due to this. Previous studies which have used carved grooves to simulate fissures have done so using dentine as a substrate [Deng et al., 2004; Deng and ten Cate, 2004; Deng et al., 2005; Zaura et al., 2002; Zaura et al., 2005], and to the authors knowledge enamel is employed much less often. The amenability of fragile enamel sections to the higher level of processing required for TMR analysis may be a potential reason for this as was identified within a comprehensive study performed by Lagerweij et al [1996]. These authors reported that all attempts to produce grooves within bovine enamel failed due to a propensity to fracture during the preparation process.

Yassin [1995] performed experiments which related directly to the fragility of these structures, lesion were formed under a slightly higher demineralising challenges however what was found was that relatively weak physical stresses were able to significant damage the demineralised areas within
the grooves whereas sound enamel surfaces remained intact. In the present work, fractures occurred due to the preparation process in both demineralised and sound areas of the tissue (Figure 3.3.8) and, further to this, secondary preparation performed in an effort to remove residue from within the groove and thus enable TMR analysis resulted in further destruction of the tissue (Figure 3.3.10). It should also be noted that the secondary analysis did not involve polishing and mounting stages rather the sections were immersed in acetone and gently brushed within the groove to remove the residue and the areas which were subsequently destroy by this process were often identified as possessing some level of structural damage upon initial TMR analysis. It would therefore appear that the process of carving grooves into enamel surfaces results in an extremely fragile structure and that the extent of sample preparation severely increases the likelihood of damage to the sections. This effect would be expected to be increased further when lesions are produced within the samples. Thus, sample preparation should be kept to a minimum with the inclusion of the maximum number samples possible to counteract losses which may inevitably occur.

The fact that nail varnish residue remained within the grooves was a cause for concern (Figure 3.3.8 and Figure 3.3.10). However, areas of demineralisation noted beneath the residue indicated that the source of this was most likely to have come from the mounting and polishing process as if the acid resistant varnish had entered the groove before the demineralising challenged then demineralisation would not have occurred beneath this layer. As noted above, effective removal of residue should be applied in order to maximise the output from each experiment and thus provide the most robust data sets possible.

It appeared from these results that demineralisation was most effective in the AGS-exposed BEBs (Model #1). Very little demineralisation was observed within the grooves of the BEBs which were exposed to the pH-cycling system (Model # 2) and those which were exposed to the combination or hybrid system (Model # 3). As described in the Chapter 3, the efficacy of pH-cycling model is reduced when more narrow structures are employed [Matsunda et al., 2005; Matsunda et al., 2006] and this can be attributed to residual fluid which remains within the grooves between either de- or re-mineralising challenges. However, the results from Model #3 may contradict this theory. An ionic stagnation layer was included within this model on top of which the solutions of the pH-cycling system were applied. The high viscosity of this layer would have served to stabilise the liquid within the matrix [Larsen, 1991]. Therefore, between either challenge, a degree of neutralisation or acidification would have to occur within the matrix before the conditions imposed would reach the actual surface of the enamel. In this way, the introduction of a gel phase tested the assertion that residue from either solution was responsible for the lack of demineralisation within the base of more
acute structures and found this conclusion to be insufficient to wholly explain the observed results. Interference between either solution is nevertheless plausible as a contributing factor although the buffering capacity afforded by the mineral itself [Zaura et al., 2002] is likely to have a had a stronger influence on the results than previously thought. If the de- and re-mineralising challenges can be assumed to penetrate completely into the depth of the groove whilst failing to result in demineralisation then buffering effects of the enamel tissue should not be underestimated if such structures are to be used within biological in vitro models.

3.5.0 Conclusions
The use of enamel grooves is a more effective way of modelling occlusal surface due to the relative feasibility of their manufacture. Ultimately, the practicality of this aspect is essential for their use in a model such as the CDFF. However, the structural integrity of carved grooves is a significant issue as their propensity to fracture may lead to a reduction in the data which is able to be extracted from studies in which they are used. Great care should therefore be taken in their preparation and use in future studies with alternative smooth surface samples being included as a contingency. Specifically with enamel tissues, physical gradients in the solubility of the tissue should be considered as on recession from the entrance of the groove, the response of the tissue itself to a demineralising challenged is likely to be altered and therefore may contribute to the observed results (as opposed to the challenge itself being the sole factor responsible).

Of the abiotic model systems chosen to explore enamel demineralisation within such carved groove structures, the greatest extend of demineralisation was found with the use of the AGS model. However, the challenge imposed by this system may have been comparably greater and therefore qualification of the efficacy of a system based on this aspect alone is ultimately illegitimate process. Surprisingly, the hybrid system was able to perform on a comparable level to the pH-cycling model. Further to this, penetration into the narrow groove structure was not improved to any meaningful extent over either of the other models chosen. Thus, from the results obtained, it can be concluded that the degree of neutralisation between exposure solutions used in the pH-cycling models does not significantly hinder their ability to function as the gel layer incorporated into the hybrid model would be expect to exacerbate this effect. In reference to the latter observation, it was also found that the fluidity of the pH-cycling systems does not provide any further benefit when more narrow groove structures are employed. As neutralisation between exposure solutions is thought to have a much less significant effect, residual solution within the groove is an unlikely source of the observed results but rather diffusive access to the bulk solution (inclusive of buffering provided by the mineral tissue itself) exerts a much greater effect.
Chapter 4: Abiotic Considerations for Biological Caries Models

4.1.0 Introduction
The CDFF is essentially a biological model for simulating biofilm growth [Peters and Wimpenny, 1988] and factors which would be expected to effect cariogenicity of the biofilm [Cenci et al., 2009; Deng et al., 2005; Vroom et al., 1999]. However, in investigating the caries process the composition of the PF is one of the most important factors to consider [Nyvd et al., 2013] as this is medium which is immediate contact with the tooth's surface (and therefore the medium which most influence the DS of the liquid within the enamel tissue). As saliva forms the basis of the PF in vivo [Margolis and Moreno, 1994], its composition is also important to consider. The growth medium which is fed into the CDFF would also have the same influence over the PF within the in vitro biofilms grown within the CDFF. However, the composition of salivary analogues used to support microbial populations are often constructed from natural products and these themselves are known to vary [Wong and Sissions, 2001]. Shelliis et al. [1978] approached this problem from the point-of-view that consistency and buffering capacity were the most desirable aspects to be controlled [Shelliis, 1978]. However, these authors and others [Gal et al., 2001; Wong and Sissions, 2001] also accepted that the demands on producing a synthetic salivary analogue are higher and therefore the use of a relatively undefined medium may still retain its own merit. The accessibility of ingredients, cost and ease with which the medium can be produced all support its use when running a model biofilm system.

An indication as to the ionic composition of the growth medium is nevertheless desirable due to the importance of the ions which would be delivered to the biofilm and thus would directly influence the caries process. Furthermore, one key component of natural saliva is the buffering capacity which it affords [Tenovuo, 2004] and so a secondary influence can occur along with the effects of various other molecular components [Bardow et al., 2000]. Combined, these properties provide protection from essentially inorganic process such as erosion [Hannig, 2002] and the progression of carious demineralisation [Lenander-Lumikari and Loimaranta, 2000]. With the buffering capacity of the saliva being so central, this property was also investigated within the salivary growth medium.

4.1.1 Aims and Objectives
Attempts to study the physiochemical relationships within biological models also require that the composition of unknown entities are characterised to the greatest extent possible. Thus, the ionic composition and buffering capacity of the STGM will be investigated both in absolute terms in comparisons to natural saliva in order to provide a basis for further discussion and to preclude its use in CDFF experiments which aim to ascertain physiochemical relationships within in vitro biofilms.
4.2.0 Materials and Methods

4.2.1 Buffering Capacity of Salivary Growth Medium (STGM)
The buffering capacity of the STGM was investigated using a protocol adapted from investigations into the buffering capacity of stimulated and unstimulated human saliva [Bardow et al., 2000]. A single 2 L batch of the STGM was prepared from the ingredients listed below in Table 4.2.1 [Pratten et al., 1998a; Pratten, 2005]. From this, the batch was divided into two and one batch subsequently autoclaved (121 °C and 2200 mBar for 15 min) in a Touchclave-Lab K200s (LTE Scientific Ltd., Oldham, UK) whereas the other, stored at 4 °C in a BioCold laboratory refrigerator (Scientific Laboratory Supplies Ltd., Yorkshire, UK) until needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient</th>
<th>Concentration</th>
<th>Supplier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lab Lemco Powder</td>
<td>1.0 g.L⁻¹</td>
<td>Oxoid, Basingstoke, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteriological Peptone</td>
<td>5.0 g.L⁻¹</td>
<td>Oxoid, Basingstoke, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yeast Extract</td>
<td>2.0 g.L⁻¹</td>
<td>Oxoid, Basingstoke, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog Gastric Mucin (Type III)</td>
<td>2.5 g.L⁻¹</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium Chloride</td>
<td>0.2 g.L⁻¹ (2.683 mM)</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Chloride</td>
<td>0.2 g.L⁻¹ (3.422 mM)</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium Chloride Di-Hydrate</td>
<td>0.3 g.L⁻¹ (2.041 mM)</td>
<td>Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.1 (Composition of STGM): All ingredient of the Saliva-Type Growth Medium (STGM) are listed along with their relative quantities per litre of the medium in-line with their sources. Once weighed out, the STGM was made-up to volume using dH₂O.

Once the autoclaved batch had cooled to room temperature (21 °C), 50 mL aliquots were separated into three 50 mL Sterilin containers (Sterilin Ltd., Newport, UK). These containers were then sealed and placed into a water bath (Fisher Scientific DMU12 Water Bath; Fisher Scientific UK Ltd., Leicestershire, UK) at 37 °C for approximately 2h so that the STGM within was able to reach an equilibrium with the temperature of the bath. During this time, three 50mL volumes of the STGM which was not autoclaved were also poured into 50 mL Sterilin containers and the temperature brought up to 37 °C in the same way as the autoclaved samples. Whilst remaining within the water bath, a pH electrode (Jenway 924-047; Bibby Scientific Ltd., Staffordshire, UK) was used to measure the initial pH of each STGM and these values recorded before being adjusted to neutrality (pH 7) by titration with 1 M NaOH (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) or 1 M HCl (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) as required. Once neutrality was reached, 50 µl volumes of 1 M HCl were added to the STGM with the resultant pH recorded after the addition of each. This process continued across the range 7 ≥ pH ≥ 3.

Results were expressed as measured pH against mmol H⁺ per litre of STGM (mmol H⁺.L⁻¹). From this information the buffering capacity (β) of the STGM both before and following autoclaving was also calculated using the equation given below in Figure 4.2.1. Data were then compared as buffering capacity (β; mmol H⁺.L⁻¹) against the pH of the STGM at the time of the addition of the acid.
Buffering Capacity = $\beta = -\frac{\Delta C_A}{\Delta p\text{H}}$

**Figure 4.2.1 (Calculation of Buffering Capacity):** Buffering capacity ($\beta$) is defined as the change in the amount of acid added expressed in mmol units ($\Delta C_A$; for the strong acid HCl, $\Delta C_A = \Delta H^+$) per litre of STGM (i.e., mmol L$^{-1}$) and $\Delta p\text{H}$ is the change in pH following the addition of the acid [Bardow et al., 2000].

### 4.2.2 Analysis of the Salivary Growth Medium (STGM)

Further from the information provided by the manufactures of the individual nutrients listed in above in Table 4.2.1, the composition of the STGM was investigated using Capillary Electrophoresis (CE; Figure 4.2.2) using a P/ACE-MDQ system (Beckman-Coulter UK Ltd., High Wycombe, UK). Six 10 mL samples were first collected under a laminar air flow hood (Bassaire PSH Cabinet; Bassaire Ltd., Southampton, UK) from 6 sterile (121 °C and 2200 mBar for 15 min in a Touchclave-Lab K200s autoclave; LTE Scientific Ltd., Oldham, UK) 10 L STGM batches. Each of the six 10 mL samples were then passed through a 0.2 µm disposable syringe filter (Minisart; Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) leaving approximately 2 mL of the filtered STGM available for analysis. The 2 mL filtered STGM aliquots were then stored at 4 °C whilst 2 internal standard solutions were prepared; these filtered samples were then used for both anion and cation analysis using the CE technique.

**Figure 4.2.2 (Schematic Design of the CE Technique):** Both the inlet and outlet vials and the capillary tubing are filled with a buffer solution. Samples are injected into the capillary by replacement of the inlet vial with that of a sample and the application of air pressure. An electrical current is then applied moving charged analytes through the capillary and past a detection window.

For, anion analysis Na-Azide (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) at a concentration of 250 µM was used as the internal standard and bacteriostatic agent. A solution was first made up to a concentration of 333.33 µM Na-Azide in dH$_2$O and 15 µL of this added to a single PCR tube along with 5 µL of the filtered STGM sample; therefore leaving a final concentration of 250 µM Na-Azide standard in a x4
diluted STGM sample. This process was repeated for each of the 6 STGM samples. Each PCR tube was then loaded into the CE system. In the case of preparation for cation analysis, an internal standard was added in the form of Lithium from LiCl2. A 0.2 M stock solution (Beckman Coulter UK Ltd., High Wycombe, UK) was diluted down to 5 mM in dH2O and 5 µL of this added to 5 µL of the filtered STGM samples along with 15 µL dH2O; therefore leaving a final concentration of 1 mM Lithium in an x5 diluted STGM sample. PCR tubes holding samples were then loaded into the CE system as described for the anion analysis procedure (Figure 4.2.3).

![Figure 4.2.3](image)

**Figure 4.2.3 (CE Sample Preparation):** a) 5 µL sample to be used for either anion or cation analysis; b) the sample is diluted in 15 µL of 333.33 µM Na-Azide for anion analysis or 15 µL dH2O for cation analysis (at this point samples are read for anion analysis); c) a further 5 µL of 5 mM LiCl2 is added for samples to be run under cation analysis (at this point samples are ready for cation analysis).

In both cases (anion and cation analyses) samples were run within buffers provided by the manufacturer as part of specific analysis kits sold separately (Anion Analysis Kit A53537 and Cation Analysis Kit A53540; Beck Coulter Ltd., High Wycombe, UK). All separation procedures were performed as detailed within the analysis kits provided by the manufacturer and the electrophoretic UV absorbance traces were captured on 32 Karat Software (Version 8.0; Beckman Coulter Ltd., High Wycombe, UK). For both separation procedures bare-fused silica capillaries were used with an effective length (distance from the sample to the detector) of 50 cm and a total length of 57 cm. The internal capillary diameter was 75 µm and the outer diameter was 375 µm (eCAP Capillary Tubing; Beckman Coulter Ltd., High Wycombe, UK).

Analytes chosen for analysis by this technique were chloride, nitrate, sulphate, fluoride, formate, succinate, acetate, lactate, propionate, phosphate, butyrate, ammonium, sodium, potassium, magnesium and calcium (each was introduced in the form of a sodium or chloride salt and supplied by Sigma Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK). Two stock solutions were first made at the concentrations also listed in the proceeding table. These solutions were made up to a volume of 900 mL and, in the case of anion stock solutions, the pH was adjusted to approximately 6.5 with 1 M NaOH (Sigma-Aldrich
Abiotic Considerations for Biological Caries Models | Ch. 4

Ltd., Poole, UK) before being brought up to a final volume of 1 L. For cation stock solutions, the initial pH in dH₂O was approximately 3.2. Cation standard solutions were therefore diluted in the cation separation buffer supplied along with the analysis kit.

4.2.2.1 Qualitative vs. Quantitative Analysis

In order to enable qualitative analysis of the STGM samples the minimum detection limits of the CE system were first established. These were investigated in mixed solutions as opposed to individually to control for peak ambiguities resulting from potential close migrations times and, furthermore, to provide an insight into shoulder sensitivity limits in the case of any ambiguity. Thus, separate dilutions were made at an initial level of x10 from anion and cation stock solutions. Nitrate, sulphate, succinate, propionate, butyrate, potassium and calcium were introduced to the initial stock solution at a concentration of 10 mM whereas chloride, fluoride, formate, acetate, lactate, phosphate, ammonium, sodium and magnesium were introduced at a concentration of 20 mM. In all cases chloride and sodium slats were chosen for cations and anions respectively (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK). Each of these was then serially diluted at a 2-fold decrease to a final dilution of x5120 (10 detection limit calibration levels). These dilutions were then run using their respective separation kits and the minimum detection limits (MDLs) were established. Qualitative analysis was thus performed on the basis of positive (+) or negative (-) for whether or not the analytes were above or below the MDL respectively.

Quantitative analysis was performed by manual integration over detectable peaks (i.e. above the MDL) based on the corrected area (relative to an internal standard). Calibration curves were first constructed over 4 Levels at the following stock solution dilutions: x10 (Level 1), x20 (Level 2), x40 (Level 3) and x80 (Level 4). In all cases the internal standard were kept constant at 250 µM Azide for anion solutions and 1 mM Lithium for cation solutions. Calibration sequences were run within the 32 Karat software and all sample traces analysed in triplicate. For anion traces, shoulder sensitivity, peak threshold and width were set to 500, 350 and 0.05 and for cation traces these parameters were set to 0.1, 1000 and 9999 respectively. From these analyses, corrected area values were generated for each of the trace peaks (based on a known constant value from the internal standard peak). The calibration curves were then analysed for goodness of fit and any alterations applied as necessary using the parameter options within the 32 Karat software. Once, appropriate fits were decided, these calibrations were applied to each of the sample traces. Data values for each analyte were then exported and reconstructed in Microsoft Excel 2010 (Version 14.6112.5000; Microsoft Office Professional Plus; Microsoft Ltd., Berkshire, UK).
4.3.0 Results

4.3.1 Buffering Capacity of Salivary growth Medium (STGM)
Buffering capacity of the STGM followed a similar trend both before and after sterilisation and these results are illustrated below in Figure 4.3.1. Around neutral (pH 7), there was no significant difference (P < 0.05) between either group (pre- or post-autoclave) however by approach to pH 6 and continuing past the (putative) critical pH of dental enamel (pH 5.5), a gradual divergence in the β was seen between that of post-autoclaving STGM and the un-sterilised samples, the buffing capacity was relatively higher before sterilisation. Once the critical pH of dental enamel had been reached, there was a difference in β of 0.5 mmolH⁺.L⁻¹.STGM⁻¹. Further down these trends, an increase in buffering capacity was found at pH 4.85 followed by a decreased at pH 4.5 in the pre-autoclave condition; an occurrence which was absent post-autoclave. A slight depression was seen also seen in the post-autoclaved STGM at pH 3.95 however with the exception of these points noted, the general trend in both appeared similar but with a greater capacity consistently found before the STGM was autoclaved. The greatest difference in buffering capacity was seen at the end of the titration assay where a difference of 3.0 mmol H⁺.L⁻¹.STGM⁻¹ was found.

Figure 4.3.1 (STGM Buffering Capacity both Before and After Sterilisation): Mean (n = 3) buffering capacity (β) measurements of the STGM both before and after sterilisation by autoclaving (ie. the ability of the STGM to withstand a change in pH measured by mmol.L⁻¹ H⁺ adsorbed within the STGM at a given pH). The dotted red line indicates the (putative) critical pH of dental enamel (5.5).
4.3.2.1 CE Qualitative Composition of the Salivary Growth Medium (STGM)

Qualitative analysis of the STGM found detectable levels of chloride, sulphate, formate, acetate, lactate, propionate, phosphate and butyrate. Fluoride was not detected in any of 6 STGM samples (Table 4.3.1). However, both fluoride and formate peaks were found to appear in close proximity to each other (Figure 4.3.3), therefore, given small variations in sample mobility times and the potential presence of one of these analytes in the absence of the other, it was not possible to determine the identity of singular peak which would have arose around this time point. The identity of the formate peaks within the samples was therefore based on the secondary analysis of the STGM by potentiometric measurement with a fluoride-specific probe. These results detected fluoride as below 0.01 ppm (0.621 μM ± 0.00950; n = 6). Given the x4 dilution which was applied to STGM samples during anion analysis, a peak resulting from fluoride within the STGM would be below the MDL and therefore, the assignment of these peaks as formate could be justified. However, when present together, fluoride and formate peaks were discernible by shoulder sensitivity and this reference point was detectable even at very low calibration levels (62.5 μM fluoride or formate).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>Cl(^-)</th>
<th>NO(_3)(^-)</th>
<th>SO(_4)(^{2-})</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Formate</th>
<th>Succinate</th>
<th>Acetate</th>
<th>Lactate</th>
<th>Propionate</th>
<th>PO(_4)(^{3-})</th>
<th>Butyrate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDL</td>
<td>15.62</td>
<td>7.81</td>
<td>7.81</td>
<td>15.62</td>
<td>15.62</td>
<td>7.81</td>
<td>15.62</td>
<td>15.62</td>
<td>7.81</td>
<td>15.62</td>
<td>7.81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.3.1 (Qualitative Analysis of Anions within the STGM): Positive signs (+) represent the presence of a given analyte above the MDL define above. Negative signs (-) confer the opposite (ie. concentrations of the sample were below its MDL). Note that within all samples both fluoride and nitrates were not detected. Minimum detection limits (MDLs) are expressed in μM.

![Figure 4.3.2](image)
Further to the ambiguity of fluoride / formate peaks, phosphate peaks also show an unusual shape when traces were gained from STGM samples but not from the standard solutions. The phosphate peak in Figure 4.3.2 provides a typical example of this. In this trace, the phosphate peak shows highly pronounced shoulders on both the leading and following edges, and a stark contrast is apparent when the trace in this example is compared to the trace in Figure 4.3.3 which was created from known standards within stock solutions.

![Electropherogram of the Anion Level 1 Stock Solution](image)

Figure 4.3.3 (Electropherogram of the Anion Level 1 Stock Solution): a) Close migration times of fluoride and formate increasing the likelihood of incorrectly identified peaks; b) example of a well resolved phosphate peak. # indicates an uncharacterised analyte.

Ammonium, sodium, potassium, magnesium and calcium were also detected in all STGM samples as were several other cations which were not characterised during this experiment. Figure 4.3.4 shows a typical electropherogram trace gained from an STGM cation separation. As indicated, the unknown analytes appeared late-on during the separation process, therefore although precise identification was not possible these ions can be deduced to be cationic species with lower electrophoretic mobilities than any of the other analytes noted. Of those ions which were identified fully, their presence and MDLs are listed below in Table 4.3.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>Ammonium</th>
<th>Sodium</th>
<th>Potassium</th>
<th>Magnesium</th>
<th>Calcium</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDL</td>
<td>62.50</td>
<td>62.50</td>
<td>62.50</td>
<td>62.50</td>
<td>31.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.3.2 (Qualitative Analysis of Cations within the STGM): Positive signs (+) represent the presence of a given analyte above the MDL define above. Negative signs (-) confer the opposite (i.e. concentrations of the sample were below its MDL). Note that all analytes chosen for detection were present in all of the STGM samples taken. Minimum detection limits (MDLs) are expressed in µM.
Abiotic Considerations for Biological Caries Models | Ch. 4

Figure 4.3.4 (Electropherogram of Cations Separated from the STGM): This individual trace relates to the STGM Sample 1. Lithium was added to each sample in the amount of 1 mM. Proceeding from left to right, peaks can be identified for ammonium, sodium, potassium, lithium, magnesium and calcium. Unresolved peaks are evident in this sample following the emergence of the calcium peak (approximately 4 min 36 sec and 4 min 42 sec). # indicates an uncharacterised analyte.

4.3.2.2 CE Quantitative Composition of the Salivary Growth Medium (STGM)
Quantification experiments of the STGM media found chloride to be present in the highest concentration of approximately 10.99 mM. This equated roughly to the concentrations added directly to the STGM from KCl, NaCl and CaCl$_2$.2H$_2$O (10.207 mM; Table 4.2.1). However, comparisons to the bases to the chlorine salts did not follow the same direct relationship. Sodium and potassium were each measured between x3 and x4 greater STGM than the amount which was added directly. Calcium, on the other hand, was measured as much closer to the amount which was added (2.9 mM measured whereas 2.041 mM were added from CaCl$_2$.2H$_2$O). Magnesium and sulphate were also detected within the STGM; the concentrations of these analytes were much lower than calcium sodium and potassium although was at a significant enough level to enable quantification (MDLs for magnesium and sulphate were 277 µM and 417 µM respectively). Both nitrate and fluoride were concluded as BMDL. Figure 4.3.5 illustrates each of these analytes together for the purposes of direct comparisons.

Formate, although detected in STGM samples, was consistently below the threshold values necessary to provide proper integration of the anion peaks. It is therefore listed as BMIL (Below Minimum Integration Limits) in Figure 4.3.6 Further investigations at this point, also defined ammonium as BMDL. Phosphate was measured as 1.442 mM however the form which phosphate was present in was not detected by this CE method. Of the organic acids which were measured, lactate was found in the highest concentrations (1.2 mM). Succinate, acetate, propionate and butyrate were present in the STGM at a fraction (0.25) of this level (each approximal 0.3 mM).
Figure 4.3.5 (Concentrations of Inorganic Ions within the STGM following Autoclaving): Dark (■) bars indicate anions and light (□) bars indicate cations; each group was therefore analysed separately. Error bars represent the sample SD. Analytes which were BMDL are indicated. Lithium was included as an internal standard for all cation separations in the amount of 1000 µM.

Figure 4.3.6 (Concentrations of Organic Ions within the STGM following Autoclaving): Dark (■) bars indicate anions and light (□) bars indicate cations; each group was therefore analysed separately. Error bars represent the sample SD. Analytes which were BMDL are indicated. Azide was included as an internal standard for all anion separations in the amount of 250 µM.
4.4.0 Discussion

4.4.1 Buffering Capacity of the STGM
The STGM saliva substitute appeared to decrease in buffering capacity following the autoclaving process. Ultimately, the buffering capacity of the STGM before sterilisation would be irrelevant for use in the biological model which was chosen for these works (the CDFF) as a pre-requisite of its use is that all conditions internal to the system remain sterile before the commencement of any given experiment [Pratten, 2005]. Nevertheless, the fact that buffering capacity is reduced post-autoclave leans towards some indication of a compositional change to the STGM which would divide this medium further from that which is described from its constitutes alone (Table 4.2.1).

In comparison to the buffering capacity of natural saliva, markedly different curves are produced when samples of human saliva are investigated. Figure 4.4.1 illustrates data which was obtained from un-stimulated human whole saliva [Bardow et al., 2000]. The authors attributed the principle component of the buffering system within human whole saliva to be due to bicarbonate content and the fact that carbonate exhibits maximum buffering capacity around pH 6.37 [House, 2013] illustrated its importance in maintaining pH during a cariogenic challenge [Bardow et al., 2000].

![Graph of Buffering Capacity of Un-Stimulate Human Whole Saliva](image_url)

**Figure 4.4.1 (Buffering Capacity of Un-Stimulate Human Whole Saliva):** Data was reconstructed from Bowden et al. [1998]. Buffering capacity (β) measurements reflect the ability of the saliva fraction to withstand a change in pH measured by mmol.L⁻¹ H⁺ adsorbed within the saliva at a given pH. Inlaid is the putative critical pH of dental enamel.
Part of the buffering system of bicarbonate involves a phase transition from liquid to gas (Figure 4.4.2) mediated by the carbonic anhydrase enzyme which is present in the oral environment [Kimoto et al., 2006; Kivelä et al., 1999a; Leinonen et al., 1999] but this would be presumed absent or denatured in the STGM. Nevertheless, the establishment of a bi-phasic buffer system in the absence of catalysis would still be possible albeit to a relative limited extent. Previous works have demonstrated that carbonic anhydrase is localised within the AEP at the earliest stages of biofilm formation [Leinonen et al., 1999] and furthermore, the penetration of this enzyme through plaque biofilms has been suggested to provide an anti-cariogenic effect [Kimoto et al., 2006; Kivelä et al., 1999b]. Although, some researchers have found conflicting results whereby an increase in cariogenicity was attributed to the buffering effects alleviating some of the self-inhibitory effects experience by acidogenic species as result of their own metabolism [Culp et al., 2011].

![Figure 4.4.2 (Bicarbonate Equilibrium): Carbonic anhydrase catalyses the reaction between CO\textsubscript{2} and H\textsubscript{2}O (Maren, 1967) although its presence is not essential. Carbonic acid possess 2 pK\textsubscript{a} values; the first of which (pK\textsubscript{a1} = 6.37) is illustrated above (House, 2013).](image)

One key difference between the work conducted by Bardow et al. [1998] and the present study was the fact that in the present work an open system was used and therefore a certain amount of carbonate would be lost through equilibrium with the gaseous phase. Complete control over this aspect of the system would have been an advantage however in the operating procedures for the use of a CDFF carbonate enrichment in the growth medium is not advised [Pratten, 2005]. Further to this, artificial salivas (both defined and undefined) generally used to support microbial growth do not tend to include any enforced enrichment of the carbonate content either [Kinniment et al., 1996; Kolenbrander, 2011; Pratten et al., 1998b; Shellis, 1978; Wong and Sissions, 2001]. Although this aspect is important to the buffering capacity of the saliva in vivo, it is not introduced or would occur within in vitro biological models such as the CDFF. Rather, the carbonate content would be present only from equilibrium with atmospheric CO\textsubscript{2}. Therefore, the fact that STGM samples were not shielded from CO\textsubscript{2} during preparation does not serve to invalidate results. However, it should be remembered that the phase buffering effect of atmospheric CO\textsubscript{2} may have occurred during analysis and therefore could have resulted in the measurement of a slightly higher buffering capacity than would actually be the case (particularly as the pH of the STGM was decreased; pH ≤ 3.2).

The contribution of other constitutes to the buffering capacity of the STGM are more difficult to ascertain. As noted above, the STGM is composed of various ingredients which themselves form fractions of biological extracts therefore an exact identification of these was not possible by the
current methods employed. The various peptide fractions and protein extracts present in the STGM can confer some buffering capacity around their specific isoelectric point [Bardow et al., 2000] and to this end, an undetermined peak in buffering capacity was detected in the STGM before autoclaving around pH 4.8. As the pH was reduced, a reduction then occurred around pH 4.5. The magnitude of these changes was small however such deviations were not observed following autoclaving of the samples. Therefore, components which would be sensitive to the autoclaving process (such as the various uncharacterised polypeptide fragments) may have been responsible. As lone molecules, amine (-NH₄) and carboxylic (-COOH) groups can contribute to the buffer capacity of the media and, within proteins or peptide fragments, charged residues may also contribute (Figure 4.4.3). Denaturation following autoclaving may have led to the exposure or shielding of residues such as these as a result of conformational changes or covalent chemical reactions.

![Figure 4.4.3 (Amino Acids)](image)

*Figure 4.4.3 (Amino Acids):* Some of the amino acids from which the residue may contribute to buffering capacity. Amine (-NH₄) and carboxylic (-COOH) may also contribute; a) amino acids with basic side chains; b) amino acids with acidic side chains.

Furthermore, the loss of this aspect of the buffering capacity post-autoclaving illustrates the possible impact of such molecular changes during the autoclaving process. Therefore theoretical calculations of ionic composition should not be conducted as these may lead to the false assumption that chemical activity can be defined from the added concentration alone. Urea is included in many synthetic salivary growth media [Sissons, 1997] as both an energy source and to help to afford accurate biofilm ecology through self-induced enzymatic activity and subsequent production of ammonia which thus mediates the pH response of the biofilm [Wijeyeweera and Kleinberg, 1989a]. This additive was not specifically added to the STGM due to the requirement that urea must first be filter sterilised and added to the medium post-autoclave [Pratten et al., 1998b] and therefore presents a significant hazard for airborne contamination. However, yeast extract, lab lemco powder (beef extract) and bacteriological peptone all provide a potential source for a microbial source of ammonia. Mucin was also included in the STGM to provide a principle energy source for oral bacteria [Bradshaw et al., 1994; Kolenbrander, 2011]. Specifically, hog gastric mucin is typically employed due to its chemical similarity to human mucin [Herp et al., 1979]. However, human mucin
alone has been shown to exhibit a poor ability to accept H⁺ at low pH (pH ≈ 2) with carbonated mineral reservoirs providing the bulk of the buffering capacity that can be detected [Mitchell, 1931]. Whilst such a physicochemical system may exist within the STGM, it would be reasonable to conclude that the mucin itself did not significantly contribute to the observed results.

Phosphate possess 3 distinct disassociation constants of \( pK_{a1} = 2.12 \), \( pK_{a2} = 7.21 \) and \( pK_{a3} = 12.68 \) [House, 2013]. When present in significant concentrations, this ion therefore exhibits buffering capacity within each these ranges. It has been proposed that phosphate contributes some buffering effect to natural saliva [Lendenmann et al., 2000] however the effect of this could not be detected within the STGM as these points did not lie within the range which was investigated (Figure 4.3.1). However the first disassociation \( (pK_{a1}) \) may have contributed to the steep rise that occurred at lower pH \( (pH \leq 3.2) \). Ultimately, the contribution of a phosphate-based buffer system would not be relevant to the situation as (although phosphate may contribute to the DS with respect to enamel mineral) it is unable to provide any meaningful buffering capacity within the range expected of a cariogenic challenge [ten Cate et al., 2008].

### 4.4.2 Ionic Composition of the STGM

Although the STGM has previously been used to sustain the growth of oral biofilms [Bakht et al., 2011; Hope et al., 2012; Owens et al., 2013; Valappil et al., 2013] and it is similar to those which have been used to obtain a representative state of microbial growth [Hope and Wilson, 2003a; Pratten et al., 1998a; Pratten et al., 2000], it contains significant quantities of relatively undefined biological extracts which themselves are known to vary [Wong and Sissions, 2001]. It therefore follows that the constitutes detected may not have been representative of each STGM batch that was made. However, in the present study samples were collected from 6 separately produced batches collected over several months. Therefore, the samples collected should reflect an expected composition for each STGM batch. Nevertheless, the ions most relevant to enamel mineral were able to be quantified.

The prior filtration of samples was necessary to remove high molecular weight components from the samples as it was previously identified that large molecules with a propensity for aggregation may block the capillary tubing or prevent the efficiency of the rinsing procedures. Further to this, the various ingredients of the STGM provide many possible substrates for bacterial metabolism or AEP formation which are not ionised within the medium or which are not captured within the migration time used in the current separation procedure.

Wong and Sissons [2001] explored the idea of growing oral biofilms on chemically-defined and relatively undefined medium. From these studies, a differential expression of bacterial enzymes was
detected between biofilms grown using either media. Therefore, variations in the composition of the salivary substitute can induce a phenotypic change in the biofilm community [Wong and Sissions, 2001]. However, as with the work produced by Pratten et al. [2000], the STGM has been shown to support a level of biofilm growth which exhibits sufficient similarities to dental plaque to justify their use in predicting or modelling the progression of an ecologically-based disease such as dental caries.

Several unidentified peaks were identified during both anion (Figure 4.3.2) and cation (Figure 4.3.4) separations. Unfortunately, it was not possible to determine the identity of these components. However, possible sources can be suggested such as citrate, sulphite and carbonate as possible anions and iron or zinc within cation separations. Although zwitterionic macromolecules such as peptide fragments may have passed through the detection window it is unlikely that such well resolved peaks would have been alluded by the current separation procedure. With the absence of peptide fragments, separations of the aforementioned ions were attempted and it was found that elucidation of each was possible within the current separation procedures (data not shown) although analysis was abandoned due to the fact that a suitable stock solution could not be formulated. As noted above, a strict control of carbonate was unfeasible within the CDFF model and therefore the analysis of this analyte would have proven unworkable however citrate cab provide an energy source for oral bacteria (such as Lactobacillus spp. and Streptococcus spp.) thereby promoting growth [Drinan et al., 1976]. Furthermore, both zinc [Featherstone and Nelson, 1980; Lynch, 2011] and iron [Alves et al., 2011; Featherstone and Nelson, 1980] have demonstrated a measureable effect of enamel mineralisation with zinc possessing further antimicrobial properties [Pratten et al., 2003a] and iron being invariably essential to cellular metabolism [Ilbert and Bonnefoy, 2013]. As some amount of these elements is likely to be present within the STGM, an exact quantification would have been desirable.

Natural human saliva is highly variable [Larsen et al., 1999] although it is generally accepted that the fluid remains saturated with calcium phosphate salts at neutral pH [ten Cate, 2004], as the pH is lowered this can however change [Larsen and Pearce, 2003]. The saturation of natural saliva is based on the relative proportions of free mineral ions (relevant to enamel mineral) and in this respect comparisons can be made to the STGM. Analysis of the data [Shellis, 1988] revealed that the STGM was supersaturated with respect to fluorapatite (DS = 41.78), HA (DS = 11.24), OCP (DS = 1.99), monetite (DS = 1.24) and TCP (DS = 2.83) but undersaturated with respect to brushite (DS = 0.78). Assuming the establishment of an equilibrium with atmospheric CO₂, the STGM would also support the formation of CaCO₃ (DS = 3.28). These values are similar to those which have been reported previously for natural (unstimulated) saliva [Larsen and Pearce, 2003] in a qualitatively sense
although quantitatively, they were found to be greatly in excess. The concentration of calcium (2.93 mM ± 0.46 SD) was much higher than the range expected for natural saliva (0.75 mM – 1.75 mM) and phosphate was noticeably lower (1.44 mM ± 0.32 SD in the STGM compared within 2.0 mM – 5.0 mM in natural saliva) [ten Cate, 2004]. Potentiometric measurement of fluoride found it to be present 0.01 ppm ± 0.00 SD however at the lowest end of the range found in natural saliva (0.01 ppm – 0.1 ppm) [ten Cate, 2004].

Figure 4.4.4 (Saturation with respect to Calcium Salts within the STGM): DS for some of the relevant mineral phases are given as calculated by the IPO3 computer program with charge imbalance included in the ionic strength and accounting for an equilibrium of H₂CO₃ with atmospheric CO₂ [Shellis, 1988].

The varying levels of calcium and phosphate would lead to dissimilar thermodynamic saturation profiles as are observed for natural saliva [Larsen and Pearce, 2003]. Therefore, the driving force for remineralisation would not only be much higher within a biological model employing the STGM but the dynamics of phase transition would also behave differently. Within the STGM, chemical alteration of the mineral and remineralisation are therefore highly favoured as the solution supports the persistence of fluoride-containing mineral phases as low as pH 4 but would allow enamel demineralisation above pH 5.9 (Kₚ₉ obtained from Patel and Brown [1975] for human enamel). Further to this, higher concentrations of calcium support CaF₂ in the mineral phase which is not this case for natural human saliva [Larsen and Ravnholt, 1994]. However, in a biofilm model, the demineralising challenge would take place within the PF and this fluid may differ from the bulk solution external to the biofilm [Margolis and Moreno, 1994].
The relative proportions of ions present in the STGM may also alter the microbial populations in ways which are, as yet, unforeseen. For example, oral streptococci are known to react to elevated levels of calcium in their environment by producing membrane associated buffering systems [Rose and Hogg, 1995] in order to ameliorate its effects on membrane integrity [Trombe et al., 1992]. It is therefore conceivable that the ionic composition of the STGM may induce such a phenotypic change and thus enhance its role in the production of caries through several aspects which are relevant to the caries process. Initially, calcium bridging of gram positive early colonisers [Rose et al., 1994] may either be enhanced due to presence of abundant cation bridging or binding sites may become saturated and thus this attachment mechanism may be hindered. Gradual depletion of both biological and mineral reservoirs [Pearce, 1998] could also be augmented by the DS of the STGM. Unfortunately it is not possibly to accurately identify how a diverse microcosm biofilm community would react to such environmental conditions. Measurements of the PF would have to be applied in order to confirm the effects of the STGM on biofilm formation, growth and cariogenicity. The CDFF model may be ineffective in producing enamel caries unless a physiological environment which permits the dynamics of the caries process is provided. Ultimately, practical application of the model is the only way to be certain.

4.5.0 Conclusions
The STGM is dissimilar to natural saliva in both its buffering capacity and in its composition. Although the STGM is not expected to be the medium in immediate contact with the enamel surface, its composition may have some influence on the physiological conditions within plaque biofilms which are produced. Specifically, as the buffering effected conferred of the STGM is much lower than natural saliva it is expected to provide less of a resistance to changes in the pH of the biofilm PF following a cariogenic challenge within the CDFF model. Further to this, the saturation of the STGM with respect to relevant calcium salts supports the formation of mineral phases over dissimilar periods of physiological pH. The behaviour of such phases within a model which employs the STGM is therefore expected to be unique from what could be observed in situ.

However, a prerequisite of biological models is their ability to produced and support the growth of orally relevant biofilms. The STGM has been shown to meet these requirements and therefore the use of an alternative would require a degree of validation which is outside the scope of the present work. STGM, as is, should therefore be employed although conclusions draw with respect to the relationship to natural in vivo biofilms should be interpreted with caution. Whether or not enamel caries lesions can be formed within CDFF remains in question and, in the light of the results of the present work, it ability to support in vitro enamel lesions formation should be explored.
Chapter 5: Effect of Growth Medium Supply on Enamel Demineralisation and Substratum Type on Biofilm Formation.

5.1.0 Introduction

Although defined CDFF operating procedures dictate that the supply of STGM should be continuous [Pratten, 2005], with the introduction of an adjunct agent the concentration of each would be altered from that which is initially designed. If flow rates are equal between both this would effectively halve the concentration. However, as the flow rate of the STGM is set to mimic natural unstimulated salivary flow rates (0.3 – 0.4 mL.min⁻¹) [Dawes, 2008], the actual relation to the in vivo situation becomes distorted. Foodstuffs are not consumed at the same rate as salivation and salivation rates themselves vary during consumption [Dawes and Dong, 1995; Watanabe and Dawes, 1988] and between individuals [Percival et al., 1994]. Within the mouth, saliva also exists as a thin film which is not distributed evenly across all tooth surfaces [Collins and Dawes, 1987; Dawes, 2008] and, although flow rate increases during mastication [Dawes, 2004a], the majority of this extra volume is consumed along with the foodstuff as it is ingested [Rudney, 2000].

Distribution and passage of saliva over the surfaces is also inconsistent and can be modified during mastication [Dawes and Macpherson, 1993; Lagerlof et al., 1987; Weatherell et al., 1989]. In the oral environment, saliva is secreted posteriorly-anteriorly whereas the consumption of foodstuff occurs in the opposite direction but unfortunately detailed studies have not been conducted which examine the ability of saliva to persist in the face of counter-flow. It could therefore be reasoned that in immediate contact with the surface of the plaque biofilm would be a phase composed almost completely of the exogenous substance in question [Weatherell et al., 1989]. In this scenario, the effect of the given substance would not be altered by the action of saliva during consumption but rather any protective or additive effect of the saliva would occur in the intermittent period between consumption. Thus, for the purpose of simulating dental biofilms in a way representative of the situation in vivo, a model which accounts for natural fluctuations should be explored.

Sucrose provides an adequate cariogenic substrate [Cenci et al., 2009; Pratten and Wilson, 1999; Spratt and Pratten, 2003; Zaura et al., 2011] to test the applicability of varying the “salivary” flow within a model such as the CDFF. Caries lesions have previously been produced within the CDFF model however, to date, this has only been achieved with the use of dentine as a substrate [Cenci et al., 2009; Deng and ten Cate, 2004; Deng et al., 2005; Zaura et al., 2011] or external to the unit following removal of the samples [Aires et al., 2006; Arthur et al., 2013]. Proof of concept that the CDFF model is in fact able to produce enamel caries lesions internally should therefore be tested.
The preparation involved in the manufacture of enamel sections is also extremely difficult. Due to the hard tissues fragility, defects in the enamel are easily incurred [Lagerweij et al., 1996] and the availability of high quality tissue itself can be relatively scarce [Mellberg, 1992]. For these reasons, prefabrication of enamel into disks of an exact specification is required. However, this creates a cost associated with their production and, consequently, adds to their value. As a result, hydroxyapatite (HA) disks have been employed as an alternative to support microbial growth [Bradshaw et al., 1996; Hope and Wilson, 2003b; Pratten et al., 1998a; Valappil et al., 2013]. HA is often used for the purposes of studying dental enamel and the similarities between these substrates (with respect to their physical nature and chemical composition) has led to the widely-accepted view of HA as an acceptable analogue for dental enamel [Driessens, 1982]. With respect to events which preclude biofilm formation, the HA mineral shares a similar electronegativity to enamel and therefore possesses the potential to simulate the natural processes of pellicle formation and bacterial colonisation. However, from a more precise point of view, HA and dental enamel also exhibit major differences which could have an influence on biofilm formation.

5.1.1 Aims and Objectives

The study presented within this chapter aims to validate the use of HA as a substrate for biofilm formation in direct comparison to bovine enamel. Creating true-caries lesions within the unit will also be investigated whilst monitoring the effects of sucrose exposures on the microbial ecology within the plaque biofilms which are produced and effectively determining whether or not the CDFF is able to produced enamel caries lesions. In addition to this, a further objective will be to investigate to what extent altering the supply of growth medium will impose on both biofilm formation and enamel demineralisation which will be investigated with the use of the a dual constant depth film fermenter (dCDFF) model [Hope et al., 2012]
5.2.0 Materials and Methods
The in vitro effect of both growth medium supply and biofilm substratum were investigated in a dual constant depth film fermenter (dCDFF) model [Hope et al., 2012] for their effect on biofilm growth and, with respect to the former, enamel demineralisation. Pooled human saliva was used as a source for the microbial inoculum [Dietz, 1943]. Both HA (Clarkson Chromatography Products Inc., South Williamsport, PA, USA) and bovine enamel (Modus Laboratories, University of Reading, Reading, UK) disks were used as a substratum. Each CDFF unit was run under strict operating conditions which consisted of a sucrose pulsing strategy described below and differed only with respect to their growth medium supply during pulsing phases (Figure 5.2.2).

5.2.1 Inoculum Preparation
A human saliva pool was first created by collecting whole, unstimulated saliva samples from a random subset of healthy volunteers enlisted from the University of Liverpool’s School of Dentistry (n = 23, 23 ≤ age ≤ 54; Ethical Approval: University of Liverpool Research Governance Office, Physical Interventions Sub-committee, RETH000377). Firstly, volunteers were asked to expectorate ≥ 5 mL saliva into 20 mL Sterilin containers (Sterilin Ltd., Newport, UK). From each of these samples, 3 mL aliquots were extracted, pooled and homogenised by stirring for approximately 30 min with a magnetic stirrer and sterile flea. An equal volume of sterile skim milk powder (Oxoid, Basingstoke, UK) was then added to a final concentration of 10% w/v in order to act as a cryoprotectant during storage [Cody et al., 2008]. The resultant mixture was then split into a number of 1.8 mL aliquots and stored at -80°C until required. Each step of the preparation procedure was undertaken as quickly as possible in order to avoid possible cytotoxicity resulting from the exposure of strict anaerobic organisms to the ambient oxygenated environment. Sterile technique was also adopted, operating under laminar air flow (PSH Cabinet equipped with HEPA filter; Bassaire Ltd., Southampton, UK) whenever possible, to avoid contamination.

5.2.2 CDFF design and dCDFF Set-Up
The dCDFF model described previously [Hope et al., 2012] was adapted for the purposes of this experiment. With regard to these works, two identical CDFF units were commissioned (J. Abbott, West Kirby, Merseyside, UK) to fit side-by-side within a standard laboratory incubator (IP250-U; LTE Scientific Ltd., Oldham, UK). Each unit was able to hold a maximum of 8 polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sample pans which, in turn, were each able to hold 5 substratum disks 5 mm in diameter. Each disk sat atop a PTFE plug allowing for alteration of the substratum depth by providing a resistance to stop the substratum from falling too deep within the recess of the pan. Variable depth was achieved by applying pressure to the plug thus altering the depth of the recessed area (Figure
5.2.1). The area between the substratum and the external environment allowed for biofilm growth and was ensured by a scraper blade which passed immediately adjacent to the surface of the pan at a speed of 3 rpm; this action effectively limited growth within a finite area. All sampling was performed following the removal of whole pans using custom-made instruments and was performed under aseptic technique.

![Figure 5.2.1 (Cross-Sectional View of a Single PTFE Sample Pan): a) whole view of a single PTFE sample pan; b) cross-sectional view of a PTFE sample pan showing 5 mm HA disks as they would be supported by PTFE plugs. On the left of “b” the HA disk and the PTFE plug are separated to show their distinction and on the right, the HA disk rest direction on top of PTFE plug. The resistance of the plug within the sample pan provide support for the HA (or enamel) disk and allows the disk to be recessed to any given depth within the range of the pan.](image)

**5.2.2.1 Sterilisation Procedures**

Before assembly, all liquid volumes, silicone tubings, PTFE pans designated to contain enamel and sampling instruments were sterilised by autoclaving at 121 °C and 2200 mBar for 15 min; the only exception to this practice were sucrose-containing liquid volumes which were autoclaved at a lower temperature and pressure of 116°C and 1900 mBar respectively; This was so as to avoid any degradation of the dissolved sugars. All autoclave sterilisations were performed within a Touchclave-Lab K200s (LTE Scientific Ltd., Oldham, UK) ran on a super-atmospheric sterilisation cycle with the exception of enamel disks were sterilised separately by gamma irradiation for 18h at 4,000Gy (Gammacell 1000; Field Emission, Newbury, UK) as this was considered to most appropriate sterilisation conditions [Amaechi et al., 1999].

HA disks were placed directly into PTFE pans, recessed to a chosen depth of exactly 200µm and pans inserted into available spaces of the CDFF turntable. The entire CDFF unit was then sterilised at 140°C for 4h in a Memmert UF500 universal fan oven (Memmert GmbH., Heilbronn, Germany). Once the units had cooled, enamel disks were inserted into previously sterilised pans and recessed to the same depth as the HA disks. These pans were then inserted into the CDFF units thought the sampling port. Due to a high risk of environmental contamination, the insertion of enamel disks and enamel-containing PTFE pans was performed with fully sterilised instruments and under laminar air flow (Bassaire PSHCabinet; Bassaire Ltd., Southampton, UK).
Effect of Growth Medium Supply and Substratum on In Vitro Enamel Demineralisation and Biofilm Formation

5.2.2.2 Schematic Design
As illustrated in Figure 5.2.3, an inoculation flask was prepared to contain 1 L of sterile STGM (composition given in Table 4.2.1) with a magnetic flea added before autoclave. Once cooled, the inoculum flask was then located in an incubator at 37°C (IP250-U; LTE Scientific Ltd., Oldham, UK) and allowed to equilibrate for approximately 2 h before a single 1.8 mL aliquot of the saliva pool was thawed and added. The apparatus was then fully assembled as quickly as possible using 70% ethanol (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) with 0.5 % H$_2$O$_2$ (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) as a secondary precaution to ensure the sterility of contamination prone surfaces.

Peristaltic pumps (101U/R Low Flow Peristaltic Pump; Watson Marlow, Falmouth, UK) were used to draw the inoculum through the tubing and into each CDFF at a flow rate of 0.5 mL.min$^{-1}$. The inoculum was exhausted after approximately 15h at which point a separate 10L supply of sterile STGM was introduced to each CDFF by the same means although at a lower flow rate (0.38 mL.min$^{-1}$). This secondary STGM supply was also isolated from each CDFF unit by the use of a grow-back trap. At this point, a 2 L volume of 50mM sucrose (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, United Kingdom) solution was connected to each CDFF also isolated by grow-back traps. However, the sucrose solution was not fed in the same manner as the STGM.

5.2.2.3 Sucrose and STGM Pulsing Strategies
Sucrose was introduced to each CDFF by a modification of a previously established pulsing pattern developed from a protocol initially described by Deng et al. [2004]. In both Unit A and Unit B the sucrose solution was pulsed in 8 times over 16 h of a 24 h cycle for 15 min (0.38 mL.min$^{-1}$). However in Unit A, the STGM supply remained constant (CF; Continuous Flow) whereas in Unit B the STGM was stopped (FF; Feast-Famine) during each sucrose pulse (Figure 5.2.2).

![Figure 5.2.2 (Pulsing Strategy for Feast-Famine vs. Continuous-Flow Strategies): Both dCDFF units (A and B) were subject to a sucrose (50 mM) pulsing strategy which continued over a period of 24 h. Green bars represent the flow of STGM at a rate of 0.38 mL.min$^{-1}$. Breaks in the green bars indicate the cessation of the STGM flow. Red bars represent the flow of a 50 mM sucrose solution.](image-url)
The continued control of these pulsing strategies was achieved by the use of digitally controlled socket timers (Draper Tools Ltd., Hampshire, UK) set to switch the corresponding pumps on and off at the appropriate times. The cycle continued for a period of 16 d following the point at which the inoculum was exhausted and was only paused briefly (< 1 min) on sample days as PTFE plans were extracted. The flow rate of sucrose exposures was kept in-line with that of the STGM as frequent exposures to high flow rates lead to disturbance of the biofilms during formation.

5.2.3 Biofilm Sampling and Substratum Extraction
The point where the inoculum had depleted completely, and thus the sucrose pulsing strategy started, was considered as the beginning of the CDFF experiment. Due to the constraints of the 8-pan CDFF unit, sampling was limited to 4 points for each internal condition (HA versus enamel). Therefore, CDFF units were sampled for both HA and enamel (2 sample pans extracted) on days 2, 4, 8 and 16. The specific sample pan arrangement was ordered alternating between pans holding enamel and HA respectively. Within the cycle, sampling occurred immediately after the 4th sucrose pulse (2:00 PM) on the chosen day.

The sampling procedure was conducted as follows. The unit to be sampled was stopped such that the pan to be sampled lay in an accessible area beneath the sample port; during this time, motors were switched off as were all supply pumps. Using a fresh pair of nitrile laboratory gloves (Appleton Woods Ltd., Birmingham, UK), one 20 mL Sterilin (Sterilin Ltd., Newport, UK) was then taken, the lid loosened and the vessel placed inside the incubator in close proximity to the sample port. Both gloves and the sample port were then sprayed with 70% ethanol 0.5% H₂O₂ solution, the port quickly opened and the sampling instrument removed from its sterilisation pouch (UnoDent Ltd., Essex, UK). The instrument was then used to extract the relevant pan from its place in the turntable. Using one hand the Sterilin lid was then removed, the PTFE pan placed carefully inside, released from the sampling instrument, the instrument removed and the Sterilin lid replaced. This process was repeated for each pan on each sampling occasion.

5.2.4 Recovery and Enumeration of Oral Bacteria
Following sample pan extractions, all work was performed within a 30 cm radius of a blue Bunsen Burner’s flame. Three of each of the disks supporting biofilms (HA or enamel) were carefully removed and individually placed into a sterile 5mL Bijou (Sterilin Ltd., Newport, UK) containing 3mL PBS solution (Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK) and 3 sterile glass beads (3.5 - 4.5 mm diameter; BDH-Merk Ltd., Poole, UK). The lid was then securely fastened and the Bijou vortex mixed for 30 sec in order to disperse the biofilms. From this dispersal, serial 10-fold dilutions were made up to a dilution of x10⁻⁶ in PBS solution (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK). Each disk formed a separate dilution line providing results per sample pan in triplicate.
Twenty-five µl volumes of these dilutions were then spread onto a range of selective and non-selective solid growth media. Initially, all dilutions were spread however in later stages it became possible to pre-empt the number of colony forming units (CFUs) and therefore, in the interest of conserving resources, only those dilutions which were deemed appropriate were used. This required discretion during the decision making process. The community members chosen for identification were as follows: fastidious anaerobes (FA; Section 5.2.4.1), mutans streptococci (MS; Section 5.2.4.2), Streptococcus spp. (Section 5.2.4.3), Lactobacillus spp. (Section 5.2.4.4) and Veillonella spp. (Section 5.2.4.5). Further to this, 25 µL volumes were also extracted from the salivary inoculum which was used to create the primary culture within the inoculum flask (Section 5.2.1). These aliquots were sampled for FA (n = 6) and Streptococcus spp. (n = 6) as described above. Further to this, gram stains were performed on samples of the inoculum which were extracted using a sterile loop and on individual CFUs grown on following incubation. The results were captured using a Nikon imaging system (Nikon Digital Sight DS-Fi2; Nikon UK Ltd., Surrey, UK) equipped with a standard optical microscope capable of x300 magnification (Nikon Eclipse E200; Nikon UK Ltd., Surrey, UK).

Following incubation of the inoculated media, counts were made on an automatic plate counter (Stuart SC6 Colony Counter; Bibby Scientific Ltd., Staffordshire, UK) in a typical range of 100 ≤ CFU ≤ 300 if CFU counts within this range were possible. In the event that CFU counts were above or below the target range, the plate which held the number closest to the ideal was used and this fact noted. These numbers were first multiplied by the dilution factor with which the plate was spread in order to obtain a value for CFU counts in the initial 3mL dispersal and expressed by unit area (mm$^2$) of the surface supporting biofilm growth (19.635 mm$^2$). In contrast, results for the characterisation of the pooled salivary inoculum were expressed by unit volume of the primary inoculum (mm$^3$). Statistical analysis of the data was performed following Log$_{10}$-trasformation as described in Section 2.2.4.

5.2.4.1 Fastidious Anaerobes
Viable counts of fastidious anaerobes were obtained on commercially available fastidious anaerobic agar (FAA; Bioconnections, Leeds, UK) supplemented with 5% v/v defibrinated horse blood (TCS Biosciences, Botolph Claydon, UK). FAA was produced according to instructions provided by the manufacturer and poured under laminar air flow (BassAire P5H cabinet; BassAire Ltd., Southampton, UK). Once set, plates were spread with appropriate dilutions as described above and the culture incubated for 48h at 37°C within a temperature regulated anaerobic chamber (Whitley MG1000 Anaerobic Workstation; Don Whitley Scientific Ltd., West Yorkshire, UK) operating at 80% N$_2$, 10% H$_2$ and 10% CO$_2$. All visible colonies were counted as individual CFUs and observations were made on the various morphologies which were seen. In particular, the presence of black-pigmented anaerobes along with any haemolysis if visually apparent (although observations and counts were
made a 48 h, for the purpose of identifying black pigmented anaerobes, FAA media were incubated for a further 48 h in order to confirm the presence or absence of these bacteria within the samples).

5.2.4.2 Mutans Streptococci
Members of the mutans-group streptococci were cultured on a modified TYC medium [van Palenstein Helderman et al., 1983]. Dehydrated TYC (Lab M Ltd., Lancashire, UK) was prepared according to the manufacturer’s guidelines but with a base of 150 mg.L\(^{-1}\) sterile sucrose in place of dH\(_2\)O. The sucrose base was made up from dH\(_2\)O and contrary to the manufacturer’s guide the mixture was sterilised by autoclaving at 116°C and 1900 mBar for 15 min; this modification was made in order to avoid degradation of the sugars. The agar was then allowed to cool to 48°C before 3.5mg.L\(^{-1}\) of Bacitracin (50KU from Bacillus licheniformis; Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK) solution was added via filter sterilisation using a 0.2 µm disposable syringe filter (Minisart; Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK). The resulting media was thereafter termed TYCSB. As above, plates were poured under sterile air flow and once set, spread with appropriate volumes of microbial suspensions and incubated anaerobically for 48h at 37°C. Colonies were identified as mutans-group on the basis of their colony morphology (generally white-grey or cream-yellow in colour and sometimes surrounded by a fine white edge however regular in their slight convexity and entire edge) and their ability to grow on the TYCSB media.

5.2.4.3 Streptococcus Species
Viable counts for Streptococcus spp. were obtained on MSA (BD Difco Co., Sparks, MD, USA) supplemented with 1mL of 1% w/v potassium tellurite solution (Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK). Media was prepared following guidelines provided by the manufacturer. As above, all plates were poured under sterile air flow and once set, spread with appropriate volumes and incubated for 48h at 37°C under anaerobic conditions. CFUs were determined as streptococci on the basis of their ability to grown on the MSA medium and their colony morphology: blue or dark blue “gum-drop” colonies, enterococci exhibited smaller colonies with a much darker colour and a shine to their appearance.

5.2.4.4 Lactobacillus Species
Lactobacillus spp. were identified on Rogosa agar (Oxoid, Basingstoke, UK). Plates were prepared as per the instructions of the manufacturer but with minor amendment to the procedure. Dried Rogosa agar powder (82 g) was added to 1 L of near-boiling dH\(_2\)O and stirred on a heated magnetic stirrer with flea until boiling. The cap of the laboratory bottle (Duran Group GmbH., Wertheim, Germany) was then loosely replaced on the container and the molten agar allowed to simmer for a further 5 min before being transferred under sterile air flow. 1.32 mL glacial acetic acid (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) was then added, the container’s lid sealed tightly and stirred with the heating element of the magnetic stirrer switched off for a further 2 min before being poured when at approximately
60°C under sterile air flow. Once set, plates were spread and incubated anaerobically at 37°C for 48h. Colonies appeared white, regular and approximately 2mm in diameter depending on the degree of colony crowding.

5.2.4.5 Veillonella Species

Veillonella isolates were recovered on a medium which preferentially favoured the growth of species within this genus (BV Agar). The specific protocol used to create this agar was formed from personal communications between Prof. David Beighton (Department of Microbiology, Kings College London Dental Institute, UK) and the University of Liverpool (Liverpool, UK). A base consisting of 15g bacto agar (Oxoid, Basingstoke, UK), 5g bacto peptone (Oxoid, Basingstoke, UK), 5g yeast extract (Oxoid, Basingstoke, UK), 0.75g sodium thioglycollate (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK), 2mg basic fuchsin (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) was weighed out and made up to a volume of 500mL with dH₂O. Twenty-one mL of 60% Sodium Lactate (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) was then added and the volume brought up to 1L with further dH₂O. When necessary, the pH was adjusted to 7.5 with 1M NaOH (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) before autoclaving at 121°C for 900 sec. Once cooled to approximately 48°C, 7.5mg vancomycin (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) was added via filter sterilisation using a 0.2 μm disposable syringe filter (Minisart; Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK). Plates were then poured under laminar air flow and, once set, microbial suspensions spread and incubated as above although for a longer period of 72h. CFUs were identified as veillonella on the basis of their ability to grow on this medium and their phenotypic appearance: typically ≥ 2mm in diameter, raised and with an entire edge [Rogosa, 1956].

5.2.5 TMR Experimental Specifics

TMR was performed on all enamel disks used during the course of this experiment after the 5th sucrose pulse of the day (4:00 PM). Once the disks had been vortex mixed, the surfaces were rinsed with dH₂O and stored in 1ml Eppendorf tubes (Eppendorf UK Ltd., Stevenage, UK) along with a cotton pellet moistened with 0.1 % w/v thymol solution (BDH Laboratory Supplies, Poole, UK). Apart from this rinsing stage prior to storage, all TMR procedures were performed as described in Section 2.2.3. Three enamel disks (those from each sample point) were sectioned into 4 to 5 thin sections (approximately 1.2 mm thick at an angle transverse to the enamel surface) and randomised within each sample. Four images were captured equidistant along the length of each prepared (80 μm) thin section using TMR 2000 (Version 2.0.27.16) and at a magnification of x10/0.22. Images were subsequently analysed using TMR 2006 (Version 3.0.0.13). Statistical analysis of the data was performed as described in Section 2.2.4.
Figure 5.2.3 (dCDFF Schematic Set-Up) a: Sterile Saliva-Type Growth Medium (STGM); b: Sterile 50 mM Sucrose Solution; c: Peristaltic Pump 0.38 mL min⁻¹; d: Peristaltic Pump 0.38 mL min⁻¹ (CF); e: Peristaltic Pump 0.38 mL min⁻¹; f: Grow-Back Trap; g: Peristaltic Pump 0.5 mL min⁻¹; h: Inoculum Flask with Magnetic Stirrer; i: CDFF Unit A; j: CDFF Unit B; k: Effluent; *: 0.3µm Air Filter. Note that “d” was responsible for the STGM supply to Unit A and therefore this pump functioned continuously whereas “e” functioned only at times when “c” pumps were inactive as this pump supplied the STGM to Unit B. Pump “c” was active for 15 min every 2 h eight times a day over a 16 h period of a 24h cycle.
5.3.0 Results
The initial assessment of the pooled salivary inoculum (following the freezing and thawing process) showed that the fraction was composed of $8.44 \pm 0.26$ Log$_{10}$ CFU mm$^{-3}$ with respect to FA. Selective culture of *Streptococcus* spp. revealed the inoculum to consist of $7.88 \pm 0.27$ Log$_{10}$ CFU.mm$^{-3}$.

Analysis of the gram stains supported these results where the vast majority of microbes consisted of gram-positive cocci although some evidence of bacilli and gram negative species was also found. *Lactobacillus* spp. were undetectable by the selective culture methods which were used as were *Veillonella* ssp. and MS.

5.3.1 Enumeration of Biofilm Bacteria
Viable counts of fastidious anaerobes (FA) are presented by condition (CF and FF) and sample day in Figure 5.3.1. In both conditions counts followed an extremely similar trend when compared by the substratum on which the biofilms were grown (HA or enamel). The similarities in these trends were confirmed statistically where no significant difference was detected between the vast majority of viable counts taken from biofilms grown on either HA or enamel ($P \geq 0.053$) at like sample points. The only expectation to this was found for biofilms grown in the FF condition on sample day 4 where the difference in counts between the 2 substrata was determined as significant ($P = 0.002$).

*Lactobacillus* spp. (Figure 5.3.2) demonstrated a clearer trend in the viable counts than was observed for FA. A sharp increase in CFU can be seen between days 2 and 4 and this reached a maximum by day 8 however a decline in CFU is evident in all conditions by day 16. In-line with these initial observations, biofilm enrichment trends were reflected in the HA vs. enamel comparisons and statistically no significant difference could be detected between any of the substratum conditions within each dCDFF unit ($P \geq 0.165$) when like sample point where compared. There was, however, a single exception to this when the final sample day (day 16) was compared by substratum in the CF condition. In this instance a significant difference was determined ($P = 0.002$).

*Streptococcus* spp. (Figure 5.3.3), however, did not show the same level of clarity that was seen in the trends for *Lactobacillus* spp. (Figure 5.3.2). Again an increase in viable counts was visible between days 2 and 4 but at all sample points between day 4 and day 16 the differences were not immediately discernible. Although, like both FA and *Lactobacillus* spp. the choice of either HA or enamel as a biofilm substratum was not determined to have any effect on the counts made ($P \geq 0.104$) in the majority of comparisons. As with the other groups examined thus far, there were exceptions to this concordance. These exceptions occurred specifically, at days 8 and 4 in the CF and FF conditions respectively ($P \leq 0.026$).
In contrast to the *Streptococcus spp.*, trends in MS group were very well defined (Figure 5.3.4). Between HA or enamel substrata no difference could be determined in any instance (P ≥ 0.66). Again, an increase was first seen between days 2 and 4 (irrespective of the CF or FF flow-cycle conditions). However between days 4 and 8 viable counts had diverged markedly, counts continued to increase in the FF condition but decreased in the CF condition. By day 16, counts taken from both conditions and on either substratum had reached similar values. *Veillonella spp.* (Figure 5.3.5) also showed an extremely strong similarity between counts taken from HA or enamel disks (P ≥ 0.102). Only one single exception was noted on sample day 4 in the FF condition (P = 0.021). Moreover, the similarities between HA and enamel samples is highlighted best for *Veillonella spp.* due to the large differences between the FF and CF conditions.

Comparing results without discriminating on the basis of substratum, significant differences between biofilms grown in the CF and FF conditions for FA (P ≤ 0.014). On sample days 2, 4, and 16, viable counts were higher in biofilms taken from the CF condition however on day 8 the opposite of this trend occurred with respect to FA; viable counts were higher in the FF condition. The delineation of these 2 conditions therefore allows greater comparison of the 2 conditions. In this respect, CFU counts were initially lower in the FF condition an in the CF condition CFU counts increased sharply by sample day 4, however at this stage it appeared that the increase in FA viable counts had ended. In the FF condition the increase in viable counts was seen to continue between day 2 and 8. Following a maximum on the 8th sample day, FA as measured by viable counts then decreased to a point which was comparable with the CF condition. Statistically, the respective growth trends can be qualified by a significant difference in both groups between days 4 and 8 (P ≤ 0.001) a fact with was true between days 8 and 16 for the FF condition (P < 0.001) but not for CF condition (P = 0.684).

For *Lactobacillus spp.*, significant differences were again found between conditions on each sample day (P ≤ 0.003) with the exception of on day 4 (P = 0.070) where counts were lower in the FF condition. However, both the shape of the growth curves and the absolute magnitude of viable counts (Log$_{10}$CFU.mm$^{-2}$) were extremely similar between both CF and FF conditions (Figure 5.3.2). Simple transpositions of the data sets from FF and CF conditions would be able to impose these curves over each other without any distortion.

When combined irrespective of substratum, *Streptococcus spp.* showed no significant difference (P = 0.370) on sample day 2. However by day 4 onwards a divergence was found between FF and CF conditions (P ≤ 0.005). CFU counts were higher in CF conditions on days 4 and 16 but on day 8 counts were lower in the CF than in the FF condition. In both dCDFF conditions the number of viable *Streptococcus spp.* looked to have achieved a maximum over the 16 day period of the experiment.
Effect of Growth Medium Supply and Substratum on In Vitro Enamel Demineralisation and Biofilm Formation | Ch. 5

Figure 5.3.1 (Fastidious Anaerobes; FA): Sample sets were taken from both HA and enamel substrata and are illustrated as separate series and in combine format. Error bars represent the SD of each sample set and an asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) and a double asterisk (**) indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) between dCDFF conditions.

Figure 5.3.2 (Lactobacillus spp.): Sample sets were taken from both HA and enamel substrata and are illustrated as separate series and in combine format. Error bars represent the SD of each sample set and an asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) and a double asterisk (**) indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) between dCDFF conditions.
Figure 5.3.3 (Streptococcus spp.): Sample sets were taken from both HA and enamel substrata and are illustrated as separate series and in combine format. Error bars represent the SD of each sample set and an asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) between dCDFS conditions.

Figure 5.3.4 (Mutans streptococci; MS): Sample sets were taken from both HA and enamel substrata and are illustrated as separate series and in combine format. Error bars represent the SD of each sample set and an asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) and a double asterisk (**) indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) between dCDFS conditions.
Trends in MS growth were similar between both dCDFF conditions with only the exception being on day 8 (Figure 5.3.4). In the FF condition viable counts peaked on the 8\textsuperscript{th} day then immediately entered a decline whereas in the CF condition, counts peaked by the 4\textsuperscript{th} day then remained relatively stable between days 8 and 16. No steady-state was noted for the FF condition with respect to MS. Therefore, unique growth trends were found between the CF and FF conditions although similarities were also apparent. With the exception of counts taken on sample day 8, both conditions exhibited a sharp increase in growth which terminated at similar values (on average, within a single Log\(_{10}\) unit).

\textbf{Figure 5.3.5 (Veillonella spp.):} Sample sets were taken from both HA and enamel substrata and are illustrated as separate series and in combine format. Error bars represent the SD of each sample set and an asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) and a double asterisk (**) indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) between dCDFF conditions.

\textit{Veillonella spp.} initially showed markedly different growth trends (Figure 5.3.5). As with findings for FA, \textit{lactobacilli} spp. and MS, between dCDFF conditions CFU counts were significantly different on each sample day (P \leq 0.004). Both conditions a dramatic increase in viable counts between days 2 and 8 however the maximum proportion of \textit{Veillonella spp.} was greater (approximately 1-Log\(_{10}\) unit) in the CF condition. Furthermore, biofilms which were produced within the CF condition experienced a decrease in viable counts between day 8 and 16. Between these sample points, biofilms in the FF condition remained stable with respect to the numbers of viable \textit{Veillonella spp.} As \textit{Veillonella spp.} growth peaked higher in the CF condition, it would therefore be suggested that the habitat which was afforded by the biofilms in the CF condition was more amenable to the growth of \textit{Veillonella spp.} than that which was created within the CF condition.
5.3.2 Transverse Micro-Radiography

Out of the 12 enamel disks included in each dCDFF unit (FF and CF conditions), 4 thin sections were initially cut. Between 2 and 4 thin sections were retained from each of the 3 enamel disks which were removed on each sampling occasion. From these sections the parameters of ΔZ, LD, R and S_{\text{Max}} were generated and are listed below in Table 5.3.1 in-line with each sample day and condition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Sample Day</th>
<th>n (Enamel Disks)</th>
<th>ΔZ ± SD</th>
<th>LD ± SD</th>
<th>R ± SD</th>
<th>S_{\text{Max}} ± SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>282.23 ± 43.89</td>
<td>14.10 ± 2.02</td>
<td>19.70 ± 0.68</td>
<td>62.96 ± 2.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>124.57 ± 45.75</td>
<td>7.96 ± 3.18</td>
<td>15.59 ± 1.32</td>
<td>71.39 ± 5.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>483.75 ± 67.10</td>
<td>23.21 ± 3.40</td>
<td>21.14 ± 1.48</td>
<td>62.14 ± 2.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>988.81 ± 138.22</td>
<td>34.92 ± 4.35</td>
<td>28.62 ± 1.48</td>
<td>51.42 ± 7.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1483.47 ± 1004.4</td>
<td>46.31 ± 21.96</td>
<td>28.14 ± 6.73</td>
<td>54.02 ± 5.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1602.00 ± 212.93</td>
<td>54.60 ± 5.37</td>
<td>28.20 ± 1.79</td>
<td>60.24 ± 6.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>802.21 ± 91.40</td>
<td>38.86 ± 2.43</td>
<td>20.31 ± 3.39</td>
<td>62.99 ± 4.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2359.86 ± 291.96</td>
<td>63.12 ± 4.90</td>
<td>37.09 ± 2.87</td>
<td>50.63 ± 5.22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.3.1 (TMR Parameters): Parameters of integrated mineral loss (ΔZ), lesion depth (LD), average mineral loss (R) and SL mineralisation (S_{\text{Max}}) listed along with the number of thin sections analysed (N) and the number of TMR images captured (n).

Mean scan profiles were also extracted for each of the enamel sections sampled. These are illustrated for samples taken from the CF and FF conditions in Figure 5.3.7 and 5.3.8 respectively. From these visualisations the first point which is apparent is that samples removed on day 2 did not show any clear evidence of caries lesions in either condition. A degree of mineral loss is visible however this was more akin to surface softening or the error of the radiographic process as opposed to carious lesion formation. However, by day 4, the beginnings of a caries-type lesion profile was evident in the samples taken from the CF condition albeit with an ill-defined SL. On the other hand, in the FF condition a well-defined SL had developed and in enamel sections taken from this condition, this trend continued. With time the caries lesion profile become more defined within the mineral and, on average, the degree of mineralisation in the SL increased as did LD and bulk mineral loss within the lesions themselves (ΔZ). However, this definition of character could not be applied to lesions which were created in the CF group. As noted at day 2, the development of an SL was not seen over the course of the experiment. A direct relationship was also missing when examining LD and ΔZ from the scan profiles in Figure 5.3.7. The exception to an increase over time, as seen in lesion taken from the FF group (Figure 5.3.8), were the results obtained on day 8 and 16. Both LD and ΔZ were lower in samples removed on day 16 than in those removed on day 8. Further to this, an erratic mean scan profile was generated from samples taken at day 8 with relatively large confidence intervals across the length of the lesions (0 to 100 µm; Figure 5.3.7).
Figure 5.3.7 (TMR Scan Profiles for Lesions Created under a Continuous Flow of STGM): Mineral volume (%Vol) is expressed relative to a sound enamel patch and normalised within each individual measurement. Error bars represent the sample SD. Individual mineral volume measurements are made at depth increments of 5 µm from the enamel surface (20%Vol). In the “Cont-Flow / Day 2”, “Cont-Flow / Day 4”, “Cont-Flow / Day 8” and “Cont-Flow / Day 16” conditions n = 27, n = 44, n = 37 and n = 37 respectively.

Figure 5.3.8 (TMR Scan Profiles for Lesions Created under a Fast-Famine Flow of STGM): Mineral volume (%Vol) are expressed relative to a sound enamel patch and normalised within each individual measurement. Error bars represent the sample SD. Individual mineral volume measurements are made at depth increments of 5 µm from the enamel surface (20%Vol). In the “Fast-Famine / Day 2”, “Fast-Famine / Day 4”, “Fast-Famine / Day 8” and “Fast-Famine / Day 16” conditions n = 34, n = 32, n = 26 and n = 26 respectively.
In examining the lesion removed on sample day 8 from the CF condition, the source of the erratic mean scan profile in Figure 5.3.7 was traced to the actual variation in lesion characters. Striated lesions or lamination zone were apparent in some of the enamel sections taken from this condition. Figure 5.3.9 illustrates 4 images which were captured from 4 separate thin sections removed on sample day 8 however each of these images relates to a section removed from a single enamel disk.

Adjacent enamel disks did not show the same lesion character as those noted in Figure 5.3.9 however, even given the lack of apparent lamination zones, the adjacent disks did not produce lesions in keeping with the expected trend of greater mineral loss with time. Rather, all lesions and areas examined were highly variable from each other.

In comparing groups directly, it was not possible to accurately extract measurements of $S_{\text{Max}}$ on sample day 2 due to the lack of any distinct SL structure in these lesions. Nevertheless, $\Delta Z$, LD and R were able to be quantified fully. Comparing these results found that between dCDFF conditions (CF and FF), a significant difference was found between $\Delta Z$ ($P \leq 0.013$), LD ($P \leq 0.048$) and R ($P \leq 0.009$) on days 2, 4 and 16. However on day 8, ANOVA was unable to find a significant difference between any of these parameters ($P \geq 0.560$) although comparison of the scan profiles in Figure 5.3.7 and 5.3.8 clearly illustrates markedly different lesion character. Parameters are presented graphically Figures 5.3.10, 5.3.11 and 5.3.12 for $\Delta Z$, LD and R respectively. Although, as noted above, $S_{\text{Max}}$ and was not fully quantifiable in all instances, results are also presented in Figures 5.3.13 within the same format as $\Delta Z$, LD and R.
In the FF condition a progressive increase in ΔZ was seen over time (Figure 5.3.10). In comparing the value obtained on each day to that on the previous day, confirmed that the difference between measurements were statistically significant (P ≤ 0.022). This therefore supported what is suggested visually in the data in Figure 5.3.10. However, this same delineation could not be applied to ΔZ in the CF condition. Here a significant increase in ΔZ was seen between days 2 and 4 (P = 0.012) but between days 4 and 8 and days 8 and 16 no significant difference could be confirmed statistically (P ≥ 0.161). However, in view of the trends show in Figure 5.3.10 for samples taken from the CF condition, a gradual increase in the mean ΔZ measurement is evident up to the 8th sample day; this then appeared to decrease by the 16th day. LD (Figure 5.3.11) also demonstrated an extremely similar trend to ΔZ (Figure 5.3.10); measurements increased progressively over time and reached a maximum by day 16 in the FF condition. However, in confirming this trend statistically, an increase was determined between days 2 and 8 (P ≤ 0.008) but between days 8 and 16 the increase in LD could not be confirmed (P = 0.112). In the CF condition, LD was greatest in lesions removed on day 8. LD increased progressively up until this point but the increase was only significant between days 2 and 4 (P = 0.016). Following the 4th sample day, no differences in LD could be confirmed (P ≥ 0.146).

* * *
Effect of Growth Medium Supply and Substratum on In Vitro Enamel Demineralisation and Biofilm Formation | Ch. 5

Figure 5.3.11 (LD Measurements taken from CF and FF Conditions): An asterisk indicates results which are significantly different between the dCFFF conditions (P < 0.05). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The numbers of value used at each point are listed in Table 5.3.1.

Figure 5.3.12 (R Measurements taken from CF and FF Conditions): An asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference between dCFFF conditions (P > 0.05). Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. The numbers of value used at each point are listed in Table 5.3.1.
Trends in (Figure 5.3.12) showed some similarities to those for \( \Delta Z \) and LD in as much as that significant difference existed between dCFFF conditions at days 2, 4 and 16. However, when looking at the data longitudinally the trends were much more distinct. In the CF condition, no significant difference (\( P \geq 0.146 \)) between any of the time points sampled although in the FF conditions, some significant differences were found to exist. Between day 2 and 4 an increase was detected (\( P < 0.001 \)) as was between days 8 and 16 (\( P = 0.010 \)) although between days 4 and 8, no change in R could be concluded from the data (\( P = 0.769 \)).

As noted above, the mean scan profiles in Figure 5.3.7 (CF condition) lacked obvious SLs but in Figure 5.3.8 (FF Condition) these areas were discernible on day 4, 8 and 16. Nevertheless, examination of \( S_{\text{Max}} \) was applied and found no difference between any of the lesions created in the CF condition (\( P = 0.077 \)). However some difference was detected within \( S_{\text{Max}} \) measurements taken from the FF condition (\( P = 0.011 \)). Multiple comparisons found this difference to lie in an increase between the samples which were removed on day 2 and 4 (\( P < 0.021 \)). As noted above, accurate determination of the SL could not be achieved in samples extracted on the 2\textsuperscript{nd} day of the experiment therefore unsubstantiating the basis of this comparison.
5.4.0 Discussion

5.4.1 Biofilm Formation on HA and Enamel Substrata

In addressing the initial aims of this experiment, bacterial enumeration found only minor differences between viable counts made for FA (Figure 5.3.1), Lactobacillus spp. (Figure 5.3.2), Streptococcus spp. (Figure 5.3.3) and Veillonella spp. (Figure 5.3.5) between either condition. Although some differences were found between HA and enamel substrata at some of the time points sampled, the vast majority showed excellent concordance and a certain level of variation can be expected due to natural variations which occur within multispecies consortia [Sissons, 1997; Skopek et al., 1993]. To this end, the greatest level of variation between HA or enamel substrata was found in the enumeration of biofilm Streptococcus spp. (Figure 5.3.3). However, on closer inspection, the greatest disparity between substrata occurred only in the FF condition on day 4 and the CF condition on day 8 whereas all of the other results were indistinguishable. Therefore, the seemingly incoherent trends within this particular microbial group were in fact a product of the close relationship in counts made between dCDFF conditions.

Viewing the result of microbial counts as a whole, the few variations seen within the current data set could, in part, be attributed to natural variations in the dCDFF biofilms occurring by chance as the overall trend in growth and maturation clearly demonstrated extremely close relationships when counts taken from HA are compared to those made from enamel within each dCDFF unit. In concluding the variations seen to have occurred by chance, it should be noted that within a clinical setting, dental caries itself is a site-specific disease [Fejerskov et al., 2008a]. The causation of these differences should therefore be considered for their applicability to the dCDFF model. The notion of pooling plaque samples has also been regarded as an illegitimate practice [Nyvad et al., 2013] however the reasons for this view are based on factors identified from the clinical presentation of the disease. In this respect, the majority of differences result from intra-oral factors such as compartmentalisation with respect to salivary flow, the persistence of food particles or the topographic morphology of the site in question. Within a CDFF system, confounding factors such as these are completely removed. Further to this point, the rotating action of the turntable ensures that each biofilm would be continually re-inoculated with either actively dispersed or physically removed microbes [Korber et al., 1995]. This would serve to maintain a level of homogeneity between biofilm samples as a result of deliberate carryover within each unit [Deng et al., 2005] and therefore drastically reduce the effect of compartmentalisation as a confounding factor.

It would therefore be reasonable to assume that the deviations noted were a result of random differences in the initial colonisation of each unit. Slight disparities which can occur between
community proliferation events [Ledder et al., 2006; Sissons et al., 1995] may have played a greater role than the effect of substrata. The ability of microbes to initially attach to surfaces depends on their attraction to that surface and this usually involves electrostatic interactions [Marsh and Martin, 2009a]. However both bacteria themselves and the surface of mineralised tissues are negatively charged [Robinson et al., 2006] therefore the two entities are initially repelled. The formation of the AEP occurs due to positively charged residues present in salivary macromolecules [Hannig, 2002] and the subsequent attachment of bacteria to the AEP layer [Marsh and Martin, 2009c]. Although the initial attachment of early colonising species has been observed on bare HA surfaces [Tanaka et al., 1996] the establishment of a pellicle facilitates the process and the importance of this aspect is that negatively charged surfaces would all support this same mechanism [Hermansson, 1999]. Furthermore, the establishment of a pellicle layer may mask any difference in the initial repulsion of the substrata [Jenderson and Glantz, 1981]. In this respect, the concordance between HA and enamel surfaces under identical environmental conditions is not surprising.

The results of the present study are in-line with those of several others. Pratten et al. [1998a] found only minor difference between single species biofilms of Streptococcus sanguinis NCTC10904 when produced on either HA, enamel or PTFE substrata. Direct comparison between bovine dentine and poly-acrylate demonstrated marked differences in the pH response of microcosm biofilms [Deng et al., 2004] however no significant differences were found between poly-acrylate and bovine dentine controls with respect to either the viable counts measured or lactic acid production but were when the biofilms were exposed to antimicrobials. These results would therefore suggest that colonisation is least effected by substrate although the sensitivity of the microbial population may be more so. As alluded to by Deng et al. [2004] and others [Zaura et al., 2002] buffering of a mineral substratum may contribute to the acclimation of the microbial community and therefore influence susceptibility. Calcium released during demineralisation can induce transformation competence [Trombe et al., 1992] and therefore growth of acidogenic multispecies communities on mineral substrata could provide a mechanism by which gene transfer [Molin and Tolker-Nielsen, 2003] is facilitated thus providing some further explanation of the results observed by Deng et al. [2004]. Growth on HA surface has also been shown to result in differential gene expression when compared to other negatively charged substrates such as polystyrene [Shemesh et al., 2010]. Whichever the cause, it is suggested that the chemical similarities between HA and enamel would serve best reduce the effects.

Following the removal of biofilms, no damage was observed to the surfaces of either the HA or enamel disks. This aspect was carefully noted as the abrasive and colloidal forces generated during
the vortexing stages of the enumeration technique may have resulted in damage to the softened surface of the mineral structure [Barbour and Rees, 2004]. Observations performed on a macroscopic level did not detect any signs of fracture and further to this, the TMR scan profiles clearly show that a SL was retained in lesions created under the FF conditions but not the CF conditions. As both were subject to the same biofilm removal procedure, it is likely that the lack of an SL in the CF groups was not the result of vortexing. However, some sections were lost during the TMR preparation process and it is possible that fragile surface zones may have been weakened. The relative safety of processing potentially fragile lesions in this way therefore remains a possible concern and as HA demonstrates a decent analogue in terms of a surface for microbial adhesion and growth, physiochemical interactions and is less valuable to produce, its use in place of enamel as a biofilm substratum can be justified.

### 5.4.2 Biofilm Growth and Formation and Caries Lesions

The sucrose pulsing strategy used (Figure 5.2.2) equates to a daily consumption of 0.780 g.d\(^{-1}\) which is far below recommended safe limits set by analysis of WHO data of 50 g.d\(^{-1}\) [Sreebny, 1982]. However, comparably lower cariogenic challenges have been shown to produce caries lesions within the CDFF system [Cenci et al., 2009; Deng et al., 2005]. Crucially, these in vitro studies concentrated on dentine as a substrate for lesion formation and dentine is intrinsically more soluble than enamel [Robinson et al., 1995a]. It would therefore be suggested that direct exposure of the biofilm to a cariogenic challenge is able to enhance the process of caries lesion formation.

Similar sucrose challenges have however been used to generate carious lesions in situ [Aires et al., 2006; Ccahuana-Vásquez et al., 2007; Cury et al., 2000]. Aries et al. [2006] tested a range of sugar concentrations using an almost identical exposure strategy. The authors found that under these conditions a 14.60 mM sucrose exposure was sufficient for the production of carious lesion in human enamel. Further to this, it was also noted that’s a positive correlation between mineral loss and the concentration of the sugar exposure solution existed. In the present work, the concentration of the sugar solution was at the higher end of the spectrum used by Aries et al. [2006]. Given the lessened protective effects of the STGM (Section 4.4.1 and Section 4.4.2) it is perhaps not surprising that the current model was able to form such well-defined lesions.

Within the present work, a well-defined SL occurred in those lesions which were produced under the FF cycle (Figure 5.3.8) whereas this feature appeared absent in the lesions taken from the CF condition (Figure 5.3.7). A possible basis for this observation may lie in chemical parameters at the interface between the enamel surface and biofilm PF. Coupled-diffusion is known to play a significant part in the formation of the SL [Anderson and Elliott, 1987] and a factor which is able to
augment this process is the ionic strength of the medium at the interface [Anderson et al., 2004].

The combined introduction of STGM and the sucrose solution (CF condition) would, presumably, result in the biofilms being exposed to a medium of higher ionic strength than if they were exposed to sucrose in the absence of the STGM (FF condition). The ionic strength of the STGM cannot be calculated fully however rough calculations from Figure 4.3.5 and Figure 4.3.6 determine it to be 0.1559 mM when mixed 50:50 within sucrose solution at neutral pH [Shellis, 1988]. Pure 50 mM sucrose solution does not possess any ionic component. Therefore, the bulk solution in contact with the biofilm during a cariogenic challenge would have a lower ionic strength in the FF conditions than in the CF condition. It is reasonable to assume that the PF would also be effected [Margolis and Moreno, 1994] however to what extent this would occur would only be possible if the composition of the PF was measured during a cariogenic challenge. If the ionic strength of the PF was significantly reduced in the FF condition then this would increase the effects of diffusive coupling within the system [Anderson et al., 2004] and therefore could partially explain the enhanced SL feature in lesions which were created under these conditions. However, many more factors are involved in caries lesion formation [Anderson and Elliott, 1992]. A second aspect may have been an alteration to the DS of the PF with respect to the enamel mineral during the FF sucrose exposure or the difference in the cariogenic challenge due to dilution with the STGM in the CF condition.

As a biological caries model, alterations to the collective physiological state of the biofilms within is also a factor which is likely to contribute to the lesions which are produced. Carbohydrates are present in the STGM but it can be assumed that the concentrations of these would not be high enough to result in significant levels of acid production to enable the selection of acidogenic and aciduric species [Bradshaw et al., 1990; Marsh, 2003b] and ultimately create a cariogenic state. As noted above, measurements of the PF would be necessary in order to investigate to what extent acid production occurs in the absence of sucrose pulses. However, based on the assertion that adjunct sucrose is sufficient for this process [Aires et al., 2006; Arthur et al., 2013; Bowden and Li, 1997; Leme et al., 2006; Marsh, 1995a; Pratten et al., 2000; Shu et al., 2000; Vroom et al., 1999], the reduction in sucrose concentration which occurs with the effect of mixing STGM and sucrose solution in the CF condition may have some influence on the lesions which were developed. In effect, a 50 mM sucrose challenge in the FF condition would equate to approximately a 25 mM challenge in the CF conditions. Although a positive correlation was indicated, Aries et al. [2006] found no difference between these concentration ranges in their in situ model; possibly, this was due to the inherent biological variation present in such data.
Within the present work, microbial data did not show any strong evidence that either dCDFF condition was able to reach a more or less cariogenic state than the other although some indications were observed. In general, the communities within either unit resulted in remarkably similar ecological states. The lack of any real distinction between FA, *Lactobacillus* *spp.* and *Streptococcus* *spp.* in part demonstrates the efficacy of the dCDFF model [Hope et al., 2012]. However, in the FF condition the proportion of MS rose higher whereas the proportion of *Veillonella* *spp.* remained lower. As highly acidogenic species [Marsh, 2003b; Marsh and Martin, 2009b; Zero, 2004], a higher proportion of MS can be associated within a greater cariogenicity [Hamada and Slade, 1980; Loesche, 1986]. On the other hand, *Veillonella* *spp.* are able to metabolise lactate as an energy source [Rogosa and Bishop, 1964], their presence within a biofilm may therefore aide in the removal of the acids following production and therefore help to mitigate cariogenic episodes [Mikx et al., 1976]. This would point to a less cariogenic plaque within the CF condition. However, assertions made on the basis of selective culture are limited as more than one community structure may be stable under a certain set of environmental conditions [Sissons, 1997]. Moreover, any alteration to the environment is most likely to exert an effect on the biofilm phenotype whereas changes in the composition are likely to be secondary [Kinniment et al., 1996]. Consequently, quantification of the metabolic activity would provide a much greater insight [Nyvad et al., 2013].

![Figure 5.4.1 (Successive Basis of Lamination Zone Formation): Stages of the caries process are marked by colour coding: ](successive-basis-of-lamination-zone-formation.png) Inward diffusion gradient, ■) Demineralisation challenge. ■) Mineral loss (ΔZ) following the continuation of the processes; a) initial “strong” cariogenic challenge; b) secondary “weaker” cariogenic challenge; c) resulting lesion profile (not to scale).

Lamination zones [Palamara et al., 1986] were apparent in some of the samples taken from the CF condition (Figure 5.3.9). These could have resulted from exposures of purely chemical source [Damato et al., 1990; Lagerweij and ten Cate, 2006; Lippert et al., 2012] but within dCDFF system, the environmental conditions are controlled [Pratten, 2005] and it would therefore be more likely that these structures resulted from some deviation from the uninterrupted state of biofilm growth that was expected. Biofilms which form progressively would, in theory, react to a cariogenic challenge in a way dependent on their state of maturity. Lamination zones may also result from the successive formation of 2 SLs (the deeper of which being the remnants of an earlier lesion which penetrated further as illustrated in Figure 5.4.1). In a logical progression, this histological feature
may have formed through damage or removal of a mature cariogenic biofilm and the re-colonisation with less cariogenic growth. If such a disturbance was to occur in situ or in vivo, subsequent re-growth would require passage through the stages defined by the EPH [Marsh, 1994]. However, within the dCDFF unit, continuous re-inoculation with a fully aciduric community would arise by the action of the scraper blades although re-establishment of the biofilm structure would reduce cariogenic potential. The proportion, composition and physical structure of the EPS may also effect the retention of mineral ions [Cury et al., 1997; Russell, 2009] or diffusion though the structure itself [Dibdin and Shellis, 1988; Hata and Mayanagi, 2003]. Therefore, although the community would be re-inoculated with acidogenic and aciduric community, full cariogenicity would not immediately develop. Thus, explaining the occurrence of these particular lamination zones (Figure 5.3.9).

Viewing lesion progression over the course of the experiment, the FF condition showed the greatest development over time whereas the progression appeared hindered in the CF condition (Figure 5.3.10). Heightened proportions of Veillonella spp. (Figure 5.3.5) could have contributed to lower cariogenicity [Mikx et al., 1976] however variation was also seen in the lesions created under the CF conditions. To this end, lamination zones could have contributed but their magnitude alone would not account for the variation. The most probable explanation therefore lies in that which was suggested to have caused to formation of the lamination zones noted above. If mechanical disturbance of the biofilm occurred at least once in the CF condition, then it is possible that this may have occurred several times. Depending on the extent of such a disruption, the biofilms may have been prevented from reaching their full cariogenic potential. Thus, mechanistic influences may have confounded results to some extent although the reduced cariogenic challenge as a result of mixing the sucrose solution with the STGM in the CF condition [Aires et al., 2006] may have also contributed as was indicated by the higher proportion of MS and lower content of Veillonella spp. in the biofilms which received a greater exposure to fermentable carbohydrates [Marsh, 1994].

Enamel tissue also exhibits variations in mineral composition [Robinson et al., 2000] but exogenous chemical alterations are typically concentrated to the outermost layers [Li et al., 1994; Nakagaki et al., 1987; Pearce et al., 1995] however these chemically altered layers would have been removed by the polishing process [Arends and Christoffersen, 1986; Mellberg, 1992]. Variations in the ELT may have created differences in the composition of the artificial surface [Anderson and Elliott, 2000; Theuns et al., 1986a; Theuns et al., 1986b] and therefore may have also contributed to the variability in the lesions created under the CF condition (Figure 5.3.7). Likewise, the development of the SLs may have been subject to these same complications although whether this can be defined as the root cause of variation in the SL measurements remains in question.
What was demonstrated (most reliably in enamel lesions created in the FF condition) was that enamel lesion progression was not linear within this model. These observations raise interesting questions over the dangers associated with stagnation sites and the removal of plaque biofilms as from this data, cariogenicity was greatest in the earlier stages of the experiment; as biofilm maturation progressed, further demineralisation appeared more limited. This observation therefore questions the completeness of the EEPH [Takahashi and Nyvad, 2008] as what would be observed is a biofilm which had reached a highly cariogenic state but following which a reversion had also occurred. Alterations in the structure and composition of the mature biofilm and the retention of inorganic mineral ions [Cury et al., 1997; Duckworth and Gao, 2006; García-Godoy and Hicks, 2008; Tenuta et al., 2006] could have contributed somewhat to the reduction in rate of mineral loss observed.

As noted above, one assumption which was consistently made was that the mineral loss within each section was considered to have progressed equally across the entire system when in actual fact the mineral loss from each sample may have behaved differently. An advantage would therefore have been use of techniques which allow for mineral loss to be measured within the same sample longitudinally [Amaechi and Higham, 2002; Anderson et al., 1998; de Josselin de Jong et al., 1987]. However, the operating constraints of the CDFF do not permit the re-insertion of samples once they have been removed. In much the same way that colonisation resistance can maintain the exclusion of harmful microorganisms [Marsh and Martin, 2009a] airborne microorganisms could disrupt the biofilm community to point where the representivity of the biofilm is compromised. Thus, within the CDFF the use of multiple sections to follow mineral loss longitudinally is, to some extent, not ideal [de Josselin de Jong et al., 1987]. The application of other, non-destructive, techniques to gauge mineral content would not have been feasible whilst ensuring against external contamination.

In summation, it has been demonstrated that the CDFF model is able to produce caries lesions in enamel tissues under the current operating procedures [Pratten, 2005]. Although the STGM is highly saturated with respect to calcium phosphate salts (Figure 4.4.4), it appears the higher driving force for remineralisation does not promote mineral deposition to the point of counteracting the effects of the challenges imposed. There is also some indication that the biofilms produced within the CDFF may be more highly cariogenic in the earlier stages of formation and this should therefore be investigated further. However, in order to provide the greatest insight into the physiological state of biofilms within the unit, methods which are able to directly capture their metabolic activity should be employed [Nyvad et al., 2013].
5.5.0 Conclusions

The use of HA for microbial enumeration and in conjunction with the inclusion of enamel surfaces for the assessment of changes in mineral content is an appropriate strategy to assess both parameters in the CDFF. Whether or not an enamel or HA substratum is used does alter biofilm formation to any significant degree and, from this perspective, the choice of substratum does not have any discernable effect on the biofilm which are formed. Moreover, the choice of STGM flow cycle (CF or FF) also does not have any strong effect on the composition of the microbial community although there is some evidence of alterations to the physiological state of the biofilm (crucially with respect to lesion formation). Acidogenic capacity, or more specifically the acid response of biofilms from either dCDFF condition, may be a more effective means of determining whether the microbial community itself was significantly altered or whether the relationship seen was a product of an inorganic change in biochemical equilibrium.

Both CF and FF strategies will allow for the formation of caries lesions however it should be remembered that the composition of the PF may be altered by this; not only by direct equilibrium but also by the concentration of the cariogenic substrate or any adjunct agent that is used. Within the present study, a reduction in the ionic strength of the PF during the imposed cariogenic challenge was identified as the cause of the differences in lesion architecture that were observed. However, as noted above, biochemical analysis of the PF would be required to prove this assertion unequivocally and should therefore be explored.
Chapter 6: Influence of Sucrose vs. dH$_2$O on In Vitro Biofilm Formation and Sucrose-Induced Acidogenic Capacity.

6.1.0 Introduction

Fermentable carbohydrates are considered one of the principle components which are able to alter the ecology of dental plaque [Marsh, 1995b]. Of these, the effects of sucrose are well established as having a highly cariogenic effect [Bowen, 2002; Burt et al., 2008; Cury et al., 2000; Gustafsson et al., 1953; Minah et al., 1985; Woodward and Walker, 1994]. Further to this, epidemiological evidence supports a positive correlation between the frequency of sugar intake and incidence of dental caries as opposed to the quantity which is consumed [Anderson et al., 2009].

![Figure 6.1.1 (Sucrose Catabolism): Utilisation mechanisms for the formation of Pophoenolpyruvate (PEP) and Pyruvate. Enzymes and energy currency molecules are given in italics (SPH: Sucrose-6-Phospho-Hydrolase; PGM: Phospho-Gluco-Mutase; HK: Hexokinase; FK: Fructokinase; PFK: Phospho-Fructo-Kinase; SP: Sucrose-Phosporylase; PHI: Phospho-Hexose Isomerase; TPI: Triose-Phospho-Isomerase; GDHP: Glyceraldehyde-3-P Dehydrogenase; PGLK: Phospho-Glycerate-Kinase; PGLM: Phospho-Glycerate-Mutase; PKL: Pyruvate-Kinase; ATP: Adenosine Tri-Phosphate; NAD: Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide) with the exception of cell membrane proteins EII and SPE.]

Microbial communities also possess a wide variety of sugar utilisation systems. Further to this, the imposition of various selective pressures and contributing mechanisms (such as horizontal gene transfer [Molin and Tolker-Nielsen, 2003]) result in vast array of potential biochemical pathways which, in turn, can make discussion over discrete responses to even specific environmental conditions difficult. However, several aspects which are central to the utilisation of fermentable carbohydrates are highly conserved [Marsh and Martin, 2009a]. Transmembrane transport of
Sucrose occurs predominantly via the Phosphoenolpyruvate-Phosphotransferase (PET-PTS) and Sucrose Permease (SP) pathways (Figure 6.1.1). Sucrose may also be degraded before entry into the cells by sucrase enzymes located within the EPS of the biofilm [Leme et al., 2006]. In order for cellular metabolism to take place, the sugar must first be broken down into its constitute monosaccharides [Williams and Elliott, 1989]. Further, extracellular utilisation resulting in the formation of EPS matrix may also contribute to cariogenicity through alterations in the PF composition [Cury et al., 2000].

However, the formation of an EPS matrix alone is by no means the only factor which determines the cariogenicity of plaque biofilms. To this end, the production of organic acids is central to the altering the DS of the PF with respect to enamel mineral and thus effecting demineralisation and the onset of dental caries [Margolis and Moreno, 1994]. Several research groups have investigated the composition of the PF [Dibdin, 1990; Edgar and Higham, 1990; Gao et al., 2001; Higham and Edgar, 1989, 1991; Margolis and Moreno, 1992; Margolis et al., 1985; Moreno and Margolis, 1988; Oliveby et al., 1990; Vogel et al., 1990] however these centred on direct clinical relevance and therefore chose to focus their studies on plaque samples which were obtained in vivo. The drawback of this approach is that samples taken from multiple individuals can be markedly dissimilar and without control for the initial community from which the plaque came, direct comparisons of the microbial ecology are difficult. Attempts have been made to quantify the acidogenic response of in vitro biofilms [Deng et al., 2005; Zaura et al., 2011] although extraction of the PF to the extent of determining both organic acid production and retention of inorganic ions has not yet been performed within a controlled in vitro environment. Thus, the dCDFF model may provide a platform to investigate the response of microcosm biofilms to known cariogenic substrates such as sucrose. Further to this, methods which capture the ecology of the biofilm community in conjunction with changes in the PF may provide greater insight into causative relationships with occur during the onset of cariogenic biofilm formation [Marsh, 1994].

### 6.1.1 Aims and Objectives

The following experiments aim to demonstrate the effects of sucrose on in vitro biofilm formation and resultant metabolic activity upon exposure to sucrose. This will be achieved with the use of a shared microcosm inoculum in the dCDFF system [Hope et al., 2012] and subsequent analysis for organic acids, inorganic anions and cations within centrifugally-extracted PF. PF ionic composition in conjunction with the state of the microbial ecology will be used to compare these in vitro biofilms to natural dental plaque and thus test the assertion that the CDFF can produced orally relevant biofilms under a set of standard operating conditions [Pratten, 2005]. Further to this, the relative cariogenicity will be inferred by way of PF composition following exposure to sucrose.
6.2.0 Materials and Methods

The in vitro effect of sucrose versus dH$_2$O pulsing on biofilm formation was investigated in the dual constant depth film fermenter (dCDFF) model described in Section 5.2.2. Biofilms were formed from a pooled human salivary inoculum (Sections 5.2.1). However for the purposes of this investigation, enamel was not used as a substratum rather HA disks (Clarkson Chromatography Products Inc., South WillaimSPORT, PA, USA) were used as a sole support for biofilm growth. All available spaces within PTFE pans were filled with HA disks so as to provide an excess of biofilm samples outside the needs of this experiment.

Sterilisation procedure were followed exactly as described in Section 5.2.2.1 however the assembly of the apparatus differed somewhat to that which was described previously (Section 5.2.2.2). An inoculum flask was made-up to contain 1 L of STGM (composition given in Table 4.2.1) with a magnetic flea added before sterilisation. The prepared inoculum was allowed to cool to 37°C for ≥ 2 h in a standard laboratory incubator (IP250-U; LTE Scientific Ltd., Oldham, UK) following which a single 1.8 mL aliquot of the saliva pool was quickly thawed and added. The apparatus was then fully assembled as illustrated in Figure 6.2.1.

In brief, a 10 L supply of sterile STGM was connected to both CDFF Unit A and B. A 2 L supply of sterile 100 mM sucrose solution (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) was connected to Unit A whereas a 2 L supply of sterile dH$_2$O was connected to Unit B. For each CDFF, grow-back traps were used to isolate the liquid volumes from the fermenter vessels with the exception of the inoculum flask.

Peristaltic pumps (101U/R Low Flow Peristaltic Pump; Watson Marlow, Falmouth, UK) were used to control the flow of liquids into the CDFFs. These were set to a flow rate of 0.38 mL min$^{-1}$ for sucrose solutions, dH$_2$O and the 10 L STGM volume whereas the inoculum was set to 0.5 mL min$^{-1}$. Once assembled, the inoculum was fed in in the absence of any other agent. At the flow rate chosen, this took approximately 15 h. At the point the inoculum was exhausted, the pumps controlling the flow of the 10 L STGM supply were initiated as were those controlling the flow of both the dH$_2$O and the 100 mM sucrose volumes. However, these pumps were not activated for the same periods as each other. As illustrated in Figure 6.2.2, a 100 mM sucrose solution or dH$_2$O was fed in 8 times daily over a 16 h period for 15 min as part of a 24 h cycle. These pulses happened in the absence of STGM therefore requiring the pumps controlling the STGM supply to be stopped during the periods where the sucrose solution and dH$_2$O pumps were active. This was achieved by the use of digitally controlled socket timers (Draper Tools Ltd., Hampshire, UK) set to switch the corresponding pumps on and off at the correct times.
Influence of Sucrose vs. dH₂O on In Vitro Biofilm Formation and Sucrose-Induced Acidogenic Capacity

Figure 6.2.1 (dCFFF Schematic Set-Up) a: Sterile 100 mM Sucrose Solution; b: Sterile Saliva-Type Growth Medium (STGM); c: Sterile dH₂O; d: Peristaltic Pump running at 0.38 mL·min⁻¹; e: Peristaltic Pump 0.38 mL·min⁻¹; f: Grow-Back Trap; g: Peristaltic Pump 0.5 mL·min⁻¹; h: Inoculum Flask with Magnetic Stirrer; i: CDFF Unit A; j: CDFF Unit B; k: Effluent; *: 0.3µm Air Filter.
6.2.1 Biofilm Sampling Procedure

Biofilms were sampled at days 2, 4, 6 and 8. Immediately after the 4th sucrose or dH₂O pulse of the days cycle (2:00PM), one PTFE pan was extracted from each CDFF using the procedure describe in Section 5.2.3. Three HA disks were selected from pans on the basis of the whether or not there was evidence for any disruption to the biofilm. These disks were then placed in 5 mL PBS solution (Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK) containing 3 sterile glass beads (3.5 - 4.5 mm diameter; BDH-Merk Ltd., Poole, UK) and vortex mixed for 30 sec. Serial 10-fold dilutions were then made in PBS solution to final dilution factor of x10⁶.

Twenty-five µL volumes of these dilutions were then spread on both selective and non-selective agars. Initially, all dilutions were spread however in later stages it became possible to pre-empt the number of colony forming units (CFUs) and therefore only dilutions deemed appropriate were used. The community members chosen for identification were: fastidious anaerobes on FAA media supplemented with 5% defibrinated horse blood (Section 5.2.4.1), Streptococcus spp. of MSA (Section 5.2.4.3) and Lactobacillus spp. on Rogosa agar (Section 5.2.4.4). CFU counts were then recorded in the range 100 ≤ CFU ≤ 300 whenever possible, assuming complete dispersal of the biofilm, these counts were correct for dilution and dispersal in PBS and expressed by unit area of the of the HA disk’s surface within the recess provided. All statistics were performed as described in Section 2.2.4.

6.2.2 Plaque Fluid Extraction

On the sample days indicated (2, 4, 6 and 8), PTFE pans holing HA disks were extracted immediately before and immediately after the 5th sucrose pulse of the cycle on the given day (4:00PM). In all cases, HA disks were quickly removed from their pans and placed side-on in 0.2 mL PCR tubes.
Influence of Sucrose vs. dH₂O on In Vitro Biofilm Formation and Sucrose-Induced Acidogenic Capacity | Ch. 6

(Eppendorf PCR Tubes; Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) using sterile fine-tipped tweezers. Tubes were then spun in a desktop centrifuge (Sanyo MSE Micro Centaur; Thermo Optek UK Ltd., Sussex, UK) for 1 min at 13000 rpm. The disks were then removed using the same fine-tipped tweezers and another HA disk placed in the same position as the previous and the PCR tube spun for a further 1 min at 13000 rpm. This removed the biofilm mass from the surface of the disk by the centrifugal force generated. Once a sufficient number of disks supporting biofilms had been centrifuged (approximately 3) the pellet collected at the bottom of the PCR tube was spun for a further 2 min at 13000 rpm before 5 µL of the supernatant was carefully removed with 0.1 – 10 µL pipette (Eppendorf UK Ltd., Stevenage, UK). This was then added to another 0.2 mL PCR tube and stored at -30°C until ready for analysis by capillary electrophoresis (CE). Altogether, PF collection took 7 minutes from the point at which the HA disks were removed from the CDFF unit.

6.2.3 Organic Acid, Anion and Cation Analysis

CE analysis was applied to plaque fluid samples. This was performed using a using a P/ACE-MDQ system equipped with a UV detection system (Beckman-Coulter UK Ltd., High-Wycombe, UK). Exact operating conditions can be found in Section 4.2.2. In brief, samples were quantitatively analysed for both anions and cations. With respect to anions, the analytes which were chosen for identification were chloride, nitrate, fluoride, formate, succinate, acetate, lactate, propionate, phosphate and butyrate. Azide (from sodium azide) was used an internal standard from anion analysis. The cationic species chosen were ammonium, sodium, potassium, magnesium and calcium with lithium (from lithium chloride) used as an internal standard.

Samples were first thawed and diluted in 15 µL Na-Azide solution so as the azide internal standard was constant at 250 µM. Samples were then analysed using the anion analysis kit supplied by the manufacturer (Beckman-Coulter UK Ltd., High-Wycombe, UK). Following this, a further 5 µL of Lithium chloride solution added so as the sample now contained 1 mM lithium as a cation internal standard. The samples were then run using the cation analysis kit also provided by the manufacturer (Beckman-Coulter UK Ltd., High-Wycombe, UK). Triplicate measurements were made for both runs and the traces obtained were quantified in comparison to a set of external standards across 4 calibration levels as described in Section 4.2.2.1 using the 32 Karat software provided by the manufacturer (Beckman-Coulter UK Ltd., High-Wycombe, UK). As anions were analysed at an x4 dilution and cations were analysed x5, the concentrations calculated from each of the traces were multiplied x4 and x5 for anions and cations respectively. Further, as cations were subsequent to anions and the internal standard used for anion analysis (Na-Azide) introduced 250 µM Na⁺, this was subtracted from the final concentration calculated for sodium from the cation peaks. All statistical analyses were performed as described in Section 2.2.4.
6.3.0 Results

6.3.1 Enumeration of Biofilm Bacteria
Mean viable counts of FA were not significantly different between either dH$_2$O or sucrose-exposure conditions when the results taken from the same sample days were compared (P ≥ 0.061). Trends in microbial growth patterns were also very similar regardless of whether the biofilms were exposed to sucrose (100 mM) or dH$_2$O pulsing strategies (Figure 6.2.2). Data for the FA group are presented below in Figure 6.3.1. In biofilms produced under both conditions, a significant increase in FA was seen between sample days 2 and 4 (P ≤ 0.032). However, between days 4 and 8, this increase did not show any statistical significance (P ≥ 0.319). Visually from the data presented in Figure 6.3.1, the biofilms in both conditions had reached a relatively stable and similar state between either dCDFF condition with respect to this particular microbial group.

![Figure 6.3.1 (Fastidious Anaerobes; FA): dCDFF units were exposed to either a 100 mM sucrose or dH$_2$O pulsing strategy. Both conditions received a FF STGM supply. Error bars represent the SD of each sample set. No significant differences were found between either dCDFF condition.](image)

Lactobacillus spp. showed a clear difference between dH$_2$O and sucrose exposure conditions (Figure 6.3.2). A complete separation in viable counts was confirmed (P ≤ 0.003) between conditions on each sampling occasion. In the sucrose condition, CFU counts of *Lactobacillus spp.* remained stable between sample days 2 and 4 (P = 0.896) but between days 4 and 8, a definite increase had begun. Between each of the remaining sample points (Sample days 4, 6 and 8) a significant increase (P ≤ 0.001) was observed in the sucrose exposure condition.
Figure 6.3.2 (Lactobacillus spp.): dCDFF units were exposed to either a 100 mM sucrose or dH2O pulsing strategy. Both conditions received a FF STGM supply. Error bars represent the SD of each sample set. An asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) and a double asterisk (**) indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) between dCDFF conditions.

Figure 6.3.3 (Streptococcus spp.): dCDFF units were exposed to either a 100 mM sucrose or dH2O pulsing strategy. Both conditions received a FF STGM supply. Error bars represent the SD of each sample set. An asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) and a double asterisk (**) indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) between dCDFF conditions.
In the dH$_2$O condition, viable counts of *Lactobacillus spp.* remained present but lower and remained so over the entire course of the experiment. No significant difference was seen between any of the sample points within this condition (P ≥ 0.857) hence a lack of exposure to sucrose appeared to suppress the enrichment of *Lactobacillus spp.*

Viable counts of *Streptococcus spp.* (Figure 6.3.3) were initially indistinguishable between biofilms extracted from either condition on days 2 and 4 (P ≥ 0.399). However, following 4 days of the pulsing strategy, a significant divergence occurred (P ≤ 0.007). In the sucrose exposure condition, counts had begun to increase within the biofilm samples on the 6$^{th}$ day (P = 0.012) whereas those in the dH$_2$O exposure condition remained relatively low (P = 0.999). Between sample days 6 and 8, CFU counts increased even further under exposure to sucrose (P = 0.020) whereas those in the dH$_2$O condition decreased significantly (P = 0.001). This separation in growth trends is illustrated in Figure 6.3.3 where the continued increase in viable *Streptococcus spp.* counts is visible for the sucrose condition and a relatively steady-state which then proceeded to a decrease is indicated in the dH$_2$O condition.
6.3.3 Organic Acid, Anion and Cation Analysis

In the presence of sucrose pulsing, lactate was the predominate acid produced by all biofilms. The greatest lactate production was seen 2 days into the sucrose pulsing strategy (Figure 6.2.2). However, at later stages the concentration of lactate produced dropped to approximately half that which was seen at day 2 (Figure 6.3.4). In the absence of sucrose pulsing, lactate was not produced to such an extent. By day 6, the PF concentrations of lactate were BMDL that of the CE system (62.48 µM). Statistically, a significant difference was found between dCDFF unit conditions on day 2 (P < 0.001) however by day 4 this difference could no longer be confirmed (P = 0.105). Although a decrease was observed over the course of the experiment (Figure 6.3.4), no significant differences were found between the measures which were made on either of the 4 sampling days and this was true for both the sucrose (P = 0.158) and dH₂O (P = 0.323) exposure conditions.

The predominant organic acid produced in the absence of sucrose pulsing was acetate and this was detected both in the presence and absence of sucrose pulsing however the levels of production varied considerably between sampling occasions. Between dCDFF conditions, the differences were only significant on sample day 2 where a higher proportion of acetate was found in PF samples taken from the dH₂O condition (P = 0.018). Although not statistically significant, mean acetate concentrations were typically higher in the absence of sucrose exposure with the only exception
In the sucrose exposure condition, no difference could be found between any sampling occasion (P = 0.624). However, in the dH₂O condition a significant difference was found (P = 0.036) but following adjustment for multiple comparisons (Tukey’s HSD), no specific deviation could be found (P ≥ 0.052).

Succinate was detected in small quantities in all sucrose puling conditions (approximately 200 µM) but not within any of the PF samples which were extracted from biofilms exposed to dH₂O (Figure 6.3.9a to Figure 6.3.9i). The same was true of formate, although formate was detected in slightly greater quantities than was succinate. Interestingly, succinate did not show a direct progression with time rather concentrations remained around a steady background level (P = 0.652) whereas this was not true for formate. These concentrations did appear to increase but not to the point of statistical significance (P > 0.492).

Phosphate was present in the PF phase of all biofilms (Figure 6.3.6) although the traces obtained exhibited interference around the phosphate peaks similar to that which was noted during the analysis of the STGM (Figure 4.3.2). This complication made phosphate peak integration difficult and, although useable data was collected, the results may not have been as accurate as the other analytes mentioned thus far. In the case of this analyte, no relationship between either sample days...
or dCDFF conditions could be verified ($P > 0.106$) with the only exception being a relatively higher proportion in biofilm PF extracted from the dH$_2$O condition on sample day 2 ($P = 0.040$).

Propionate (Figure 6.3.9a to Figure 6.3.9i) was found in PF extracted from both sucrose and dH$_2$O conditions although concentrations were consistently higher in sucrose pulsing conditions (similar to as was observed with lactate). Between dCDFF conditions, differences could only be confirmed statistically on day 2 and 4 ($P \leq 0.004$). With respect to measurements made within each condition, no relationship could be found between propionate concentrations and the sample day ($P = 0.173$).

**Figure 6.3.6 (Phosphate PF Concentrations in Comparison by CDFF Condition):** Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set ($n=3$ unless otherwise indicated) and an asterisk (*) indicates a significantly different result ($P = 0.050$) between sample sets.

Both nitrates and fluorides were not detected in any of the PF samples analysed. This is not to say that their absence can be confirmed but rather their quantities were BMDL for the CE system (62.48 µM for both nitrate and fluoride; 1.18 ppm F$^-$).

Sodium, potassium, and chloride were all consistently major constitutes of the biofilm PF regardless of exposure to sucrose or dH$_2$O pulsing. Magnesium was also present in all cases although as a minor constitutes with respect to the former (Figure 6.3.9a to Figure 6.3.9i). However, for each of the 4 aforementioned ions, no significant differences could be determined between sample days in each dCDFF unit condition ($P \geq 0.273$, $P \geq 0.399$, $P \geq 0.174$ and $P \geq 164$ respectively) or between dCDFF conditions when results from the same sample days were compared ($P \geq 0.122$, $P \geq 0.458$, $P \geq 0.303$).
and \( P \geq 0.098 \) respectively) although some exceptions were found to exist. On sample day 2, both potassium \( (P = 0.032) \) and chloride \( (P = 0.010) \) were higher following exposure to sucrose than in samples taken from the biofilms which were exposed to dH\( _2 \)O condition.

Ammonia was abundant within all biofilms (between 3 and 8 mM) however, as with many of the other analytes, no relationship could be determined for this particular sample set either between dCDFF conditions \( (P = 0.232) \) or between samples days within conditions \( (P = 0.342) \).

![Figure 6.3.7 (Butyrate PF Concentrations in Comparison by CDFF Condition): Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set \( (n=3 \) unless otherwise indicated) and an asterisk \( (*) \) indicates a significantly different result \( (P = 0.050) \) between sample sets.](image)

Butyrate was also detected in all PF samples however at much lower concentrations (between 250 and 950 \( \mu \)M) although, similarly to phosphate, butyrate peaks emerged within a region of the sample traces which was subject to interference. Nonetheless, statistical comparisons were applied and, not surprisingly, found no significant difference between sample days in the sucrose exposure condition \( (P = 0.864) \) but did in PF samples collected from biofilms under dH\( _2 \)O exposure \( (P = 0.001) \).

Post-hoc testing revealed a significant increase between days 4 and 6 \( (P = 0.006) \) followed by a decrease between days 6 and 8 \( (P 0.003) \). Between sample conditions butyrate was determined as higher in the samples extracted from the dH\( _2 \)O condition on sample day 6 only \( (P = 0.028) \). Both of these observations pointed to a relative peak in butyrate concentration at this point (Figure 6.3.7).
Calcium was present in all of PF samples which were analysed. Furthermore, calcium was relatively higher in samples taken from the sucrose exposure conditions (Figure 6.3.8). These results were able to be confirmed statistically (P ≤ 0.039) with the only exception being samples taken on the 8th day. In this instance, statistical tests could not be applied as only a single data point was available for calcium within the PF sampled from the dH2O exposure condition. This was due to a major system failure during the CE analysis. Traces were obtained for the rejected samples clearly indicating the presence of calcium however an electrical fault led to an inconsistent current during the latter end of cation separations (Figure 4.3.4) and therefore calcium peaks could not be integrated to any real degree of accuracy. For the results which were obtained, comparisons across sample days within each condition revealed a somewhat variable but non-significant trend (P ≥ 0.123). However, system performance was not an issue during these separations.

Figure 6.3.8 (Calcium PF Concentrations in Comparison by CDFF Condition): Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n=3 unless otherwise indicated). An asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions.

Data for all analytes are presented below in Figure 6.3.9a to Figure 6.3.9i. Within these diagrams the relative composition of the PF extracted from each condition and at each time point is presented in their relative proportions within each biofilm. As is evident from these illustrations, a degree of variation occurred within dCDFF conditions over the course of the experiment although several consistent trends can be seen in the principle components described above.
Influence of Sucrose vs. dH2O on In Vitro Biofilm Formation and Sucrose-Induced Acidogenic Capacity | Ch. 6

Figure 6.3.9a (Plaque Fluid Composition at 2 Days; 7 min after a 100 mM Sucrose Pulse): All detectable analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 minutes after a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate and fluoride were not detected within any of the samples analysed.

Day 2 (Sucrose)

- Phosphate (1080.04 ± 258.79)
- Propionate (1881.36 ± 320.37)
- Sodium (7975.83 ± 1660.4)
- Succinate (219.14 ± 37.41)
- Sulphate (236.25 ± 22.71)
- Acetate (1582.16 ± 759.51)
- Ammonium (4046.99 ± 846.42)
- Butyrate (278.08 ± 481.65)
- Calcium (7173.00 ± 1447.7)
- Chloride (6106.25 ± 882.50)
- Formate (845.25 ± 341.97)

Day 2 (dH2O)

- Phosphate (2660.41 ± 874.06)
- Propionate (256.99 ± 17.29)
- Sodium (5345.00 ± 1632.6)
- Sulphate (102.45 ± 35.63)
- Acetate (3319.41 ± 162.83)
- Ammonium (4392.52 ± 1565.8)
- Chloride (2899.66 ± 846.29)
- Calcium (1089.04 ± 366.23)
- Butyrate (326.47 ± 39.03)

Figure 6.3.9b (Plaque Fluid Composition at 2 Days; 7 min after a dH2O Pulse): All detectable analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 minutes after a 15 minutes dH2O pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate, fluoride, formate and succinate were not detected within any of the samples analysed.
Influence of Sucrose vs. dH₂O on In Vitro Biofilm Formation and Sucrose-Induced Acidogenic Capacity

Figure 6.3.9c (Plaque Fluid Composition at 4 Days; 7 min after a 100 mM Sucrose Pulse): All detectable analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 minutes after a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; μM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate and fluoride were not detected within any of the samples analysed.

Figure 6.3.9d (Plaque Fluid Composition at 4 Days; 7 min after a dH₂O Pulse): All detectable analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 minutes after a 15 minutes dH₂O pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; μM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate, fluoride, formate and succinate were not detected within any of the samples analysed.
Influence of Sucrose vs. dH$_2$O on In Vitro Biofilm Formation and Sucrose-Induced Acidogenic Capacity | Ch. 6

Figure 6.3.9e (Plaque Fluid Composition at 6 Days; 7 min after a 100 mM Sucrose Pulse): All detectable analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 minutes after a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate and fluoride were not detected within any of the samples analysed.

Figure 6.3.9f (Plaque Fluid Composition at 6 Days; 7 min after a dH$_2$O Pulse): All detectable analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 minutes after a 15 minutes dH$_2$O pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate, fluoride, formate, succinate and lactate were not detected within any samples analysed.
Figure 6.3.9g (Plaque Fluid Composition at 8 Days; 7 min after a 100 mM Sucrose Pulse): All detectable analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 minutes after a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate and fluoride were not detected within any of the samples analysed.

Figure 6.3.9i (Plaque Fluid Composition at 6 Days; 7 min after a dH2O Pulse): All detectable analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 minutes after a 15 minutes dH2O pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate, fluoride, formate, succinate and lactate were not detected within any samples analysed.
6.4.0 Discussion
Between either dCDFF conditions, no difference was observed in FA. Initially, this would point to the conclusion that sucrose exposures had no measureable effect on the ecology of the plaque biofilm when assessed by viable counts. However, a clear and obvious difference was seen between the proportions of viable counts of *Lactobacillus spp.* This group of organisms are highly aciduric and are able to performed sacchariolytic metabolism with the ultimate production of relatively high pKₗa acids such as lactic acid [Marsh and Martin, 2009b; Thomas et al., 1979]. In this respect, their enrichment within a sucrose pulsing strategy is not surprising as their selection within the biofilm community can be accounted for by the EPH [Marsh, 2003b]. Therefore, the positive selection of species such as *Lactobacillus spp.* are a strong indication that the biofilm within this dCDFF condition had matured to a possibly cariogenic state. However, cariogenicity and acidogenicity are not intrinsically linked. Simply the presence of a greater proportion of acidogenic species does not necessarily mean that the pH of the biofilm would be lowered to a point that would affect mineral dissolution. Buffering within the biofilm [Shellis and Dibdin, 1988], the utilisation of acids substrates [Marsh and Martin, 2009c], neutralisation from the tissue and the susceptibility of the tissue [Zaura-Arite et al., 1999; Zaura et al., 2002] may all play significant parts is determining whether or not carious demineralisation will develop.

*Streptococcus spp.* also appeared to persist in higher numbers when sucrose pulsing was employed. However, the *Streptococcus spp.* group is not exclusive to the more highly acidogenic microbiota within the present study. Many different microbes such as *Streptococcus salivarius, Streptococcus mitis* and *Streptococcus gordonii* may be isolated on the MSA media as would more highly acidogenic species such as *Streptococcus mutans* and *Streptococcus sobrinus*. Therefore, the supposed ecological shift which occurs during the transition to a cariogenic state [Marsh, 2003b] would not necessarily be captured. The use of a media which would select for the more acidogenic species would have been a further advantage as this would have helped to identify a proportion of the *Streptococcus spp.* group based on their physiological characteristics. Nevertheless, the enrichment of *Streptococcus spp.*, which was observed in under sucrose pulsing (Figure 6.3.3), may have been a reflection of an increase in the proportion of acidogenic species which did not occur in the dH₂O condition.

The dCDFF model is effective in controlling the variation between CDFF units [Hope et al., 2012] however even when the same microcosm inoculum is employed between dCDFF experiments, variation in the actual biofilms which are produced is a known complication [Sissons, 1997]. In a sense this can be detrimental to the concept of employing an *in vitro* system although it has also been identified that more than one community structure may be stable under the same set of
Influence of Sucrose vs. dH₂O on In Vitro Biofilm Formation and Sucrose-induced Acidogenic Capacity

environmental conditions [Kinniment et al., 1996] and that the imposition of an environmental influence is likely to exert is effect primarily on the function of the biofilm [Sissons, 1997] with the changes in species present being dictated by their ability to function.

With this in mind, comparisons can be made between the previous dCDFF experiments which were conducted under the same conditions (i.e. the FF condition described in Figure 5.2.2). Although the current experiment was run over a comparatively shorter length of time and with more concentrated exposures to sucrose, the growth between units was very similar with viable counts somewhat lower in the present work. This may have been due to the biological variation described above however the result of these differences on the collective physiological activity of the plaque biofilm is unknown; this therefore an aspect which should be addressed. On the other hand, the efficacy of selective culture and viable counts as a measure of the biofilm activity is perhaps another issue [Pratten et al., 2003b]. The differences which were seen may have been due to the fact that this technique not ideally suited to assessment of multispecies biofilms [Wade, 2002].

Interest in the use of molecular biology for the assessment and characterisation of biofilms has increased with the advent of high-throughput techniques and next-generation-sequencing (NGS) methods [Nyvad et al., 2013; Wade, 2002]. However, as recently pointed out by Nyvad et al. [2013], major drawbacks are associated with any technique which aims to characterise the cariogenic potential based solely on the community members present. Associations and, to some extent, predictions can be made based on the relative diversity of a given community [Takahashi and Nyvad, 2008] but ultimately the discrete identification of community members reveals only species as defined by their genotype (molecular biology) or partial aspects of phenotype (selective culture and colony morphology). Thus the analysis of the metabolic end-products and mineral ions within the PF may be a more appropriate parameter to compare.

6.4.1 Comparative Plaque-Fluid Composition
Measurements made from human plaque fluid samples [Gao et al., 2001; Higham and Edgar, 1989] show a similar pattern of organic acid production to what was found in the present work with respect to both acetate and lactate. However, at like times since the point of sucrose exposure (7 min), concentrations measured in vivo were typically higher [Edgar and Higham, 1990]. Lactate, for example came much closer to that measured by Gao et al. [2001] whereas, within this same comparison, acetate was less than half of that reported by these same authors. This is not an uncommon finding as the preparation procedure is known to alter the measured composition of the PF [Margolis and Moreno, 1994] and to this end, the PF extraction procedure was most similar to
that performed by Higham and Edgar [1989]. Therefore, comparisons made to studies which employed these particular separation methods would be the most appropriate to make.

It is not possible to say to what extent the use of this particular model had on the measured PF composition and unfortunately, PF analysis has not yet been performed on other CDFF biofilms. Although recently, Zaura et al. [2011] were able to produce biofilms under strikingly similar conditions and with an investment also made in measuring the metabolic activity of the microcosm community. One significant drawback of this study was the analysis of homogenised cells in relation to total protein content as opposed to direct analysis of the PF. This was done due to the necessity of a high-throughput assay however inter-cellular organic acids (Figure 6.4.1) would not contribute to the DS of the PF with respect to enamel mineral. Therefore, although a representation of metabolic activity was achieved, it is not directly applicable to the caries process. In the present work, the actual composition of the PF was quantified and even given that this would be secondary to the measurement of substratum mineral content [Zaura et al., 2011], the true acidogenicity of the biofilms was in fact captured [Edgar and Higham, 1990].

As expected, a clear increase in lactate production was found between the sucrose exposure condition when compared to the dH$_2$O exposure condition (Figure 6.3.4). What is less easily understood is the trend showing a gradual decrease in lactate production over the course of the experiment. Final pH was not measured but the production of lactate could be indicative of the pH that would occur however this would indicate a contradiction with reports which have shown multi-species biofilms to increase in acidic waste products over a similar period of time [Bradshaw et al., 1989]. Interestingly though, it is possible that this was due to existence in the biofilm state. A
relationship based around fluid transfer between the PF and the STGM may be able to explain these results to some extent.

With decreased access to salivary exchange, the pH of a biofilms is thought to remain lower for longer [Hudson et al., 1986; Pratten and Wilson, 1999]. If the concentration of lactate is taken to be reflective of the acidity of the biofilm, the gradual reduction in PF lactate during the enrichment of acidogenic species (*Lactobacillus spp.* and *Streptococcus spp.*) may be explained by the reverse of the situation observed by Pratten and Wilson [1999] and Hudson et al. [1986]; an increased transfer between the STGM and the biofilm PF. In theory, the effect of the rinsing the biofilm with the sucrose solution (or dH$_2$O) [Vogel et al., 2001] may have reduced the concentration of soluble species within the PF although it should be remembers that other factors may have contributed.

Pratten and Wilson [1999] conducted a series of extremely similar CDFF experiments under exposure to sucrose solution (29.21 mM). During these investigations the pH of the biofilm decreased steadily over an 8 day period. Therefore, the logical conclusion would be that the organic acids present within the PF (or the proportion of low-pK$_a$ acids) had increased. However, the present work indicates that lactate production or retention decreases over this same period. The persistency of the lower pH observed by Pratten and Wilson [1999] may thus be a combined effect of a decrease in acid production with a further decrease in the proportion of microbial cells to EPS matrix [Cury et al., 1997]. As the proportion of cells within the biofilm decrease as can the buffering capacity of the biofilm [Leme et al., 2006; Margolis and Moreno, 1994; Shellis and Dibdin, 1988] and in this case the net result would be that the biofilm pH would remain the same. There is however no direct evidence of this in the present work, observations were made on the biofilms produced under either conditions and the concept that enhanced sucrose exposure increased EPS matrix formation is perfectly plausible [Russell, 2009] but would need further corroboration.

Quantification of these bacteria or others such as *Wolinella spp.* [Simon et al., 2006] or *Veillonella spp.* which are known to be involved in cross-feeding [Marsh and Martin, 2009c; Spratt and Pratten, 2003] would have possibly shed further light on the observed results. The fact that lactate was found in small quantities during the early phase of the dH$_2$O condition but dropped BMDL from the 4th day onwards could be an indication of the accumulation of microorganisms which are able to metabolise lactate (such as the increase in *Veillonella spp.* which has previously occurred; Figure 5.3.5) Regrettably, *Veillonella spp.* were not isolated during the present study. Nevertheless, the CDFF model provides a high number of samples in comparison to other models [Dibdin and Wimpenny, 1999; Wilson, 1999] there are limitations which are exacerbated by the use of a physically smaller dual model [Hope et al., 2012]. In each instance that the model is run, a decision must be made as to
which parameters are measured and which are not. In order to provide the most comprehensive view, a reduction in the number of sampling occasions and, hence, a reduction in the resolution of the data is inevitably the result.

An indication was also seen in that acetate was lower in the biofilms which had been exposed to sucrose (Figure 6.3.5) and several theories exist which may be able to explain this observation. A switch from homo- to hetero-fermentative metabolism under the exposure to sucrose [Thomas et al., 1979], loss of the lower pKₐ acid through diffusion into the enamel tissue [Featherstone and Rodgers, 1981; Geddes et al., 1984] or changes in the undefined ecology of the plaque biofilm may have been responsible. In reality, each of these factors may have contributed however what is alluded to is the importance of the organic acid buffer system within dental plaque [Shellis and Dibdin, 1988]. The acidity generated by lower-pKₐ acids such as lactic acid is buffered by higher-pKₐ acids such as acetate, propionate, succinate and butyrate [Higham and Edgar, 1989; Margolis et al., 1985]. An elevated level of the latter 4 in the dH₂O conditions would therefore indicated a less cariogenic state of these biofilms. It should also be noted that formate was detected in the sucrose exposure conditions but not in biofilms which were exposed to dH₂O. Formate was present in very low concentrations so its contribution to the acidity of the biofilm is not likely to be significant however this may be an indication of an alteration in the ecology of the biofilm community. Formate production may support the growth of Wolinella spp. [Simon et al., 2006] or likewise its absence from the PF sample may indicate metabolism by a fraction of Wolinella spp. which has become established in the absence of sucrose pulsing. Selective isolation of such a group would be necessary in order to confirm such a relationship.

Nitrate was not detected within any of the samples which were analysed. This result is not surprising as the nitrate content of the STGM was determined as BMDL (Section 4.3.2.1) and the same fact was true for fluoride. Both of these findings were expected as neither was introduced into the system. On the other hand, sulphate was introduced from the STGM (Figure 4.3.2) however no significant or observed difference could be found between dCDFF conditions or within conditions on consecutive sample days. It is possible that some trace amounts of sulphate or nitrate would be present or that the catabolic breakdown organic components may have resulted in its detection in the PF. In order to confirm such a relationship, a more accurate detection method would be needed.

Factors other than the acidogenicity of plaque biofilms have been identified as possible contributors to the caries process. The retention of inorganic ions within the plaque biofilm has also been proposed as one possible contributing factor [Cury et al., 2000]. Heightened levels of calcium can be explained on the basis of substratum or plaque mineral dissolution [Gao et al., 2001; Vogel et al.,
2000] or the direct release of bound calcium from biofilm bacteria themselves [Rose et al., 1993] and this coincides well with the increase in lactate production under exposure to sucrose. The same is true for magnesium which may also exist within the same reservoirs however the detected PF concentrations of this particular analyte were too low to make any solid inference.

PF phosphate was measured as extremely low but this was comparable to that which was found in the STGM (Figure 4.3.6). Interference did occur around the separation of phosphate peaks and this could have contributed to the lower readings although the interference was compensated by the analysis software and therefore the discrepancy between this measurement and that found by other researchers [Gao et al., 2001; Margolis and Moreno, 1994] is most likely due to the CDFF system as opposed to the analysis method. The lower levels of PF phosphate have been explained on the basis of metabolic activity of the microbes within the biofilm [Higham, 1986] and, as the biofilms within these experiments were in an highly active state (as indicated by viable counts), this may be a suitable conclusion. However, potassium and chloride were also markedly lower than what would be expected from *in vivo* plaque [Margolis and Moreno, 1994]. Sodium was relatively “normal” in this sense [Margolis and Moreno, 1994] but each was extremely similar to the STGM (Figure 4.3.5). It has also been proposed that *in vivo* plaque is not in complete equilibrium with bulk saliva due to the occurrence of a shallow slow-moving film [Dibdin et al., 1986] but, in the CDFF, the rotating mechanism forces the continued flow of STGM and so may attain equilibrium with the bulk solution more readily. Conversely, discrepancies may have resulted from the use of different extraction and quantification methods [Margolis and Moreno, 1994]. In this sense, the results presented within this chapter are the first of their kind and further work would be needed in order to compare these results to natural *in vivo* biofilms.

Given the fact that urea was not included within the STGM, an appreciable amount of ammonia was nonetheless produced by biofilms grown under both conditions. The production of ammonia can result from the metabolism of arginine *via* the arginine deaminase pathway [Wijeyeweera and Kleinberg, 1989a, b] and it has been implicated in reducing the severity of the cariogenic challenges following exposure to carbohydrate [Higham, 1986]. Furthermore, the production of ammonia within natural plaque may take over an hour to occur [Margolis and Moreno, 1994] so in a sense it was not expected within the PF samples as these were taken following a 15 min sucrose pulse and from biofilms which had previously rested for 2 h. The fact that ammonia was found under both dCDFF conditions indicates its production was not in response to exposure strategy used (Figure 6.2.2) but rather that an available nitrogen source was metabolised by members of the microcosm community on the basis of capacity alone.
6.5.0 Conclusions
Organic acid, anion and cation analysis of the PF provide a detailed view of the metabolic activity of biofilms under exposure to sucrose. Analysis on the basis of viable counts was, however, much less effective in determining the cariogenicity of the community. Nevertheless, in conjunction with analysis of the PF composition, monitoring the microbial community present complements results and the conclusions which are be drawn. Ultimately, quantification of the microbiota present enables these in vitro biofilms to be related accurately to natural in vivo plaque. Therefore, these methods should be applied in conjunction whenever possible.

In addressing the initial aim, the response of the biofilms produced within the dCDFF were extremely similar to the natural plaque biofilms. Under exposure to sucrose, an increase in low-pKa acids occurred at the expense of the extent of high-pKₐ acids. Inorganic ions also indicated a response which was consistent with demineralisation of the mineral substratum as a result of an acidic PF environment. However, as indicated by the difference in viable counts between the present work and previous endeavours (Section 5.3.1), issues with the reproducibility of microcosm plaque should be addressed. However, further sampling occasions can address this issue, particularly with the inclusion of enamel substrata for analysis of demineralisation and thus confirmation of cariogenicity. Ultimately, the cariogenicity of a biofilm is defined by its ability to produce carious demineralisation. Therefore, the current set of sample points should be reduced to make way for further samples which would enable quantification of the degree of substratum mineralisation. Nevertheless, the dCDFF model appears effective in producing orally relevant in vitro biofilms for the study of the processes which lead to dental caries.
Chapter 7: Bi-Circadian NaF vs. dH₂O Exposures, Sucrose-Induced Cariogenic Potential and Enamel Demineralisation.

7.1.0 Introduction

The use of fluoride in caries control and prevention is generally accepted as the most effective means of combating the disease currently available [Marinho, 2009; NIH, 2001; Rethman et al., 2011]. Essentially, the ability of fluorides to recede and reverse caries is due to the physical interactions within the enamel mineral [Robinson, 2009]. However, fluorides also possess some antimicrobial activity [Bibby and Van Kesteren, 1940; Bowden, 1990; Buzalaf et al., 2011; Marquis, 1995b; van Loveren, 2001] although there is debate over the antimicrobial effect at the levels which are commonly experienced within the oral cavity [Bradshaw et al., 2002; Bradshaw et al., 1990; Marsh, 2003a; van Loveren, 2001]. Fluoride is naturally present in saliva but at levels lower than those needed to sustain a cariostatic effect [Featherstone, 1999]. In reality, the main source of fluoride is typically provided through the use of dentifrice [Pessan et al., 2011; WHO, 1994] or water fluoridation [Fawell et al., 2006; Sampaio and Levy, 2011].

The antimicrobial effect of fluoride requires further investigation as within a complex microbial community where the ecological balance is a principle determiner of the biofilms collective metabolic activity, sub-lethal concentrations of antimicrobials could disturb the ecological balance [Duckworth, 2013; Marsh, 2003a; Marsh and Bradshaw, 1997] or the processes involved in community succession [Marsh, 2011] leading to drastically different community phenotypes. By inhibiting the metabolism of acidogenic bacteria [Jenkins et al., 1969], a prophylactic effect of fluoride exposure has also been suggested [Bradshaw et al., 2002] and the presence of a metabolic inhibitor such as fluoride could thus indirectly deny acidogenic species their selective advantage as the production of acids would be inhibited [Bowden, 1990].

However, during the initial phases of biofilm formation alterations to the established biofilm community could result from a related, though essentially non-ecological, process. Inhibition of energy metabolism would consequently reduce energy available for all cellular processes which require it [Marquis et al., 2003]. Previous in vitro biological models have not considered the antimicrobial effect(s) of fluoride exposures on oral biofilms in a way which reflects that which would occur during normal oral hygiene. Therefore, the previously developed dCDFF model was applied to the study of cariogenic community development and lesion formation using a generally recommended (bi-circadian) fluoride exposure strategy [Parnell and O'Mullane, 2013].
7.1.1 Aims and Objectives
The reproducibility of *in vitro* microcosm biofilms will be compared in terms of their microbial composition over the course of subsequent dCDFF experiments. This aim will be tested through multiple repetitions of the same experimental procedure using separate microcosm inocula sourced from the same human salivary pool as has been used previously. In addition to this, each individual dCDFF experiment itself aims to test the specific hypothesis that bi-circadian NaF exposures will result in a significant alteration in the biofilm community present within either dCDFF unit. The efficacy of NaF in inhibiting enamel demineralisation will also be tested as an ultimate determiner of biofilm cariogenicity although PF composition both before and after exposure to sucrose will also be measured as means of gauging the effect of NaF exposures on the collective metabolic activity of the microcosm biofilms within.
7.2.0 Materials and Methods

NaF exposures (300 ppm F⁻) were investigated in a dCDFF model (described in Section 5.2.2) in comparison to dH₂O. As in Section 5.2.1, biofilms were formed from a pooled human salivary inoculum. However, in common with Section 6.2.0, enamel was not used as a substratum for all runs. Two of the dCDFF runs were completed with HA disks (Clarkson Chromatography Products Inc., South Williamsport, PA., USA) included as a sole support for biofilm growth however a third dCDFF experiment was repeated which also included enamel disks (Modus Laboratories, University of Reading, Reading, UK) in sufficient numbers to allow for triplicated measurements of the enamel surface by TMR (Section 2.2.4). Similar to the methods outlined in Section 3.2.4, the orientation of the enamel sections gained from these experiments was important as each enamel disk consisted of an area of exposed an unexposed enamel. Prior to initial sectioning, enamel disks were marked with a small cut made in the side of the disk so that the orientation of the transverse section could be deciphered during the imaging and analysis stages of TMR.

Enamel disks were painted in an acid resistant varnish (MaxFactor Nailfinity; Procter and Gamble, Weybridge, UK) to protect half of the enamel surface during the CDFF runs. The procedure used to achieve this is illustrated in Figure 7.2.1. Further to this, grooves were also cut into some enamel disks using a precision diamond wire saw (Model 3241; Well Diamantdrahtsagen GmbH., Mannheim, Germany). As with those unaltered enamel disks, half of the surfaces with carved groove structures
were also covered in varnish, again, to provide a reference area. As shown specifically in Figure 7.2.2, two grooves were cut into each enamel disk and the disk painted so that one groove was exposed and the other was left covered by the varnish.

Figure 7.2.2 (Enamel Disk Painting Process: Fissured Surfaces): a) Bovine enamel disks; b) two grooves were cut into the enamel surface parallel to the central axis of the enamel disk; c) a 2.5 x 5 mm piece of non-residual masking-tape was cut and placed over one half of the enamel surface; d) the disk was painted in an acid-resistant varnish; e) approximately 15 min was allowed to pass so as that the varnish became tacky; f) the masking-tape “stencil” was removed leaving exactly one half of the enamel surface and one groove exposed.

In experiments where enamel was not included, all five available spaces within each PTFE pan were filled with HA disks. HA disks were used in triplicate for the enumeration of bacteria by traditional selective and non-selective culture techniques (Section 5.2.4) on days 2, 4, 6 and 8 of the dCDFF run. The excess HA disks were either used to allow for discretion in choosing those biofilms which appeared to be undisturbed for attempted extraction of PF (Section 6.2.2).

CDFF units containing HA disks were sterilised by dry heat in a Memmert UFB500 universal fan oven (Memmert GmbH., Heilbronn, Germany) for 4 h at 140°C. The depth of HA disks was set to 200 µm before sterilisation. All silicone tubings, custom-made sample instruments and liquid volumes were sterilised by autoclaving(121°C, 2200 mBar, 15 min) with the exception of the sucrose-containing volumes which was sterilised at a lower temperature and pressure (116°C and 1900 mBar). Following preparation (Figure 7.2.1 and Figure 7.2.2), enamel disks were inserted in PTFE sample pans, recessed to the chosen depth of 200 µm and sterilised by gamma irradiation for 18 h at 4,000 Gy (Gammacell 1000; Field Emission, Newbury, UK) and inserted into the CDFF units as described in Section 5.2.2.1.
Sterilisation procedures were performed exactly as is described in Sections 5.2.2.1 respectively and the design of the dCDFF apparatus was constructed similar to that described in Section 5.2.2 with the following adaptions. Figure 7.2.4 illustrates the schematic design specifically. In brief, a 50 mM sucrose solution (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) was supplied to both Unit A and Unit B at a flow rate of 0.38 mL.min\(^{-1}\) as was sterile STGM. Sucrose was pulsed in 8 times daily for 15 min every 2 h of a 16h period over a 24h cycle. Prior to the commencement of this exposure cycle (Figure 7.2.3) the inoculum was introduced to both units at a flow rate of 0.5 mL.min\(^{-1}\). Further to this sucrose pulsing strategy, a further NaF (300ppmF\(^{-}\); BDH-Merk Ltd., Poole, UK) or dH\(_2\)O exposure was fed into the corresponding unit immediately before and after the sucrose exposure period at a higher flow rate of 3 mL.min\(^{-1}\) and for a period of 2 min (Figure 7.2.4). Sucrose- and STGM-containing volumes were isolated from the CDFF vessels by the use of grow-back traps placed after the peristaltic pumps (101U/R Low Flow Peristaltic Pump; Watson Marlow, Falmouth, UK) however dH\(_2\)O, NaF and the inoculum volumes were not isolated by these means.

Apart from the combination of substratum used (enamel and HA or HA alone), one key difference between the experiments conducted lay in the supply of STGM during the sucrose whether or the STGM supply continued during the exposure to the sucrose, dH\(_2\)O or NaF solutions. In conditions where only HA was used as a substratum for biofilm growth the STGM feed was stopped at times when sucrose or NaF and dH\(_2\)O were pulsed in (FF) and in those where enamel was present, the STGM supply was continuous (CF). Differences between each of the experiments performed are outlined below in Table 7.2.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Experiment</th>
<th>HA Disks</th>
<th>Enamel Disks</th>
<th>Plaque-Fluid Extraction</th>
<th>STGM Cycle</th>
<th>TMR (Smooth Surface)</th>
<th>TMR (Fissured Surface)</th>
<th>Bacterial Enumeration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>FF</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>FF</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>CF</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.2.1 (Experimental Parameters): Key differences and similarities between each dCDFF experiment. Note all experiments aimed to investigate the effect of x2/day NaF (300 ppm F\(^{-}\)) vs. dH\(_2\)O exposures on microcosm biofilm growth under x8/day 50 mM sucrose pulses.

Enumeration of biofilm bacteria was performed on sampled at days 2, 4, 6 and 8 for as described in Section 5.2.3, immediately after the 4\(^{th}\) sucrose pulse of the given days cycle (2:00PM). The community members chosen for identification were: fastidious anaerobes (FAA media supplemented with 5% defibrinated horse blood; Section 5.2.4.1), MS on (TYCSB; Section 5.2.4.2), *Streptococcus spp.* (MSA; Section 5.2.4.3), *Lactobacillus spp.* (Rogosa agar; Section 5.2.4.4) and *Veillonella spp.* (BV agar; Section 5.2.4.5).

PF was extracted from Exp. 1 and Exp. 2 (Table 7.2.1) as described in Section 6.2.2 however the excess HA disks included in these experiments allowed for samples to be taken both before (n = 3)
and following (n = 9) the sucrose exposure on sample days 2, 4, 6 and providing both baseline and post-sucrose exposure PF sample respectively. Organic acid, anion and cation analysis was performed as described in Section 6.2.3 and the specifics of the CE analysis method can be found in Section 4.2.2.

TMR was performed on all enamel disks extracted from Exp. 3 (Table 7.2.1) on sample days 4 and 8 as described in Section 5.2.5 with the exception that prior to initial sectioning, a small groove was cut into the side of each enamel disk in order to distinguish exposed from un-exposed areas using a hand-held diamond-coated cutting disk (Skillbond Direct Ltd., High Wycombe, UK) connected to Marathon-N7 micromotor (Saeyang Microtech, Daegu, Korea). Specifics of the TMR analysis can be found in Section 2.2.4.

Figure 7.2.3 (dCDFF Pulsing Strategy for both FF and CF Cycles: NaF vs. dH\textsubscript{2}O): Both dCDFF units (A and B) were subject to a sucrose [50 mM] pulsing strategy which continued over a period of 24 h. Green bars represent the flow of STGM at a rate of 0.38 ml.min\textsuperscript{-1}. Breaks in the green bars indicate the cessation of the STGM flow. Red bars represent a 15 min exposure of 50 mM sucrose solution within the 24 h cycle period. Sucrose pulsing occurred every 2 h within 16 h of the 24 h cycle. Blue bars represent a 2 min dH\textsubscript{2}O and orange bars represent a 2 min NaF exposure; a) the first 2 experiments adopted a FF STGM cycle; b) the third experiment used a CF STGM supply.
Figure 7.2.4 (dCFFF Schematic Set-Up) a: Sterile STGM; b: Sterile 50 mM Sucrose Solution; c: Peristaltic Pump 3.0 mL.min⁻¹; d: Peristaltic Pump 0.38 mL.min⁻¹; e: Peristaltic Pump 0.38 mL.min⁻¹; f: Sterile dH₂O; g: Sterile NaF Solution (300 ppm F⁻); h: Grow-Back Trap; i: Peristaltic Pump 0.5 mL.min⁻¹; j: Y-Connector; k: Inoculum Flask with Magnetic Stirrer; l: CDFF Unit A; m: CDFF Unit B; n: Effluent; *: 0.3µm Air Filter. Note that pumps "d" were active 8 times every 2 h for 15 min over a 16 h period of a 24 h cycle.
7.3.0 Results

7.3.1 Enumeration of Biofilm Bacteria

Viable counts for FA, *Lactobacillus spp.*, *Streptococcus spp.* and MS were collected for Exp. 1, Exp. 2 and Exp. 3 and the further group of *Veillonella spp.* were collected for Exp. 3. Comparing each experiment together though adjusted multiple comparisons (Tukey’s HSD) revealed many statistically significant differences between sample points. The vast majority of these differences lay in comparisons between the FA group with *Lactobacillus spp.* and *Streptococcus spp.* occupying and intermediate position above that of MS. Further to this, the difference between groups at like sample day and from identical dCDFF conditions did not show any consistent relationships. For example, when comparing the results for FA viable counts in Exp. 1 to those of Exp. 2 (which shared like STGM flow cycles) both relative increase and decrease were determined. Results are therefore presented separately and compared on the basis of growth trends and maturation stages between dCDFF conditions as opposed to aggregation of the data set as whole.

Viable counts obtained for FA are presented in comparison by dCDFF condition for Exp. 1 (Figure 7.3.2a), Exp. 2 (Figure 7.3.2b) and Exp. 3 (Figure 7.3.2c). Immediately visible is the clear separation of viable counts taken from biofilms which grew under the FF STGM supply (Exp. 1 and Exp. 2) and the complete lack of separation in those which were produced under the CF cycle (Exp. 3).
However, even within those which initially exhibited similar trends on the basis of growth curve separation, completely opposing trends were found. In Exp. 1, counts taken biofilms which were grown under exposure to NaF were consistently higher (P ≤ 0.006) whereas in Exp. 2, biofilm grown under exposure to NaF were consistently lower (P ≤ .0008). The growth trends seen each of these instances were also markedly different. In Exp. 1, no change in viable counts could be determined across any of the sample days in the dH\textsubscript{2}O condition (P = 0.066) however in the NaF conditions significant difference were found (P = 0.005). Multiple comparisons between sample days determined no change between day 2 and 4 (P = 0.999) followed by a gradual increase towards maturity. No significant differences were not found between day 4 and 6 (P = 0.476) or 6 and 8 (P = 0.053) but between days 4 and 8 a significant difference was (P = 0.007). Thus, as supported by visual inspection of the growth trends in Figure 7.3.2, a gradual increase in viable counts occurred within biofilm which were produced under exposure to NaF.

![Figure 7.3.1b](image.png)

Figure 7.3.1b (Fastidious Anaerobes in Exp. 2; FA): Biofilms were exposed to 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy with either dH\textsubscript{2}O or NaF rinses. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 3). A single asterisk (*) indicates significantly different results (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions and a double asterisk indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001).

In Exp. 2 the (Figure 7.3.1b), FA viable counts initially showed some significant difference across sample days in both the NaF (P < 0.001) and dH\textsubscript{2}O (P = 0.049) conditions. However adjusted mutiple comparisions were unable to determine difference between counts made within the dH\textsubscript{2}O condition between any combination of the sample days (P ≥ 0.68). Nevertheless, Figure 7.3.1b appears to show a trend in which the approach to and establishment of a steady state was achieved. In the NaF condition a much more erratic growth trend was observed. The only significant difference was an
increase between days 4 and 6 (P = 0.06) which was preceded by a relative stationary period (P = 0.108) and followed by what may be described as the same (P = 0.997). However, as noted the variability observed may make estimation of the biofilms developmental stages problematic. In opposition to this, the most concurrent growth curves for FA were found in Exp. 3 (Figure 7.3.1c).

In both the NaF and dH\textsubscript{2}O conditions a sharp increase in FA counts was observed between day 2 and 4 (P < 0.001). In the dH\textsubscript{2}O condition, this quickly progressed to brief period of time (between days 4 and 6) where no change in viable counts was detected (P = 0.540). In the NaF exposure condition the decrease in viable counts was found to be statistically significant (P = 0.015) between days 4 and 6. However, following on from this, between day 6 and 8 viable counts did not decrease significantly further in the NaF condition (P = 0.254) nor in those biofilms which were produced under the dH\textsubscript{2}O exposure condition. In considering the growth trends over a wider period, between days 4 and 8 both conditions showed a significant decrease in viable counts with respect to FA (P ≤ 0.015) therefore indicating a more gradual transition to an altered state.

![Figure 7.3.1c](Fastidious Anaerobes in Exp. 3; FA): Biofilms were exposed to 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy with either dH\textsubscript{2}O or NaF rinses. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 3). And an asterisk (*) indicates a significantly different result (P < 0.050) between sCDFF conditions.

Viable counts for *Lactobacillus* spp. for Exp. 1, Exp. 2 and Exp. 3 are presented in Figure 7.3.2a, Figure 7.3.2b and Figure 7.3.2c respectively. In viewing these data, distinct growth trends can be seen in Exp. 2 and Exp. 3 which differ from that seen in Exp. 1. Although complete separation of growth the growth trends could be confirmed (P ≤ 0.049), in the dH\textsubscript{2}O condition of Exp. 1 viable
counts increased linearly between days 2 and 8; at each step significant increases were found (P < 0.001). However, in the NaF condition of this same experiment, no difference between sample days viable counts made on any of the 4 sample days could be detected (P = 0.051). Over the course of the experiment, this lead to an enrichment of \textit{Lactobacillus spp.} in the NaF-free condition of 4 Log_{10} units where the absolute number of viable \textit{Lactobacillus spp.} in the dH\textsubscript{2}O condition surpassed that within the NaF condition between the 4\textsuperscript{th} and 6\textsuperscript{th} sample days.

![Figure 7.3.2a (Lactobacillus spp. in Exp. 1): Biofilms were exposed to 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy with either dH\textsubscript{2}O or NaF rinses. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 3). A single asterisk (*) indicates significantly different results (P < 0.050) between dCFFF conditions and a double asterisk indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001).](image)

The results obtained for Exp. 2 and Exp. 3 demonstrated a much more similar relationship in that mean viable counts were consistently higher in the biofilms which were not exposed to NaF. With the exception of results obtained on sample day 4 during Exp. 2, this observation was confirmed as statistically significant throughout (P ≤ 0.035). Further to this, the shape of the growth trends were also similar to each other (and to that of Exp. 1) for the dH\textsubscript{2}O exposed conditions. In these instances the increase in viable counts of \textit{Lactobacillus spp.} was again progressively significant between each sample day (P ≤ 0.010). However, data from Exp. 3 indicated by the reduction in the gradient of the growth curve (Figure 7.3.2c) therefore indicating that within these biofilms, the increase of viable \textit{Lactobacillus spp.} was captured at a less active point. Viable counts from the dH\textsubscript{2}O condition in Exp. 2 also produced a slightly sigmoidal curve therefore serving as an indication of either a delay in reaching full maturity or the influence of some other factor(s) which caused disruption to the ecological balance of the community.
Figure 7.3.2b (Lactobacillus spp. in Exp. 2): Biofilms were exposed to 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy with either dH₂O or NaF rinses. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 3). A single asterisk (*) indicates significantly different results (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions and a double asterisk indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001).

Figure 7.3.2c (Lactobacillus spp. in Exp. 3): Biofilms were exposed to 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy with either dH₂O or NaF rinses. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 3). A single asterisk (*) indicates significantly different results (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions and a double asterisk indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001).
A similar peculiarity is alluded to when considering the growth curves of biofilms which were produced under exposure to NaF. A kink in the growth curve for *Lactobacillus* spp. occurred in the NaF condition of Exp. 2 (Figure 7.3.2b) which is the inverse of that observed when FA were enumerated in the very same biofilm (Figure 7.3.1b). Furthermore, the growth curve exhibited in the NaF condition of Exp. 2 could be defined as statistically as significant increases were determined between days 2 and 4 \( (P < 0.001) \) and 6 and 8 \( (P < 0.001) \) but not between days 4 and 6 \( (P = 0.148) \). Furthermore, a gradual increase can also be seen for viable counts from the NaF condition in Exp. 3 (Figure 7.3.2c); albeit in a much smoother growth process than was observed in Exp. 2 (Figure 7.3.2b). In this case an extended delay in proliferation was observed \( (P \geq 0.475) \) until the 6th day wherefrom an increase had begun \( (P = 0.003) \). The magnitude of the rate of increase in viable counts appeared to lessen around \( 7 \log_{10} \text{CFU:mm}^{-2} \) under exposure to \( \text{dH}_2\text{O} \) (illustrated best in Exp. 3).

FIGURE 7.3.3a (*Streptococcus* spp. in Exp. 1): Biofilms were exposed to 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy with either \( \text{dH}_2\text{O} \) or NaF rinses. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set \( (n = 3) \). A single asterisk (*) indicates significantly different results \( (P < 0.050) \) between dCDFF conditions and a double asterisk indicates a highly significant difference \( (P < 0.001) \).

*Streptococcus* spp. exhibited somewhat erratic growth trends in Exp. 1 (Figure 7.3.3a) and Exp. 3 (Figure 7.3.3c). However in biofilms extracted from Exp. 2 the growth trends followed a more logical relationship. Furthermore, *Streptococcus* spp. within these biofilms displayed strikingly similar patterns in both the NaF and dH\(_2\)O conditions (Figure 7.3.3b). In Exp. 1, no significant difference was found between dCDFF conditions on sample day 2 \( (P = 0.948) \) however from day 4 onwards counts were consistently different \( (P \leq 0.041) \). As is illustrated in Figure 7.3.3a viable counts taken from the dH\(_2\)O condition remained low and although a gradual decrease is evident, no significant difference
were found between any of the sample point within this condition (P = 0.665). In the NaF condition of this same experiment a very different trend was observed in viable counts. In this instance a consistently significant increase occurred between each of the sample days up to unit day 6 (P ≤ 0.036) where a sudden decrease occurred (P = 0.002).

In both Exp. 2 and Exp. 3 viable *Streptococcus* spp. counts were closely related between dCDFF conditions. As illustrated in significant difference were found between viable counts taken on sample days 2 (P < 0.001) and 6 (P = 0.023) in Exp. 2 and on sample day 8 in Exp. 3 (P = 0.049). However, regardless of these statistical differences growth curves clearly show a great deal of similarity. In Exp. 2, an increase in counts was found between 2nd and 4th within samples extracted from the NaF condition (P = 0.023). The levels of viable community members then continued to a relatively steady-state between days 4 and 6 (P = 0.167) however following this a significant increase occurred between days 6th and 8th sample days (P < 0.001). In the dH2O condition a more increase in viable counts was observed in the earlier stages of the experiment; this only reaching significance between sample days 2 and 6 (P = 0.016). However, in close concordance with the NaF condition, a significant increase was achieved between days 6 and 8 (P < 0.001). On the whole, biofilms which were exposed to NaF were composed of comparatively less *Streptococcus* spp. than those which were not however the differences between each were of a relatively small magnitude.

![Figure 7.3.3b (Streptococcus spp. in Exp. 2): Biofilms were exposed to 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy with either dH2O or NaF rinses. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 3). A single asterisk (*) indicates significantly different results (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions and a double asterisk indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001).](image-url)
The most unusual results in the Streptococcus spp. growth curves obtained from Exp. 3 where viable counts decreased significantly (P ≤ 0.023) in biofilms extracted from both dCDFF condition on day 6. Furthermore, this decrease was followed by an increase between days 6 and 8 (P ≤ 0.023). In the dH₂O condition the increase in counts between day 2 and 4 was not significant (P = 0.253) but in the NaF condition the increase was (P = 0.007). However, large deviations in the results obtained on day 4 in the dH₂O condition may have reduced the statistical power of the tests which were used to make these comparisons. In all, what is indicated from the trends in Figure 7.3.3c are what appeared to be 2 successive phases which were reached similar states on days 4 and 8 (P ≥ 0.898). These phases were separated by what was suggestive of a period of dispersal although from viable counts alone a definite conclusion cannot be made for this.

MS formed a subgroup of the Streptococcus spp. and therefore, as expected, viable counts for MS were consistently lower than those of obtained for Streptococcus spp. However, the relative proportions of MS to that of the total group changed considerably over the course of the experiment, in part illustrated by the variability in Streptococcus spp. counts described above in Exp. 1 (Figure 7.3.4a) and Exp. 3 (Figure 7.3.4c), viable counts for MS were greatest in the NaF conditions however in Exp. 2 the MS proliferated best within the community in the absence of NaF. Further to this Exp. 1 and Exp. 3 showed greater similarities in the general growth trends which were seen than that which occurred in Exp. 2.

Figure 7.3.3c (Streptococcus spp. in Exp. 3): Biofilms were exposed to 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy with either dH₂O or NaF rinses. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 3) and an asterisk (*) indicates significantly different results (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions.
Both of Exp. 1 and 3 demonstrated an initially dissimilar biofilm composition ($P \leq 0.017$) which then reached a state which was statistically indistinguishable between dCFFE conditions on day 4 ($P \geq 0.001$).
0.859). Following this point the increase in viable counts continued further in the NaF conditions (significant increases were found between day 2 and 6; $P \leq 0.001$) whereas a clear reduction in the proportion of viable MS was observed between day 4 and 6 in both of these particular dH$_2$O conditions ($P \leq 0.001$). In the NaF conditions, the initial increase had ceased by the 6th day and viable counts entered a decline in both Exp. 1 and Exp. 3. However, although this change was numerically evident it was not determined as significant ($P \geq 0.149$). Likewise, following the reduction noted in dH$_2$O conditions viable counts remained relatively ($P \geq 0.943$) stable between the 6th and 8th days of these experiments (Exp. 1 and Exp. 3).

![Figure 7.3.4c](Mutans streptococci in Exp. 3; MS) Biofilms were exposed to 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy with either dH$_2$O or NaF rinses. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set ($n = 3$). A single asterisk (*) indicates significantly different results ($P < 0.050$) between dCDFF conditions and a double asterisk indicates a highly significant difference ($P < 0.001$).

In Exp. 2 (Figure 7.3.4b) a distinct pattern was seen with respect to viable counts made from the biofilms produced in the NaF condition. However those extracted from the dH$_2$O condition followed a trend which was similar in both shape and magnitude to the biofilms which were extracted from the NaF conditions in Exp. 1 (Figure 7.3.4a) and Exp. 3 (Figure 7.3.4c). In the dH$_2$O conditions an increase occurred between day 4 and 6 ($P < 0.001$) following which viable counts remained stable ($P = 0.668$). Biofilms in the NaF conditions also showed a progressive increase in the numbers of viable MS ($P \leq 0.008$) up to a point which was equal to that of the dH$_2$O condition ($P = 0.153$) on the final day of the experiment.
Viable counts of *Veillonella spp.* sampled from Exp. 3 (Figure 7.3.5) reached their highest point on the 4th day of the experiment when under exposure to NaF. This was quickly followed by a reduction (P = 0.007) somewhere between days 4 and 6 following which a slight increase was again seen by day 8 (however this did not reach significance; P = 0.311). In biofilms produced under exposure to dH2O, viable *Veillonella spp.* within the community increased progressively between days 2 and 4 (P < 0.001) and days 4 and 6 (P = 0.007). From day 6 onwards counts remained stable (P = 0.900). Between dCFF conditions, the oscillation in the trend encountered for viable *Veillonella spp.* in the NaF conditions meant that viable counts were sometimes lower and sometimes higher than those obtained from the dH2O condition. However by the end of this experiment biofilms extracted from both conditions had reached point which was indistinguishable between units (P = 0.542).
7.3.2 Organic Acid and Anion Analysis

Data for pre- and post-sucrose exposures was obtained from Exp.2. PF extracted on day 2 from both the NaF and dH2O exposure conditions were analysed along with samples taken from the NaF condition on day 4. As with previous experiments (such as those described in Section 6.3.3), nitrate was not detected in any of the PF samples and this was true both before and after sucrose exposures (MDL = 62.48 µM). Interestingly, both formate and fluoride were not detected in any of the earlier sampling occasions (those on taken on day 2) but both were detected in the on the 4th day in sample taken from the NaF condition immediately following a sucrose exposure. In this instance, fluoride was detected at 0.465 mM ± 0.698SD (8.845 ppm F) and formate was measured as 0.141 mM ± 0.172SD (Figure 7.3.10f).

Comparing the shift in PF composition following sucrose exposures, acetate (Figure 7.3.8) was consistently lower (P < 0.001) in both dCDDF conditions and within the dH2O condition acetate was consistently higher at baseline and following sucrose exposure (P ≤ 0.002) than in the NaF condition. Between dCDDF conditions, in samples extracted on day 2 acetate was higher in the dH2O conditions than in those which had undergone exposure to NaF; this was true both before (P < 0.001) and after (P < 0.001) exposure to the 50 mM sucrose solution.

![Figure 7.3.8 (Acetate PF Concentrations): Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD. For pre-sucrose measurements n = 3 and for post-sucrose measurement n = 9 (unless otherwise indicated) and an asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P = 0.050) between pre- and post-sucrose exposures. Solid bars represent PF samples from the NaF condition and cross-hatched bars represent those extracted from the dH2O condition.](image-url)
Lactate was again the predominate acid produced following exposure to sucrose solution (Figure 7.3.10b, Figure 7.3.10d and Figure 7.3.10f). Direct comparisons of the measured lactate concentrations are presented below in Figure 7.3.9. Immediately apparent is that in samples extracted from both the NaF and dH₂O dCDF conditions, PF lactate concentrations were much higher than at baseline; in fact on sample day 2, lactate was BMDL (62.48 µM) and thus unquantifiable. As quantitative data was not available on for these points, the confirmation of their absence was used in place and, in assuming the baseline concentrations to be effectively 0.00 mM ± 0.00 SD, a definite increase over the baseline measurement was determined for all conditions where data was available (P ≤ 0.001). Post-sucrose lactate concentrations were also found to increase significantly (P = 0.017) between day 2 and 4 in PF samples extracted from the NaF dCDF condition.

![Figure 7.3.9 (Lactate PF Concentrations)](image)

Figure 7.3.9 (Lactate PF Concentrations): Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD. For pre-sucrose measurements n = 3 and for post-sucrose measurement n = 9 (unless otherwise indicated) and an asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P = 0.050) between pre- and post-sucrose exposures. Solid bars represent PF samples from the NaF condition and cross-hatched bars represent those extracted from the dH₂O condition.

Succinate was not detected in the measurements taken from the NaF condition on day 2 although small amounts (approx. 100 µM) were detected in the dH₂O condition. In this case, succinate did increase slightly over baseline however the difference was not significant (P = 0.052). By the 4th day, succinate was detected in the post-sucrose exposure measurements of the NaF condition (240.70 µM ± 118.55 SD) but was BMDL (31.24 µM) at baseline (P = 0.007).
Figure 7.3.10a (Plaque Fluid Composition at Baseline on Day 2: NaF Condition): All detectable anions are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition immediately before a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate, fluoride, formate, succinate and lactate were BMDL.

Day 2 (NaF; Baseline)

Figure 7.3.10b (Plaque Fluid Composition at Following a Sucrose Pulse on Day 2; NaF Condition): All detectable anions are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 min after a 15 min 50 mM sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate, formate, fluoride and succinate were BMDL.

Day 2 (NaF; Sucrose)
Figure 7.3.10c (Plaque Fluid Composition at Baseline on Day 2; dH₂O Condition): All detectable anions are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition immediately before a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate, formate, fluoride and lactate were BMDL.

Day 2 (dH₂O; Baseline)

![Pie chart showing anions at baseline](image)

Figure 7.3.10d (Plaque Fluid Composition at Following a Sucrose Pulse on Day 2; dH₂O Condition): All detectable anions are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 min after a 15 minute 50 mM sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate, formate and fluoride were BMDL.

Day 2 (dH₂O; Sucrose)

![Pie chart showing anions after sucrose](image)
Bi-Circadian NaF vs. dH₂O Exposures, Sucrose-Induced Cariogenic Potential and Enamel Demineralisation | Ch. 7

**Day 4 (NaF; Baseline)**

Figure 7.3.10e (Plaque Fluid Composition at Baseline on Day 4; NaF Condition): All detectable anions are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition immediately before a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate, formate, fluoride and succinate were BMDL.

**Day 4 (NaF; Sucrose)**

Figure 7.3.10f (Plaque Fluid Composition at Following a Sucrose Pulse on Day 4; NaF Condition): All detectable anions are shown in their relative contributions to the plaque fluid composition 7 min after a 15 min 50 mM sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate was BMDL.
Both propionate (Figure 7.3.11) and sulphate (Figure 7.3.12) were lower following sucrose exposures and this occurred in both NaF and dH₂O conditions (P ≥ 0.002) however, on day 4 the difference in the NaF condition was not significant (P ≥ 0.350). Between days 2 and 4 no significant difference was found in the propionate concentrations at baseline (P = 0.250) however PF samples which were extracted following sucrose exposures showed a significant increase (P = 0.047) between these 2 sample days; therefore reducing the difference between pre- and post-sucrose exposures to the point of no difference on the 4th day. Between conditions (i.e. comparison of samples taken on day 2 only), baseline no difference was found between baseline measurements (P = 0.116) but concentrations were significantly higher in the dH₂O condition (P = 0.005) following exposure to the sucrose solution. Although a similar trends was found for sulphate with respect to difference at baseline and following exposure to sucrose (Figure 7.3.12), some comparisons between sample days and dCDFF conditions exhibited results which were distinct from that of propionate. For example, sulphate higher on day 4 than on day 2 for both post-sucrose exposure (P = 0.001) and baseline (P < 0.001) measurements. Further to this, sulphate in the dH₂O condition was markedly higher at baseline (P < 0.001) and slightly (although significantly) higher in post-sucrose exposure PF measurements (P = 0.001).

Figure 7.3.11 (Propionate PF Concentrations): Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD. For pre-sucrose measurements n = 3 and for post-sucrose measurement n = 9 (unless otherwise indicated), an asterisk (*) indicates a significant difference (P = 0.050) between pre- and post-sucrose exposures and a double asterisk (**) indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001). Solid bars represent PF samples from the NaF condition and cross-hatched bars represent those extracted from the dH₂O condition.
Figure 7.3.12 (Sulphate PF Concentrations): Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD. For pre-sucrose measurements \( n = 3 \) and for post-sucrose measurement \( n = 9 \) (unless otherwise indicated) and a double asterisk (**) indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) between pre- and post-sucrose exposures. Solid bars represent PF samples from the NaF condition and cross-hatched bars represent those extracted from the dH\(_2\)O condition.

No difference in butyrate was found between pre- and post-sucrose exposures on day 2 in the NaF condition (P = 0.764) but significantly lower concentrations were found post-sucrose exposure in the dH\(_2\)O condition (P < 0.005). However, by the 4\(^{th}\) day a significant decrease (P < 0.001) was detected post-sucrose exposure in the NaF condition and this was due to a drastic increase (P < 0.001) in the baseline concentration (Figure 7.3.10e) from that which was found on day 2 within the same dCDFF condition (Figure 7.3.10a). Further to this point, the amount of butyrate detected following sucrose exposures also increased between days 2 and 4 (P = 0.002). However, of the traces obtained, disambiguation of peaks around the migration time of butyrate was difficult due to an ambiguity of the traces at this point (as noted for previous PF separations in Section 6.3.3). Correspondingly, phosphate peaks were confounded by this same difficulty only to much lesser degree.

Integration of the phosphate peaks was performed using the peak disambiguation functions within the 32 Karat software with automatic baseline assignment (Figure 7.3.13). From these data an interesting relationship between NaF exposure and post-sucrose phosphate concentrations was found. Not only were concentrations significantly lower following sucrose exposures in the NaF conditions (P < 0.001) but this reduction was due to a large decrease (approx. 5.0 mM) from the baseline measuring which did not occur in the samples extracted from the dH\(_2\)O condition (P = 0.660). However at baseline, phosphate concentrations were relatively similar between both the
NaF and dH₂O conditions (although significantly higher in the dH₂O condition on sample day 2; P < 0.001). In all cases these baseline phosphate concentrations were much higher than that which was found in the STGM (Figure 4.3.6). Therefore, an accumulation of phosphate was detected in all PF samples which were available and a preferential reduction was observed in those which were subjected to NaF exposures following a cariogenic challenge.

![Figure 7.3.13 (Phosphate PF Concentrations): Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD. For pre-sucrose measurements n = 3 and for post-sucrose measurement n = 9 (unless otherwise indicated) and a double asterisk (**) indicates a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) between pre- and post-sucrose exposures. Solid bars represent PF samples from the NaF condition and cross-hatched bars represent those extracted from the dH₂O condition.

As with the majority of analytes mentions thus far, PF chloride content also decreased significantly following sucrose exposure on the 2nd sample day in both dCDFF conditions (P ≤ 0.001). However, by the 4th sample day the proportion which was retained following the sucrose exposure had increased to a point where no significant difference could be found within the NaF condition (P = 0.359). Between conditions, chloride was relatively higher (P ≤ 0.001) both at baseline (Figure 7.3.10a and Figure 7.310c) than in post-sucrose exposures (Figure 7.3.9b and Figure 7.3.9d). Over time, the mean chloride content of PF samples from the NaF conditions increased almost double in baseline measurements (P < 0.001) and over 5 times following exposure to sucrose (P = 0.002).

Unfortunately, the minor CE system failures which lead to the lack of full data sets for the anions within Exp. 2 became more frequent during subsequent cation separations. As a result of this and further technical complications, a relative index could not be determined and therefore the traces acquired were abandoned.
7.3.3 TMR of dCdff Exposed Enamel Disks
Out of the 12 enamel disks included in each dCdff unit (NaF and dH₂O exposure conditions of Exp. 3 only), between 2 and 4 thin sections were retained from each of the 6 enamel disks (3 with carved fissures and 3 with completely smooth enamel surfaces). Measurement made from each of the exposed surfaces were then aggregated by the individual enamel disk from which they came and parameters of ΔZ, LD, R and S_{Max} are presented below in Table 7.3.8 in comparison by condition and the day on which they were extracted from the dCdff system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Sample Day</th>
<th>n (Enamel Disks)</th>
<th>ΔZ ± SD</th>
<th>LD ± SD</th>
<th>R ± SD</th>
<th>S_{Max} ± SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NaF</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>345.04 ± 78.82</td>
<td>14.13 ± 4.02</td>
<td>25.74 ± 2.21</td>
<td>79.03 ± 1.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dH₂O</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>308.88 ± 70.52</td>
<td>13.47 ± 3.08</td>
<td>22.92 ± 1.80</td>
<td>74.58 ± 4.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaF</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>195.83 ± 44.44</td>
<td>8.52 ± 0.95</td>
<td>23.08 ± 3.70</td>
<td>79.55 ± 2.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dH₂O</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>740.49 ± 190.47</td>
<td>30.24 ± 4.84</td>
<td>24.27 ± 3.21</td>
<td>58.57 ± 7.42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.3.2 (TMR Parameters; Exp. 3): Integrated mineral loss (ΔZ; %Vol,µm), lesion depth (LD; µm), average mineral loss (R; %Vol) and the degree of SL mineralisation (S_{Max}; %Vol) for Exp. 3 (Table 7.2.1) listed along with the number of enamel disks which were analysed. SD refers to the SD of the sample set.

Means scan profiles of smooth surfaces were also generated from the entire data sets and were separated on the basis of dCdff condition and the day on which the samples were extracted. For enamel sections extracted from the NaF condition profiles are illustrated in Figure 7.3.14a and for the dH₂O condition the same view is given in Figure 7.3.14b. From these profiles clear differences are immediately apparent between samples which were exposed to the 2 dCdff conditions. In samples extracted from the NaF condition there was a small degree of surface softening however the magnitude of this was on very small scale. Over the course of the experiment, the degree of mineral loss which could be interpreted from the scan profiles alone did not look to increase. The fact that dCdff conditions were kept constant would further indicate that the mineral loss observed in sample extracted on the 4th day may have been due to the error associate with the sampling process. In comparison to the dH₂O condition, a mean scan profile indicative of surface-softening could be interpreted for samples extracted on sample day 4 however by day a distinct caries lesion profile had clearly begun to develop (Figure 7.3.14b) albeit with a generally ill-defined SL. The surface softening indicated in lesions extracted on the 4th day of the NaF-free condition was also notably higher than that indicated on both days in condition which did include NaF.

For these same groups, the calculated parameters in Table 7.3.2 are illustrated in Figure 7.3.15a and Figure 7.3.15b for the NaF and dH₂O dCdff conditions respectively. Although averages were constructed differently (i.e. based on the number of enamel disks for TMR parameters) a reflection in the magnitude of results is clearly evident between mean scan profiles and the parameters illustrated.
Figure 7.3.14a (TMR Scan Profiles for Lesions Created under Exposure to NaF): Mean scan profiles taken from the 300 ppm F⁻ (from NaF) exposure condition. Mineral volume (%Vol) is expressed relative to sound enamel normalised within each individual measurement. Error bars represent the SD at each depth increment. Individual mineral volume measurements are made at depth increments of 5 µm from the enamel surface (20%Vol). For the both conditions n = 44.

Figure 7.3.14b (TMR Scan Profiles for Lesions Created under Exposure to dH₂O): Mean scan profiles taken from the dH₂O exposure condition. Mineral volume (%Vol) is expressed relative to sound enamel normalised within each individual measurement. Error bars represent the SD at each depth increment. Individual mineral volume measurements are made at depth increments of 5 µm from the enamel surface (20%Vol). For the “dH₂O / Day 4” condition n = 45 and for the “dH₂O / Day 8” condition n = 34.
Between samples days 4 and 8 a significant decrease ($P = 0.002$) was found when comparing $\Delta Z$ in the NaF group (Figure 7.3.15a) however, in the dH$_2$O group, a significantly greater $\Delta Z$ value ($P < 0.001$) was found in sampled extracted on the 8th day when compared to those extracted on the 4th (Figure 7.3.15b). The same trend was found for LD, a significant reduction in the NaF condition between samples extracted on the 8th day when compared to those extracted on the 4th ($P = 0.008$) whereas the opposite was true for the dH$_2$O condition ($P < 0.001$). Numerically, these opposing trends held true for R also however the difference between samples extracted on either day did not reach significance ($P \geq 0.162$). SL measurements were slightly different, between day 4 and 8 $S_{\text{Max}}$ in the NaF condition did not change ($P = 0.647$) but in the dH$_2$O condition this decreased significantly ($P = 0.001$).

Between dCDFF conditions, both $\Delta Z$ and LD were not significantly different in samples extracted on day 4 ($P \geq 0.422$). However (as expected from their respective mean scan profiles) both of these parameters were significantly higher in the enamel tissues which were exposed to the dH$_2$O condition after 8 days under the sucrose pulsing strategy ($P < 0.001$). Contrary to this, R was significantly higher in samples extracted from the NaF condition on the 4th day ($P = 0.036$) but the average decrease in the R values generated from the NaF condition coupled with the slight increase in the dH$_2$O condition between day 4 and 8 lead to a lack of significance ($P = 0.564$) so as that by the 8th day of the experiment, the lesions produced in both conditions were no different with respect to their mean R values.

$S_{\text{Max}}$ was consistently higher in the NaF conditions on both sample days ($P \leq 0.045$). However, in relating results back to the individual mean scan profiles in Figure 7.3.14a and Figure 7.3.14b, the beginnings of a true SL only became visible in samples extracted after 8 days exposure within the dH$_2$O exposure condition (Figure 7.3.14b). In these instances the SL was either assigned manually from an indicative zone of apparent SL mineralisation or detected automatically by the TMR 2006 program. Either of these methods may have resulted in a bias or systematic error respectively.

Enamel groves structures exhibited a propensity to fracture as has been observed previously [Lagerweij et al., 1996] and further to this, processing of the samples was able to remove the majority of the residual nail varnish but statistical analysis of a representivity sample set was not possible. However, interesting observations were made from the data which was collected.
Figure 7.3.15a (TMR Parameters for Lesions Created under Exposure to NaF): LD (µm), R (%Vol) and SMax (%Vol) share the left axis. ΔZ (%Vol.µm) measurements are plotted on the right for the purposes of clarity. Results correspond to data in Table 7.3.2 and error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 6). An asterisk indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) between TMR parameters.

Figure 7.3.15b (TMR Parameters for Lesions Created under Exposure to dH2O): LD (µm), R (%Vol) and SMax (%Vol) share the left axis. ΔZ (%Vol.µm) measurements are plotted on the right for the purposes of clarity. Results correspond to data in Table 7.3.2 and error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 6). An asterisk indicates a significant difference (P < 0.050) between TMR parameters.
Due to difference in the ELT, the groove had penetrated into the dentine layer of the tissue. In these instances, areas of apparent demineralisation had occurred on the dentine layer. Due to the fact that dentine specimens require specific condition for their preparation which were not provide by the current protocol [Ruben and Arends, 1993], quantification by the methods described in Section 2.2.4 was not an appropriate means of assessment. Nevertheless, some indication was seen in that NaF exposures did not protect the dentine tissue within the deeper areas of the grooves (Figure 7.3.16a), this only became visually apparent by the 8th day of the experiment. Sections from the dH₂O condition indicated dentine demineralisation on both sample days. In addition to this, analysis of the images was sue to confirmed that surface loss did not occur to any meaningful extent within these experiments (Figure 7.3.16b)

Figure 7.3.16 (Example Radiographic Images): a) Samples were extracted from lesions which were exposed to the NaF condition of Exp. 3 for 8 days. Areas indicative of dentine demineralisation are evident in the exposed areas of the tissue; b) no areas of surface loss were apparent in any of the lesions which were produced. Orange arrows indicate the point at un-exposed area met with that which was exposed to the conditions within the respective dCFFF unit.
7.4.0 Discussion
Between concurrent dCDFF runs, variation was seen in the microbial composition as the same patterns of biofilm growth were not found consistently. A possible reason for this could be due to difference in the primary inoculum (and hence the physiological state of the primary culture within the inoculum flask). The production of a steady-state biofilm has previously been accomplished with inoculation by means of a chemostat [Kinniment et al., 1996]; this step helped to ensure that the primary culture had reached a more definable starting point. The addition of this prior stage to the inoculation of the dCDFF may help to improve this aspect of the present work however, the dCDFF design [Hope et al., 2012] cannot protect from this inherent source of variation [Sissons, 1997; Tatevossian, 1988]. Consequently, a lack of complete consistency can make assessment towards definite conclusions difficult. Nevertheless, extensive measures were taken to control for external contamination [Pratten, 2005] and therefore what can be assured with certainty is that each of these biofilms would represent the capacity of the microcosm inoculum [Wimpenny, 1988].

7.4.1 Microbial Composition of Plaque Biofilms
The suppression of enrichment under frequent exposures to 300 ppm NaF was not consistent between each of the 3 concurrent dCDFF runs. However, different combinations of initial community members may afford an adaptive or synergistic capacity which facilitates a much greater resistance to antimicrobials [Burmolle et al., 2006; Gilbert et al., 2002] and the effect of fluoride may be no exception. With the use of a microcosm inoculum, various fractions are introduced to the primary culture. These may consist of members which have previously adapted to survival under acidic conditions or to exposure to fluoride. Acid resistance mechanisms are common among oral bacteria [Marquis, 1995a] as is the capacity to survive exposure to fluoride [Bowden, 1990; Marquis et al., 2003]. In Exp. 1, results for the enumeration of FA (Figure 7.3.1a) indicated that the community within the biofilm was in a generally more proliferative state when under exposure to NaF than when exposed to dH2O. However this group alone does not provide the information necessary to comment on the microbial ecology within all biofilms. In this same experiment, viable counts of Lactobacillus spp. rose to an extremely high proportion (Figure 7.3.2a). This genus has previously been shown to exhibit a resistance to fluorides [Green and Dodd, 1957] which has led to their exclusion from studies on defined multispecies communities due to an expected propensity to confound results [Bradshaw et al., 2002]. However, under exposure to dH2O, Lactobacillus spp. also performed well within this experiment. Therefore it may be that the strains which were able to compete to a point of dominance within these biofilms possessed an ecological advantaged under both conditions. One possible route for this may have been related to their aciduricity as both acid tolerance and fluoride resistance function on a remarkably similar basis [Bowden, 1990].
Acid tolerance may need to occur within a single generation of a bacterial population [Marquis, 1995a] and in this case residence can be afforded by an up-regulation or increased activity of proton translocating membrane-bound ATPases [Hamilton and Buckley, 1991; Marquis, 1995a] therefore compensating for the dissipation of ΔpH across the cell membrane [Kashket and Kashket, 1985]. Likewise, acidification of the cytoplasm is also one of the principle avenues by which fluorides exert their antimicrobial effects [Buzalaf et al., 2011]. Fluoride inhibits ATPases [Sutton et al., 1987] and therefore can increase the susceptibility of bacteria to acidic environments though direct cytoplasmic acidification and indirecção inhibition of innate protective mechanisms. The reverse of this would also be true in that a community of *Lactobacillus* spp. which possesses a more abundant or efficient array of ATPase enzymes would perform better under acidic and fluoridated environments than species which are less capable of maintaining a cell membrane ΔpH [Kashket and Kashket, 1985]. Therefore, some explanation of the high rate of proliferation of *Lactobacillus* spp. within the current experiment could be provided.

As a genus, *Streptococcus* spp. are also known to possess resistance to fluoride [Bibby and Van Kesteren, 1940] but not to the same extent as is seen for *Lactobacillus* spp. [Sutton et al., 1987]. In the results of this experiment (Exp. 1) a difference was seen in that biofilms exposed to NaF contained greater viable counts (Figure 7.3.3a) although this difference was relatively small (< 1-Log₁₀ unit) and therefore no inhibitory effect could be determined. However, viable counts of MS did appear to differentiate to some degree (Figure 7.3.4a). In this case, the greatest difference between these counts occurred on the 4th sample day (> 2-Log₁₀ units) but between periods of similar state of proliferation. As the environmental conditions within all experiments remained constant, the most likely explanation for this is a reflection of the dynamic state of the *Streptococcus* spp. genus. As noted above, the viable counts of *Streptococcus* spp. remained relatively stable but this group encompasses MS and therefore a change in MS would have to be counterbalanced by change in the non-MS community for viable counts of *Streptococcus* spp. to remain stable. Thus, the microcosm biofilms grown within this experiment may be reflective of that which is produced *in vivo* in that the community structure is dynamic consisting of several population blooms [Skopek et al., 1993] over the course of, and following fully mature, development.

With reference to antimicrobial activity, it should be remembered that this is dependent on the persistence of fluorides within the environment [Buzalaf et al., 2011]. Inhibition of energy production may provide the biofilms grown in the NaF condition with a less favourable environment in the periods following exposure to NaF however both EPS and IPS can provide a means of energy storage which microbes can then utilise [Zero et al., 1986] therefore allowing energy production.
once the inhibitory agent has dissipated from the system. With this in mind, the inhibitory effect of fluoride would be marginal in the case of the present work. Nevertheless, exposure to fluorides would present some selective pressure and may serve to explain the instances where the proliferation of various genera was altered.

EPS matrix provides an environment which benefits the biofilm community [Flemming and Wingender, 2010; Gilbert et al., 2002] and the inhibition of the energy production could therefore hinder the synthesis of the GTFs and FTFs which are responsible for its production [Marsh and Martin, 2009a; Russell, 2009; Williams and Elliott, 1989]. It thus follows that inhibition of the production of the enzymes involved in EPS matrix formation could therefore significantly affect plaque biofilm cariogenicity. In this way, exposure to bi-circadian NaF rinses may inhibit the earliest stages in biofilm formation (that are not able to be accurately captured by selective culture) and therefore may have a down-stream effect on the successive stages during maturation and growth [Skopek et al., 1993].

The concentration of the NaF exposure (300 ppm F\textsuperscript{-}) solution was slightly higher than the 228 ppm F\textsuperscript{-} which has previously been calculated to be present in saliva following the use of common 1100 ppm F\textsuperscript{-} toothpastes [Bruun et al., 1984; Bruun et al., 1987]. However, the amount of F\textsuperscript{-} present in saliva is generally proportional [Vogel, Personal Communication] to simulate that which would be expected from toothpastes which employ a more concentrated fluoride delivery system (1450 ppm F\textsuperscript{-}). In this case, the amount present in the saliva, and hence that which could be expected to reach undisturbed plaque, would be approximately 300 ppm F\textsuperscript{-}. Moreover, when considering how fluoride is delivered through the use of toothpastes, the action is very dissimilar from that which occurs when mouth rise or mass transport in the saliva is the mode of delivery. The inaccessible areas of occlusal and approximal surfaces can result in the build-up plaque although the depth of such a biofilm is limited to the point where the area is accessible to the individual. This is depth at which toothbrush bristles are able to reach and, as the toothpaste is normally applied directly to the brush, it is conceivable that more concentrated slurry actually comes into contact with the surface of the plaque biofilm. Therefore, investigations which concentrate on higher concentrations of fluorides may be warranted in order to provide a more complete picture.

7.4.2 Comparative Plaque Fluid Composition and Microbial Ecology
The microbial ecology within the biofilms produced from this particular experiment (Exp. 2) behaved somewhat differently from Exp. 1. For instance, the FA indicated that the biofilms which were under exposure to dH\textsubscript{2}O where in a more proliferative state in the dH\textsubscript{2}O condition when compared to that of the NaF condition (Figure 7.3.1b). On the other hand, Lactobacillus spp. did not show any great
dissimilarity between dH$_2$O and NaF conditions (Figure 7.3.2b). Therefore, the concept that *Lactobacillus* *spp.* are resistant to exposure to NaF is applicable [Green and Dodd, 1957], however another fraction of the microbial community may have been supressed in order to result in the decrease in viable counts during exposure to NaF (Figure 7.3.1b). *Streptococcus* *spp.* were also numerically lower in the NaF condition (Figure 7.3.3b) but no discernible difference (< 1-Log$_{10}$ unit) could be seen thus indicating that this group as a whole was not affected. However, MS did indicate some level of suppression under exposure to NaF (Figure 7.3.4b) and this group is known to be relatively more sensitive to NaF exposures [Kashket and Kashket, 1985; Sutton et al., 1987] although over the course of the experiment, the relative proportions of MS reached similar values (Figure 7.3.4b). It would therefore appear that the more resistant members of the community had proliferated as the niche within became more amenable to their existence. The concept of whether the adaptation was phenotypic or genetic [Bowden, 1990] may have been an important element in the observed trends. Phenotypic adaptations have the potential to persist within lineages and in this way may be termed genotypic [Bowden, 1990] but without comparison of the genomes from the isolates counted, it would not be possible to be sure of any such conclusion. Subculture on fluoride-containing media such as the methods performed by Bowden et al. [1982] would have helped to confirm the precise mechanism which was at work. Syncretically, the fact that growth curves proceeded more slowly in comparison to the dH$_2$O condition (Figure 7.3.4b) would indicate a reduced capacity to withstand the presence of fluorides within their environment and therefore a lack of genetic competency within this population. Colonisation resistance may have also been responsible for limiting the proliferation of MS although it would be expected that not all microcosm inocula would introduce the same set of organisms to the primary culture; the exposure of fully-developed biofilms to the agents in question (NaF) would effectively remove colonisation resistance or the on-going effects of inter-specific competition as confounding factors and would therefore provide greater insight into the inhibitory effect of fluorides within such communities.

An interesting result is the immediate comparison between acetate and lactate and their relative concentrations following a sucrose exposure. In all cases, acetate was reduced following a sucrose challenge and a concomitant increase in lactate was observed. This relationship has been found previously when investigating the behaviour of lactate and acetate buffers within an abiotic systems [Featherstone and Rodgers, 1981; Walsh, 1991]. Featherstone and Rodgers [1981] were first to identify the importance of the type and combination of acid challenges in carious lesion formation and were also able to determine a loss of acetate in the presence of lactate. Here the authors attributed this loss to a relationship between the lower- and higher-pK$_a$ acids (lactate and acetate respectively) where a greater proportion of higher pK$_a$ acids would be present in their un-ionised
form when part of a buffer system containing lower pKₐ acids. This was understood to be a demonstration of un-dissociated diffusion into the porous dental enamel tissue [Walsh, 1991]. Alternatively, surface adsorption of the acid anions has also been proposed as a mechanism by which they may be lost from such a system [Hoppenbrouwers and Driessens, 1988]. However, in the context of the present work these assertions are not wholly sufficient to explain the observed results. Penetration through bovine enamel occurs approximately x3 faster than in human samples [Featherstone and Mellberg, 1981] yet even given such an extrapolation the reduction of PF acetate in the presence of an increase in lactate occurs much slower within an abiotic system and would therefore not explain the observed shift over a 7 min interval as was applied in the within this experiment (Exp. 2). Whilst it is possible that the above mechanism may have had some influence on the observed results, a biological basis of this result is more likely.

Many oral biofilm bacteria (such as Lactobacillus spp. and Streptococcus spp.) possess the capacity for hetero-fermentative energy production whereby both acetate and lactate are produced as metabolic end products [Davis, 1955; Marsh and Martin, 2009a; Thomas et al., 1979]. Organisms such as Streptococcus spp. and MS are able to produce acetate, lactate, formate and ethanol via hetero-fermentative energy production. However, the enzymes pyruvate-formate lyase (PFL) is required to achieve hetero-fermentative metabolism and this is inhibited below pH 8 [Iwami et al., 1992]. Therefore, during periods of cytoplasmic acidification (as may result from environmental acidification), this pathway is inhibited with the production of lactate remaining viable [Marquis, 1995a]. In theory, cytoplasmic acidification resulting from the entry and subsequent disassociation of HF would effect this same route. Further to this, fluoride also inhibits the activity of enolase [Curran et al., 1994] which is essential for entry of sugars to the conserved glycolytic pathway (Figure 6.4.1). Explanation of the shift in acetate production can therefore be made on the basis of a reduction in the pH of the biofilm whereas the relatively lower concentrations of acid anions in the NaF condition may be attributed to residual fluoride within the PF environment and subsequent metabolic inhibition following the accumulation of cytoplasmic base [Jenkins et al., 1969]. Although the detection of formate in the NaF condition would initially suggest less inhibition of PFL, a full data set was not obtained in this instance and therefore a control comparison was not available for this particular organic acid.

For the areas where data was available, lactate at day 2 peaked higher in the dH₂O condition. In the work conducted by Bradshaw et al. [2002], the acid response was also greater in biofilms which were grown (in both a chemostat and using a CDFF model) in the absence of NaF. However the conditions and parameters measured were dissimilar. In chemostat experiments microbes were cultured
planktonically with continuous exposure to fluoride. In relation to the oral environment, these exposures (and the effects thereof) are, to some extent, unreflective. Even given that a biofilm mode of growth was adopted, the exposure strategy was again dissimilar in that fluoride was introduced during each cariogenic challenge. However, what was shown was that a much lower concentration of environmental fluoride is able to result in a significant alteration in the collective physiology of the community [Bradshaw et al., 2002]. From the current work, it would appear that level similar to that which would be experienced during conventional oral hygiene [Parnell and O’Mullane, 2013] is also able to enforce a change in the acidic response to a cariogenic challenge.

Propionate production can be performed by various members of the microbial consortia including *Bifidobacteria spp.*, *Prevotella spp.* and *Veillonella spp.* Further to this, cross-feeding for the resultant production of propionate is well known within mixed bacteria communities [Hosseini et al., 2011]. Given the plethora of microorganisms present within a microcosm inoculum (of which, those involved in propionate production would be expected to include) [Aas et al., 2005], the individual microbes responsible for propionate production and the effect of NaF exposures thereon is difficult to be certain of. Following exposure to sucrose, propionate concentrations were reduced further in the NaF exposure condition (Figure 7.3.11) possibly indicating a level sensitisation to acidic pH [Marquis et al., 2003] although further data in relation to propionate production within the fluoride-free condition would be necessary to be more certain. Moreover, *Bifidobacterium spp.* have recently attracted attention for their role within cariogenic biofilm ecology [Beighton et al., 2010]. The concept that metabolic products may be measured as a proxy for activity of such species may have substantial implications but direct isolation of this genera would also be required.

Succinate and butyrate are both low-pKₐ acids [House, 2013] and their presence within the PF would thus contribute to the buffering capacity during an acidic challenge [Higham and Edgar, 1989; Margolis et al., 1985]. Succinate was not detected in any of the NaF-exposed biofilms on the 2nd sample day but was in biofilms which were produced under the dH₂O condition. However, on the 4th day, succinate was detected following a sucrose exposure. It is possible that the levels within the PF were of a magnitude which was BMDL for the CE system however fluoride induced inhibition of succinate producing microbes such as *Actinomyces spp.* [Beighton et al., 2004] or a delay in the proliferation of these organisms in the NaF exposure condition may be responsible for this observation [Bowden et al., 1982]. The trend in butyrate production was much less clear and although this particular analyte was confirmed as present, it is likely that the interference encountered during anion separations was responsible for the incoherency of the trends in the observed production for this analyte.
Fluoride was detected in relatively high concentrations by the 4th day of the NaF condition (0.465 mM ± 0.698 SD). Further to this, the concentrations found were higher than that required for antimicrobial activity [Maltz and Emilson, 1982]. As noted above, an adaptive mechanism may have been responsible for sustainment of oral biofilms within this unit [Bowden, 1990] and the presence of the fluoride could be due to the formation of persistent mineral phases such as CaF$_2$-like deposits [Christoffersen et al., 1995] which, interestingly, would be supported by the DS of the STGM (Figure 4.4.4). Further studies would be required to support the conclusion that CaF$_2$-like deposits had in fact formed within these biofilms. Nevertheless, the detection limits of the CE method required a relative high MDL and therefore confidence in the presence of this analyte was complete.

The fact that phosphate was reduced following a cariogenic challenge in the NaF condition but not in the dH$_2$O condition indicates that a unique physiochemical response occurred within these biofilms. Specifically, the fact that this reduction occurred at times when fluoride was detected also suggests an implication in the mineralisation process. If the presence of fluoride was in fact due to the breakdown and dissolution of fluoride reservoirs then the loss of phosphate during this period may have been due to subsequent remineralisation events or the formation and fluorapatite [ten Cate, 1997]. Unfortunately, PF calcium concentrations were not available although a relative reduction in the concentration of this analyte would provide a much stronger basis to the assertion. Loss of PF phosphate has previously been attributed to uptake by bacterial anabolism [Higham, 1986] and while this may be true, the unique result observed in the presence of fluoride and the speed with which the reduction was observed would again suggest an essentially dissimilar process. Moreover, in instances where data were able to be compared, PF phosphate was much lower in previous experiments (Figure 6.3.6). Biological variation of the biofilm may, in part, explain this result as even before the supposed cariogenic challenge, PF phosphate was far higher (Figure 7.3.13).

Exposure of the biofilms to either dH$_2$O or NaF solutions would also augment the ionic composition of the PF through purely physical means. As noted previously, the very exposure to a hypotonic solution would have some dilution effect on the fluid phase within [Vogel et al., 2001]. This may have been the factor which was responsible for the differences observed in PF chloride as has been found with other constitutes such as potassium [Dibdin et al., 1986]. The finding that relative chloride concentrations increased over time may also be an indication that the as the biofilms had matured, a less diffusive structure had developed [Dibdin and Wimpenny, 1999]. To some extent, this may have also been the case for PF sulphate (Figure 7.3.12) but if this were true it should be remembered that the same assumption that diffusion was altered over the course of biofilms growth must be applied to the evaluation of all chosen analytes.
The composition of the samples which were extracted at baseline was, however, markedly different from the STGM (Figure 5.3.5 and Figure 5.3.6). The finding that PF samples exhibited a dissimilar composition from the STGM was also true for previous experiments (Section 6.3.3) although unique to the present study, baseline measurements were obtained for each dCDFF condition. Therefore, the dH₂O conditions of this particular run would reflect that which could be expected of the sucrose exposure condition described in Section 6.3.3. However it is possible that the collective physiological state of the biofilms within the dH₂O condition of the present run differed from that of the sucrose condition of the previous experiment but, with this in mind, examination by way of viable counts showed a general similarity between the groups which were sampled.

One aspect which has not been addressed is that the time frame at which biofilms were sampled may have led to the false conclusion that fluoride reduces acid production. In experiments conducted by van der Hoeven and Franken [1984], the rate of organic acid production of *Streptococcus mutans* biofilms was reduced under exposure to fluoride but the total organic acids produced following a 30 mM sucrose rinse was unaffected [van der Hoeven and Franken, 1984]. Explanation of this result was given in that the utilisation of sucrose was hindered (through the acidic sensitisation mechanisms decried above) although, given time, the populations ability to metabolise the substrate was not effected [Bowden, 1990]. This is of direct relevance within the context of the present work as the reduced rate of unitisation may explain why the PF concentration of organic acids anions were lower under exposure to NaF (as F⁻ was also detected within the PF) whilst complete inhibition was not noted. A reduction in acid production would deny acidogenic organisms such as MS their selective advantage [Bowden et al., 1982] to a degree. However, consistent with the EPH, even a reduced acidogenic potential would confer the same selective advantage [Marsh, 1994]. Organisms which are best suited to a higher environmental pH would therefore be able to compete for longer although it would appear from the present work that the selective advantage would remain in the favour of the more acidogenic species.

**7.4.3 Microbial Ecology and Caries Lesion Formation**

In Exp. 3, viable counts of FA behaved indistinguishably between dCDFF conditions (Figure 7.3.1c). Conversely, the proportion of *Lactobacillus spp.* was lower within biofilms which were exposed to NaF than in those exposed to dH₂O (Figure 7.3.2c) which was consistent with that observed for the previous experiment (Figure 7.3.2b). No difference was seen in *Streptococcus spp.* however viable counts within the groups appeared to behave erectly (Figure 7.3.3c) and in a way which did not reflect either of the previous experiments. In a sense this erratic growth trend could indicate that the biofilms had not reach a steady-state [Kinniment et al., 1996] although the perceived steady-state can be somewhat subjective, the erective trends seen in *Streptococcus spp.* could have due to
proliferative events [Skopek et al., 1993] which were nevertheless behaving similarly between dCDFF conditions. Although dissimilar trends did occurred when assessing the growth of Veillonella spp. (Figure 7.3.5), they appeared to be relatively unaffected given the introduction of NaF exposures which is consistent with previous work that has shown their ability to tolerate environmental fluoride to greater extent than other oral bacteria such as MS [Bowden et al., 1982]. However, the proliferation of MS did not appear to be inhibited within this experiment (Exp. 3). Rather, evidence for a reduction in viable counts was observed only in the dH₂O condition (Figure 7.3.4c). The fact that the reduction of this group occurred some time after the establishment of the biofilm would again indicate an ecological basis for the observed results and in this respect further insight may be possible when the growth trends of Streptococcus spp. are considered in relation to MS.

Comparing the results for Streptococcus spp. (Figure 7.3.3c) to that of MS (Figure 7.3.4c) shows that on the 4th day of the experiment, the Streptococcus spp. population consisted of approx. 10% MS. However on the 6th day, the proportion of MS had rose to 100% of the Streptococcus spp. sampled in the NaF condition when this was not the case for the dH₂O condition. Therefore, the results indicate that the ecology within the biofilms grown under the NaF condition allowed for an opportunistic proliferation of MS at the expense the other streptococci but that those which were initially selected against soon recovered. The reasons for this are not clear, given the mechanisms discussed above, the presence of fluoride within the environment should not have provided any selective advantage to MS but a significant proportion of the viable counts made cannot be accounted for as either Lactobacillus spp., Streptococcus spp., MS or Veillonella spp. Changes in the composition of this unknown fraction may have afforded MS their advantage even within an NaF exposure strategy.

Central aspects of the caries process are lost when viable counts are considered alone and the above results serve to demonstrate that the ecology should be followed in comparison to further parameters such as the composition of the PF (Exp. 2). However, members of the community may interact by cross-feeding and therefore alter the composition of the PF to a point were identification of the species responsible is no longer possible. Therefore, whilst a similar plaque function may be afforded by more than one community [Sissons, 1997], the definition of this function cannot be made based on the environmental conditions alone. In this sense, measurement of the collective metabolic activity of the biofilm is useful [Nyvad et al., 2013] but perhaps dimensionless unless further parameters are also measured. Ultimately, the cariogenicity of a biofilm is not defined purely on basis of acidogenicity [Zaura and ten Cate, 2004] although the detection of carious demineralisation does (by definition) provide proof of this process. To this end, a protective effect was observed under conditions which included exposure to fluoride within the present work (Exp. 3).
Lesions were produced within the dH₂O condition (Figure 7.3.14b) however demineralisation was not apparent until the 8th day of the experiment. This is in contrast to earlier attempts when carious demineralisation was capture as early as the second day of the experiment (Figure 5.3.7 and Figure 5.3.8). Although PF measurements were not made during the earlier attempts, the composition of the microbial community was monitored. Between these 2 experiment, FA were exceptionally similar (Figure 5.3.1 compared with Figure 7.3.1c), Lactobacillus spp. were determined as slightly higher (Figure 5.3.2 compared with Figure 7.3.2c), Streptococcus spp. were slightly lower (Figure 5.3.3 compared with Figure 7.3.3c) in the present study however the most noticeable differences were found in the proportions of MS and Veillonella spp.

Viable counts of MS reached higher proportions in the previous experiments (Figure 5.3.4) compared to the present work (Figure 7.3.4c) and further to this a similar depression occurred between the 4th and 8th days of both experiments. Interestingly, this similarity was noted in the CF condition. Conversely, the proportion of proliferative Veillonella spp. rose to higher numbers in the present work (Figure 5.3.5 compared with Figure 7.3.5). The reduction of acidogenic species coupled with greater proportion of lactate-consuming species may have provided a less cariogenic environment [Mikx et al., 1976] and therefore may serve to explain the less advanced state of the lesions found within the dH₂O condition in the current context of this experiment (Figure 7.3.15b).

The fact that a CF STGM flow was employed also raises an interesting point over the architecture of the lesions which were formed. Although the rate of formation was slower, the lesions created in the present work (Figure 7.3.14b) did not show the district SL which was in-line with that found in previous experiments when a CF used (Figure 5.3.7). Previously, this was explained on the basis of coupled diffusion [Anderson and Elliott, 1987] as the comparison with the FF condition showed a much more well-define SL. However, incongruent dissolution has also been proposed as a mechanism which contributes to SL formation [Brown and Martin, 1999]. In compositionally variably solid phases (such as natural bovine enamel), the process of incongruent dissolution would be altered although not avoided [Wang and Nancollas, 2008] therefore this process is most likely involved in the pattern of lesion formation observed in the present work (Figure 7.3.14b). Unfortunately, a direct control condition was not included in the present study as the aim was to assess the effect(s) of fluoride exposures but nevertheless, the fact that an SL was poorly formed in the present study is certainly an interesting result.

It appeared that fluoride completely protected the enamel tissue from the conditions created within the dCFFF model (Figure 7.3.15a). Although some demineralisation was detected by the TMR system, this was only marginally outside the error (ΔZ = 200 %Vol.µm, LD = 5 µm) associated with
the procedure [Arends and ten Bosch, 1992]. This would, however, indicate that some level of surface softening was occurring in the initial phases of the experiment (Figure 7.3.14a). Unfortunately, larger sample sets would be required in order to confirm that these results were not the product of an unusually high error measurement from an otherwise sound enamel surface.

It is possible that the demineralising challenges were initially stronger in the NaF exposure condition however given the known inhibitory effects of NaF on microbial fermentation [Bradshaw et al., 2002] and the reduction in organic acid production indicated from Exp. 2, this is an unlikely cause of the mineral loss observed in Figure 7.3.15a. In all, a discernible lesion character was produced in enamel tissues which were not exposed to NaF (Figure 7.3.14b) and this was not evident in any of the sections extracted from the NaF condition (Figure 7.3.14a). However, an interesting observation was made in the samples which were salvaged from the enamel grooves (Figure 7.3.16a). Here, demineralisation was not apparent in the outer areas although evidence of mineral loss was found in the base of the groove (specifically in within the dentine tissue). Dentine is inherently more soluble than enamel [Robinson et al., 1995a] which would explain the evidence of mineral loss in this tissue as opposed to the enamel layer. Further to this, the presence of fluoride may have protected the outer areas of the groove preferentially though limited diffusion of fluoride and reactions with the mineral phase at the entrance to the groove [Zaura-Arite et al., 1999; Zaura and ten Cate, 2004; Zaura et al., 2005]. However, what was provide from these limited samples was some indication that microbial fermentation did occur in the base of these grooves and to a point of cariogenicity which effected the demineralisation of dentine but not the enamel tissue.
7.5.0 Conclusions
Microcosm biofilms behaved very differently when assessed by microbial counts alone and, because of this variation, the antimicrobial activity of an agent on a biofilm which is in a constant state of change cannot always be accurately determined. Within the context of the present study, this was no expectation. However, fluoride does appear to have some modulatory effect on the ecology of the plaque biofilm through an effect possibly imparted on the acidogenicity of the community. Further studies on the effects of representative fluoride exposures on defined species biofilms and on established biofilm communities should therefore be conducted as this approach would remove individual sensitivities relative community susceptibility as confounding factors respectively.

Definite differences were observed when comparing the effects of NaF versus dH₂O exposures on carious lesion development. Furthermore, these results fell well in-line with what can be expected from assessment of the literature. With regard to model development, monitoring the biofilm community via metabolic activity and subsequent quantification of cariogenicity through analysis of the degree of substratum mineralisation can also be concluded as an effective means of assessing the collective activity of the biofilms within this particular model. Each of these methods should thus be applied to a relatable culture therefore requiring concerted application of each within the same dCDFF experiment.
Chapter 8: Influence of Ca-Lactate vs. dH2O Exposure on Biofilm Formation and Cariogenicity under NaF Exposures.

8.1.0 Introduction
Calcium is an essential part of dental mineral [Shore et al., 1995b]. Elevated levels of calcium may inhibit the process of demineralisation and, in sufficient quantities, may promote remineralisation or mineral deposition. In order to confer maximum protection, a sustained low level of fluoride within the PF would also provide the optimum conditions [Featherstone, 1999]. However, excessive ingestion of fluoride is a contentious issue due to concerns over toxicity [Den Besten and Li, 2011; Marinho et al., 2003b] and the persistence of fluoride when supplied by conventional means therefore becomes an attractive alternative [Vogel, 2011].

Calcium is also thought to play a role in the structural integrity of biofilm [Rose et al., 1993] whereby carboxylate and phosphate groups on the peptidoglycan cell walls of the gram-positive bacteria are able reversibly bind calcium [Rose et al., 1997]. The binding of these groups to calcium can occur in a mono-dentate fashion thus enabling calcium bridging between bacteria when in immediate proximity [Rose, 2000a] but, further to this, cell-surface antigens such as lipoteichoic acid (LTA) have been demonstrated to have an even higher binding capacity than the cell walls [Rose et al., 1994]. The production of LTA during exposure to sucrose [Rølla et al., 1978] has also been suggested to act as a possible calcium-buffering mechanism; shielding acidogenic microbes from the effects of calcium stress which may result during mineral dissolution [Rose and Hogg, 1995].

Lactate can also provide an energy source for microbes such as Veillonella spp. [Rogosa and Bishop, 1964]. This was first tested by Bowden and Brownstone [Unpublished] where the addition of Na-lactate was expected to increase the proportion of Veillonella spp. and therefore confer protection during natural acidic episodes through the reduction PF lactate [Bowden, 1993]. Although an increase in the proportion of Veillonella spp. was not detected, a more controlled system such as the CDFF may be able to detect such a response more effectively. It is also thought that the increase in available calcium would favour the formation of CaF2-like deposits within the plaque and on the surface of the tooth; thus leading to the persistence of this phase within the oral environment and therefore an enhanced protective effect [Pessan et al., 2006; Vogel et al., 2008]. The work presented in this chapter consequently aims to recreate the exposure strategy devised by Vogel et al. [2008] whereby the NaF exposure applied in the previous chapter (Figure 7.2.3) will be built upon to include Ca-lactate pre-rinses.
8.1.1 Aims and Objectives
Investigating the effects of Ca-lactate pre-rinses on the retention of mineral ions within plaque biofilms the will be investigated within the dCDFF model and the associated state of the microbial ecology, plaque fluid composition and subsequent effect(s) on the degree of enamel substratum mineralisation will also be monitored. The work presented within this chapter will aim to relate the maximum number of relevant parameters together to provide insight into resultant alterations to the caries process. Whilst testing the hypothesis that Ca-lactate exposures will increase the abundance of mineral ions (calcium and fluoride) within the PF, further insight into the behaviour of ionic reservoirs and the microbial ecology within in vitro dental biofilms will also be sought.
8.2.0 Materials and Methods

Calcium Lactate (Ca-Lactate; 150 mM) exposures were investigated in a dCDFF model (described in Section 5.2.2) in comparison with dH2O during a sucrose (50 mM) and NaF (300 ppm F) pulsing strategy illustrated in the “Unit B” condition of Figure 7.2.3b. As in Section 5.2.1, biofilms were formed from a pooled human salivary inoculum. Both enamel disks (Modus Laboratories, University of Reading, Reading, UK) and HA (Clarkson Chromatography Products Inc., South Williamsport, PA., USA) were used as a substratum for biofilm growth. Narrow grooves were also carved into each of the enamel surface before half of the enamel surface was coated in an acid resistant nail varnish (MaxFactor Nailfinity; Procter and Gamble, Weybridge, UK) leaving both exposed and un-exposed areas as described in Figure 7.2.2. Further to this, artificial lesions were created in some of the enamel disks before preparation for use in the dCDFF along with other sound enamel surfaces. The procedures used to create these lesion types is described below in Section 8.2.0.1 (below). Following the creation of lesions, all enamel disks were painted in an acid-resistant varnish (MaxFactor Nailfinity; Procter and Gamble, Weybridge, UK) so that half of the enamel surface was protected from conditions within the dCDFF unit by the same method described in Figure 7.2.1.

HA disks were inserted into their positions in the PTFE pans and recessed to a depth of 200 µm before the pans were inserted into the CDFF turntables (Figure 8.2.1) and the assembled units sterilised exactly as described previously (Section 5.2.2.1). The apparatus was then assembled as described in Section 7.2.0 with the following adaptations that NaF (300 ppm F; Sigma-Aldrich, Poole, UK) was introduced to both CDFF units from the same 1 L volume of sterile NaF solution and either Ca-Lactate (150 mM) or dH2O was fed into the units via the same silicone tubing stream as entered
the NaF solution immediately before the inlet to the given CDFF unit (Figure 8.2.3) at a flow rate of 10 mL.min\(^{-1}\) for a period of 1 min by previously calibrated peristaltic pumps (101U/R Low Flow Peristaltic Pump; Watson Marlow, Falmouth, UK). All procedures regarding the assembly, inoculation stage and pulsing cycle commencement were kept in line however with a further Ca-Lactate pre-rinse stage either side of the NaF exposure (Figure 8.2.2) and a CF strategy was adopted for the purposes of this experiment.

HA disks were extracted in triplicate for the enumeration of bacteria on days 2, 4, 8 and 16 of the experiment (Section 5.2.3). Biofilms were sampled on days 2, 4, 8 and 16 immediately after the 4\(^{th}\) sucrose pulse of the given days cycle (2:00PM) using the procedure describe in Section 5.2.4. The community members chosen for identification were: FA (FAA media supplemented with 5% horse blood; Section 5.2.4.1), MS (TYCSB; Section 5.2.4.2), Streptococcus spp. (MSA; Section 5.2.4.3), Lactobacillus spp. (Rogosa; Section 5.2.4.4) and Veillonella spp. (BV agar; Section 5.2.4.5). After the 5\(^{th}\) sucrose pulse (4:00 PM), PF was also extracted in triplicated using the method described in 6.2.2 with the exceptions that samples were taken only on days 8 and 16.

TMR was performed on all enamel disks extracted at days 8 and 16. The enamel disks were removed from their sample pans immediately before the 4\(^{th}\) sucrose pulse (2:00PM) on the sample day and the biofilm removed from the surface of the disks by gently washing the surface with dH\(_2\)O. Disks were stored in 1 mL Eppendorf tubes (Eppendorf UK Ltd., Stevenage, UK) along with a cotton pellet moistened with 0.1 % w/v thymol solution (BDH Laboratory Supplies, Poole, UK) between extraction and analysis. TMR procedures were performed as described in Section 2.2.4 with the exceptions that, prior to initial sectioning, a small groove was cut into the side of each enamel disk in order to mark the exposed enamel surfaces.

For the quantification of de- or remineralisation of pre-made lesions, micro-radiographic images of the un-exposed surfaces were captured along with adjacent exposed areas. The TMR parameters (\(\Delta Z\), LD, R and \(S_{\text{Max}}\)) were then recorded and the values of the exposed areas were each subtracted from their adjacent un-exposed areas. Consequently, for quantification of pre-made lesion results were expressed as the change in each parameter (\(\Delta \Delta Z\), \(\Delta LD\), \(\Delta R\) and \(\Delta S_{\text{Max}}\)). Negative values in these secondary parameters therefore indicated and increase in mineral loss whereas positive values indicated a reduction [Lippert et al., 2012].
8.2.0.1 Artificial Lesion Creation (Hydrogel Demineralisation Model)

Acid-Gel systems were constructed as described in Section 2.2.2. In brief, an MeC (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK) gel base was made to a density of 8% (w/v) and containing 10 mM KH$_2$PO$_4$ (Sigma-Aldrich Ltd., Poole, UK). Into each of three 50 mL Sterilin containers (Sterilin Ltd., Newport, UK) 3 enamel disks were placed and secured in place with tooth Carding wax (Associated Dental Products Ltd., Swindon, UK). Twenty g of the MeC gel and, once set, a further 20 g of 100 mM Lactic acid solution (in-depth descriptions of the preparation procedure are provided in Section 2.2.1) was added. The lactic acid solution contained 10 mM KH$_2$PO$_4$ without CaCl$_2$ and therefore initially infinitely under-saturated with respect to calcium phosphate salts. The completed AGSs were incubated for 14 d at 37 °C in a Memmert IN55 Precision Incubator (Memmert GmbH, Heilbronn, Germany). Following this, enamel disks were extracted and any remnants of the gel removed by rinsing with dH$_2$O. Disks were then stored in 1 mL Eppendorf tubes (Eppendorf UK Ltd., Stevenage, UK) along with a cotton pellet moistened with 0.1% (w/v) thymol solution (BDH Laboratory Supplies, Poole, UK) until required for preparation and sterilisation for use in the dCDFF.
Figure 8.2.3 (dCDFF Schematic Set-Up) a: Sterile STGM; b: Peristaltic Pump 3.0 mL.min⁻¹; c: Sterile 50 mM Sucrose Solution; d: Sterile NaF Solution (300 ppm F⁻); e: Peristaltic Pump 0.38 mL.min⁻¹; f: Peristaltic Pump 10.0 mL.min⁻¹; g: Peristaltic Pump 0.38 mL.min⁻¹; h: Y-Connector; i: Grow-Back Trap; j: Sterile Ca-Lactate Solution (150 mM); k: Flask Containing Sterile dH₂O; l: Peristaltic Pump 0.5 mL.min⁻¹; m: CDFF Unit A; n: Inoculum with Magnetic Stirrer; o: CDFF Unit B; p: Effluent; *: 0.3 µm Air Filter.
8.3.0 Results

8.3.1 Enumeration of Biofilm Bacteria
Initially viable counts for FA, Lactobacillus spp., Streptococcus spp., MS and Veillonella spp. showed no significant difference between either the Ca-lactate or dH₂O exposure conditions (P ≥ 0.192). However, following an initial concordance in results, a divergence in the growth trends soon appeared. This begun with FA (Figure 8.3.1) on sample day 4 where a significant increase in the dH₂O condition (P < 0.001) lead to a difference between dCDFF conditions which was determined as significant (P = 0.042). This early increase progressed to sample day 8 (P = 0.001) following which viable counts then reached a more steady-state between days 8 and 16 (P = 0.933). In the Ca-lactate condition a very different trend was observed. Viable counts decreased between days 4 and 8 (P = 0.002) however between days 8 and 16 this lower level remained stable (P = 0.138).

![Graph showing the growth of Fastidious Anaerobes over time](image)

Figure 8.3.1 (Fastidious Anaerobes; FA): Conditions were exposed to either Ca-Lactate (150 mM) or dH₂O at 10 mL.min⁻¹. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n=3), a single asterisk (*) indicates significantly (P < 0.050) different results between dCDFF condition and a double asterisk (**) denotes a highly significant difference.

Lactobacillus spp. did not show this same level of clarity with respect to their growth trends over time (Figure 8.3.2). As noted above, no difference could be detected between either condition on the 2nd day of the experiment, however, in contrast to FA (Figure 8.3.1), Lactobacillus spp. showed no difference between dCDFF condition on sample day 4 also (P = 0.843). In fact, a clear divergence between conditions was not observed until the 8th day where viable counts were significantly higher in the dH₂O condition (P < 0.001). However, between days 8 and 16, a crossover in the growth trends
occurred. Nevertheless, comparisons of the trends in viable counts were applied in all cases. In the Ca-lactate condition, viable counts of *Lactobacillus spp.* entered a relatively stable period between days 4 and 8 (P = 0.993) however counts were seen to increase by day 16 (P < 0.001). Over this same time period, viable counts in the dH$_{2}$O condition increased on the 8$^\text{th}$ day (P = 0.001) then decrease slightly (but significantly) between the 8$^\text{th}$ and 16$^\text{th}$ days.

![Figure 8.3.2 (Lactobacillus spp.): Conditions were exposed to either Ca-Lactate (150 mM) or dH$_{2}$O at 10 mL.min$^{-1}$. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n=3) and a double asterisk (*) indicates a highly significant difference between dCDFF conditions (P < 0.050).](image)

*Streptococcus spp.* (Figure 8.3.3), exhibited growth trends which were much more similar to that seen for FA (Figure 8.3.1). Viable counts were initially indistinguishable on sample day 2 (P = 0.192) and, although a divergence in CFU counts is evident in Figure 8.3.3, no significant difference was detected between dCDFF conditions on sample day 4 either (P = 0.057). By sample day 8, viable counts did however show a significant divergence and this difference persisted throughout the course of the experiment (P < 0.001). Comparing counts in the dH$_{2}$O condition, growth of *Streptococcus spp.* increased by the 8$^\text{th}$ day (P = 0.030) then entered a then remained for the remainder of the experiment (P = 0.865). However, a progressive decrease was observed in the Ca-lactate condition. This was apparent from visual interpretation of Figure 8.3.3 and was statistically significant between days 4 and 16 (P = 0.007) although between the individual sample points over this period did not immediately show any significance (P ≥ 0.104). Ultimately, an approximate 2Log$_{10}$ difference was achieved between CFU counts from either dCDFF condition.
Figure 8.3.3 (Streptococcus spp.): Conditions were exposed to either Ca-Lactate (150 mM) or dH2O at 10 mL.min⁻¹. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n=3), a single asterisk (*) indicates significantly (P < 0.050) different results between dCDFF condition and a double asterisk (**) denotes a highly significant difference.

MS displayed growth trends which were comparable to FA and Streptococcus spp. in as much as that, viable counts were lower in biofilms taken from the Ca-lactate condition the divergence in viable counts occurred following the 2nd sample day (Figure 8.3.4). However, apart from these initial similarities the growth seen between dH2O and Ca-Lactate conditions were very different. A statistically significant difference between dCDFF condition did not occur until the 8th sample day (P = 0.027) and, as expected from the trends illustrated, MS viable counts remained significantly different on the 16th sample day also (P < 0.001). By this point the difference in counts approached 3 Log₁₀ units higher in the dH2O condition than was found in those biofilms exposure to Ca-lactate pre-rinses.

Further to the above, the divergence between MS counts reached appoint that would was almost equal to that what was found for Streptococcus spp. Tukey’s HSD indicated a relatively stable growth period between days 2 and 8 in the Ca-lactate condition (P = 0.946) however this lack of difference was only found between days 2 and 4 in the dH2O condition (P = 0.879). Although the increase in viable counts between day 4 and 8 was not significant (P = 0.052) the comparisons between days 2 and 8 was (P = 0.019) therefore indicating a more gradual increase within this condition. Between the 8th and the 16th day MS in both the dH2O and Ca-lactate conditions viable counts increased significantly (P ≤ 0.002). As noted above, this was most pronounced in the dH2O condition and proceeded in a more linear fashion in the Ca-Lactate condition.
Influence of Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O Exposure on Biofilm Formation and Cariogenicity under NaF Exposures | Ch. 8

Figure 8.3.4 (Mutans streptococci; MS): Conditions were exposed to either Ca-Lactate (150 mM) or dH₂O at 10 mL/min⁻¹. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n=3), a single asterisk (*) indicates significantly (P < 0.050) different results between dCDFF condition and a double asterisk (**) denotes a highly significant difference.

Figure 8.3.5 (Veillonella spp.): Conditions were exposed to either Ca-Lactate (150 mM) or dH₂O at 10 mL/min⁻¹. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n=3), a single asterisk (*) indicates significantly (P < 0.050) different results between dCDFF condition and a double asterisk (**) denotes a highly significant difference.
Viable counts of *Veillonella spp.* (Figure 8.3.5) were much more similar to that of FA (Figure 8.3.1). Although on an order of magnitude of approximately 3 Log\(_{10}\) units lower than CFU counts made on FA, the actual distribution and shape of the growth curves in relation to each other and each dCDFF condition were extremely similar for these 2 bacterial groups. In delineating trends for the *Veillonella spp.*, no significant difference was found up to sample day 4 (P ≥ 0.585) while viable counts taken from biofilms extracted on days 8 and 16 were significantly different (P ≤ 0.001). In biofilms extracted from the dH\(_2\)O condition the increase in viable counts was delayed between days 2 and 4 (P = 0.985) following which marked increase occurred between the 4\(^{th}\) and 8\(^{th}\) days of the experiment (P = 0.006). Viable counts did increase further by day 16 however only to a relatively minor and hence non-significant degree (P = 0.441). In the Ca-lactate condition, biofilms were found to be similar with respect to the proportion of *Veillonella spp.* at all points between sample day 2 and 8 (P ≥ 0.077) however a decrease in mean viable counts made on the 8\(^{th}\) sample day generated a significantly different result where counts made on the 16\(^{th}\) day were significantly higher (P = 0.047).
8.3.2 TMR of dCdff-Exposed Enamel Disks

Out of the 18 enamel disks exposed within each dCdff unit between 4 and 5 thin sections were initially cut. These were then analysed individually for each dCdff condition and sample day following which data for specific TMR parameters were collected and aggregated to the individual enamel block from which they were sectioned. Due to the lack of any discernible SLs in the initially sound enamel surfaces, measurements of $S_{\text{Max}}$ were not collected for the initially sound enamel sections, all other TMR parameters are expressed below in relation to the sample day on which they were extracted and the dCdff unit condition to which they were exposed (Table 8.3.1).

Mean scan profiles were interpreted but are not presented due to the fact both no benefit was able to gained from their interpretation (lesion architecture was not apparent). TMR parameters (Table 8.3.1) were assessed however several thin sections were lost from the samples extracted from the Ca-lactate condition on the 16th day of the experiment. Nevertheless, some insight was gained from their interpretation. In the dH$_2$O condition, no mineral loss (as measured by $\Delta Z$) was detected over that which could be explained by the error associated with the TMR procedure (200 %Vol.um) in samples extracted on either the 8th (Figure 8.3.6a) or the 16th (Figure 8.3.6b) day of the experiment [Arends and ten Bosch, 1992]. This was also true for LD (5 µm) however a high level of variation was seen within each sample set. Between sample days 8 and 16, the difference in $\Delta Z$, LD and R was not significant ($P \geq 0.131$).

In the Ca-lactate condition, the recorded measurements of $\Delta Z$ and LD were below that associated with the error of the TMR procedure [Arends and ten Bosch, 1992] on the 8th day (Figure 8.3.7a). Although in measurements made from samples extracted on the 16th day (Figure 8.3.7b), it appeared that some demineralisation did occur. However, as noted above, the sample set gained on this occasion was severely limited ($n = 1$) and therefore prone to the effect of error or biological variation in the samples. To this end, an unusual mineral density was detected in this enamel section possible due to the ELT and the proximity of the surface to the EDJ. Statistical analyses were nonetheless applied to these samples and it was found that no significant difference could be detected in $\Delta Z$, LD or R ($P \geq 0.080$). In agreement with the observation of unusual mineral density profiles, LD showed the greatest difference between each sample set ($P = 0.080$).
Influence of Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O Exposure on Biofilm Formation and Cariogenicity under NaF Exposures

**Figure 8.3.7a (TMR Parameters of Initially Sound Enamel Surfaces; Day 8):** LD (µm) and R (%Vol) share the left axis. ΔZ (%Vol.µm) measurements are plotted on the right for the purposes of clarity. Results correspond to data in Table 8.3.1 and error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 3).

**Figure 8.3.7b (TMR Parameters of Initially Sound Enamel Surfaces; Day 16):** LD (µm) and R (%Vol) share the left axis. ΔZ (%Vol.µm) measurements are plotted on the right. Results correspond to data in Table 8.3.1 and error bars represent the SD of the sample set (n = 3 unless otherwise indicated). An asterisk indicates significant differences (P < 0.050) between parameters of the dCFFF conditions.
Between dCDFF conditions, no significant differences were found between ΔZ, LD, or R in samples extracted on the 8th day of the experiment (P ≥ 0.267). However, for samples extracted on the 8th day of the experiment LD was significantly higher (P = 0.026) in the enamel sections exposure to the Ca-lactate condition. Parameters of ΔZ and R did not differ significantly (P ≥ 0.072) between either dCDFF condition at this point.

### Table 8.3.2 (TMR Parameters of Pre-Made Enamel Lesions): Parameters of integrated mineral loss (ΔZ), lesion depth (LD), average mineral loss (R) and the degree of SL mineralisation (S_max) along with the sample size (n) are listed in-line with same day and dCDFF condition. Parameters are presented as baseline (Base) and post-exposure (Post) groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Sample Day</th>
<th>n (En Disks)</th>
<th>ΔZ ± SD</th>
<th>LD ± SD</th>
<th>R ± SD</th>
<th>S_max ± SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dH2O (Base)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1689.17 ± 444.76</td>
<td>70.11 ± 13.58</td>
<td>23.94 ± 2.73</td>
<td>60.30 ± 7.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca-Lactate (Base)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2862.50 ± 822.16</td>
<td>88.38 ± 9.46</td>
<td>32.09 ± 7.86</td>
<td>48.14 ± 9.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dH2O (Base)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1890.00 ± 270.73</td>
<td>78.25 ± 9.40</td>
<td>24.62 ± 4.72</td>
<td>55.61 ± 3.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca-Lactate (Base)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2180.56 ± 466.19</td>
<td>77.36 ± 14.65</td>
<td>28.11 ± 2.19</td>
<td>55.74 ± 5.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dH2O (Post)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1749.72 ± 376.07</td>
<td>69.03 ± 6.92</td>
<td>24.96 ± 2.67</td>
<td>57.69 ± 4.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca-Lactate (Post)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2433.33 ± 333.63</td>
<td>76.34 ± 7.36</td>
<td>32.43 ± 6.14</td>
<td>43.13 ± 14.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dH2O (Post)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1397.50 ± 291.26</td>
<td>63.85 ± 7.44</td>
<td>21.85 ± 3.03</td>
<td>59.95 ± 2.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca-Lactate (Post)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1567.78 ± 543.86</td>
<td>63.47 ± 12.11</td>
<td>24.04 ± 4.42</td>
<td>59.88 ± 5.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SL measurements were possible from the enamel sections of the artificially created enamel lesions. The measurements made are presented in Table 8.3.2 on an aggregated basis for each enamel block where un-exposed areas are marked as baseline measurements (Base) and exposure areas are marked as post-exposure (Post). The calculations made for ΔΔZ, ΔLD and ΔR are also illustrated together in Figure 8.3.8 for the purposes of comparison.

Between either dCDFF condition, no significant difference were found with respect to ΔΔZ (P = 0.216), ΔLD (P = 0.320), ΔR (P = 0.687) or ΔS_max (P = 0.726) on the 8th sample day and this was also true when the lesions extracted from either condition on the 16th sample day were compared (P ≥ 0.270). However, some differences were found when comparisons were made between samples days. In the dH2O condition, ΔLD did not show any significant increase (P = 0.334) between samples extracted on the 8th and 16th days although a numerical increase was apparent (Figure 8.3.8). This was also true for ΔS_max (P = 0.143). However, ΔΔZ did indicate some significant increase (P = 0.049) and closer inspection of the parameters found this to lie in an increase which was detected in ΔR (P = 0.030). Therefore, some evidence of remineralisation was captured between sample days in the lesions which were exposed to the dH2O condition.

In the Ca-lactate condition, no significant differences were found between sample days for ΔΔZ, ΔLD, ΔR or ΔS_max (P ≥ 0.234). However, from what is visually apparent from the data present in Figure 8.3.2, the cause of this was a lack of difference between samples which were extracted on either occasion when in fact some reduction in the lesion parameters was evident for all of the pre-made
lesions which were included within these units. Further to this interpretation, the magnitude of the changes in all parameters was small and given a combined error of 400 %Vol.µm for ΔΔZ and 10 µm for ΔLD [Arends and ten Bosch, 1992], unequivocal difference following exposure of the lesions within either dCDFF condition could not be concluded definitively.

Unfortunately, all enamel groove structures were severely damaged during the TMR sectioning process. In this case, visual inspection was not possible due to the extent of the damage and the limited number of section which were included. However, visual inspection was performed on the enamel lesions which were extracted from smooth surfaces of both the initially sound enamel tissues and those in which artificial lesions had been created prior to insertion into the dCDFF. Inspection under radiographic examination was able to confirm that surface loss was not apparent in any of the section as a continuous edge was visible between both exposed an un-exposed areas.
8.3.3 Organic Acid, Anion and Cation Analysis

In both anion and cation separation, all traces were able to be analysed by the CE technique. However, an unusual area was noted around the expect zone for phosphate and butyrate peaks in anions separations (Figure 8.3.9). Nevertheless baseline adjustments were applied to the peaks within this area and data also collected but was interpreted with caution. Further to this, several unidentified peaks were detected during these separations although the presence of these did not hinder the interpretation of the chosen analytes. Cation separations performed well and thus all traces were able to be analysed fully.

As with previous separations, lactate was the most abundant organic acid detected following the sucrose exposures and this was true for both Ca-Lactate and dH₂O condition (Figure 8.3.10). As expected, lactate was significantly higher within the PF of samples from the Ca-Lactate condition than in those from the dH₂O condition on both sample days (P < 0.001). However, between the samples taken on the 8th and 16th days, a significant increase in lactate was found in the Ca-Lactate condition (P = 0.017) whereas no such difference was found between sample which were extracted from the dH₂O condition (P = 0.537). It would therefore be suggested that continued exposure to both NaF and Ca-lactate led to a greater accumulation of the lactate ion within the PF phase than with exposure to NaF alone. Acetate was again the second most predominant organic acid. Here significant differences were again found between dCDFF conditions (Figure 8.3.11). However, unlike lactate, the relationship was not found to be as consistent. Acetate was initially measured as higher (P = 0.038) in the dH₂O condition but by the 16th day of the experiment higher PF concentrations were found in the Ca-lactate condition (P = 0.002). However, it should be noted that both the magnitude of the difference and the absolute magnitude of the concentration also increased. To this end, the increase between sample days 8 and 16 was highly significant in both cases (P < 0.001).
Figure 8.3.10 (PF Lactate Concentrations): Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD (n = 3). Significant differences (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions are denoted by a single asterisk (*) whereas a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) is denoted by a double asterisk (**).

Figure 8.3.11 (PF Acetate Concentrations): Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities. Error bars represent the SD (n = 3). Significant differences (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions are denoted by an asterisk (*) whereas a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) is denoted by a double asterisk (**).
Succinate and propionate were also detected in small quantities in all of the samples which were analysed; these data are presented along with their relative contribution to PF composition in Figure 8.3.12a, 8.3.12b, 8.3.12c and 8.3.12d correspondingly for sample day and dCDFF condition. With respect to propionate, no significant difference was found between measurements which were made on the 8th sample day (P = 0.530) between conditions or between the 8th and 16th days of the dH2O condition (P = 0.951). However a significant increase did occur between the 8th an 16th days within the Ca-lactate condition (P = 0.002) which thus lead to significantly levels of acetate in the PF of biofilms extracted from the Ca-lactate than those extracted from the dH2O condition (P = 0.003).

An increase in the levels of succinate production was also detected in both conditions between the 8th and 16th days (P ≤ 0.003) although the increase was most pronounce within the PF samples which were extracted from the dH2O condition. On the 8th sample day, the PF concentration of succinate was higher in the samples taken from the Ca-lactate condition (P = 0.005) however, due to the reduced rate of accumulation (or production) noted above, significantly greater concentrations were found in the samples extracted from the dH2O on the 16th sample day (P = 0.006).

As is evident from the Figure 8.3.12a to 8.3.12d, formate was detected but not consistently throughout the experiment. On the 8th sample day, it was detected in both dCDFF conditions with a significantly greater amount found in in the Ca-lactate condition (P = 0.002). However by the 16th sample day, the concentrations within PF samples from the dH2O condition had dropped BMDL (62.48 µM) and thus formate was only detected in one of the samples taken from the Ca-lactate condition. Therefore, statistical comparisons within dCDFF units and between sample days were not possible neither were comparisons between conditions on the 16th day.

As was expected from the inconsistencies noted in the anion traces (Figure 8.3.9), some unusual results were found when analysing data which was collected for butyrate. Specifically, an unusually large concentration was detected on the 16th sample day in the dH2O condition (Figure 8.3.12c). This result meant that comparisons between conditions showed no significant difference between dCDFF conditions on the 8th sample day (P = 0.217) or within the Ca-lactate condition between the 8th and 16th sample days (P = 0.247). However, the large difference was found between dCDFF conditions on the 16th sample day (P < 0.001) and between the 8th and 16th sample days within the dH2O condition (P < 0.001).
Influence of Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O Exposure on Biofilm Formation and Caries Potential under NaF Exposures

Figure 8.3.12a (Plaque Fluid Composition on Day 8; Ca-Lactate Condition): All detected analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the PF immediately after a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate was determined as BMDL.

Figure 8.3.12b (Plaque Fluid Composition on Day 8; dH₂O Condition): All detected analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the PF immediately after a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate was determined as BMDL.
Influence of Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O Exposure on Biofilm Formation and Cariogenicity under NaF Exposures | Ch. 8

**Day 16 (Ca-Lactate; Post-Sucrose)**

Figure 8.3.12c (Plaque Fluid Composition on Day 16; Ca-Lactate Condition): All detected analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the PF immediately after a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate and formate were determined as BMDL.

**Day 16 (dH₂O; Post-Sucrose)**

Figure 8.3.12d (Plaque Fluid Composition on Day 16; dH₂O Condition): All detected analytes are shown in their relative contributions to the PF immediately after a 15 minute sucrose pulse. Concentrations (Mean ± SD; µM) for each are listed adjacent to the segment labels. Nitrate was determined as BMDL.
As would be expected, fluoride was detected in both dCDFF units and on both of the sample days (Figure 8.3.13). On the 8th sample day, no significant difference was found between dCDFF conditions (P = 0.993). However by the 16th day, a relative reduction in the dH₂O condition (P = 0.001) resulted in comparatively higher concentrations in the Ca-lactate condition (P = 0.004) although within the Ca-lactate condition no change in PF fluoride occurred between the 8th and 16th days (P = 0.972). Thus from these data, it appeared that the retention of fluoride was high in the presence of NaF with or without Ca-lactate pre-rinses however in the longer term, a greater degree of retention persisted with the inclusion of Ca-lactate within the exposure strategy.

![Figure 8.3.13 (PF Fluoride Concentrations):](image)

**Figure 8.3.13 (PF Fluoride Concentrations):** Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities and a conversion into parts per million [ppm] is provided for each set. Error bars represent the SD (n = 3). Significant differences (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions are denoted by an asterisk (*) whereas a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) is denoted by a double asterisk (**).

Phosphate was significantly higher (P ≤ 0.031) on both sampling occasions in the Ca-Lactate condition (Figure 8.3.14). Furthermore, under both exposures an increase occurred between the sample day 8 and sample day 16 which was, again, significant in both cases (P ≤ 0.004). However, as was noted for butyrate, the point at which phosphate peaks emerged on the CE traces was subject to interference. This did appear consistently between all samples and automatic integration fixes were applied to compensate but interpretation of the results did suffer. As such, inaccuracies in the absolute magnitude of each peak may have been most affected (albeit at a minimum due to the integration fixes applied) however, in a relative sense difference between the phosphate measured in each condition and at each sample point were considered reliable.
Influence of Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O Exposure on Biofilm Formation and Cariogenicity under NaF Exposures

**Figure 8.3.14 (PF Phosphate Concentrations):** Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities and error bars represent the SD (n = 3). Significant differences (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions are denoted by an asterisk (*).

**Figure 8.3.15 (PF Ammonium Concentrations):** Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities and error bars represent the SD (n = 3). Significant differences (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions are denoted by an asterisk (*) whereas a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) is denoted by a double asterisk (**).
In both dH₂O and Ca-lactate conditions, the concentration of PF ammonium almost doubled over the course of the experiment (Figure 8.3.15). In both cases this increase was highly significant (P < 0.001). A small difference was observed between dCDFF conditions and in general, lower concentrations were found in the PF extracted from the Ca-lactate. As is illustrated in Figure 8.3.15, this difference did not reach significance on the 8th sample day (P = 0.119) but did between measurements taken on the 16th (P = 0.022).

PF sulphate concentrations remained stable between the data sets which were available from the dH₂O condition (P = 0.269) however a significant increase occurred between sample day 8 and 16 in the Ca-lactate condition (P = 0.007). This increase coupled with the steady-state within the dH₂O condition meant that initially non-dissimilar results on the 8th day (P = 0.612) had become significantly higher in the Ca-lactate condition by the 16th day (P = 0.001).

![Figure 8.3.16](image.png)

**Figure 8.3.16 (PF Calcium Concentrations):** Concentrations are expressed in mM quantities and error bars represent the SD (n = 3). Significant differences (P < 0.050) between dCDFF conditions are denoted by an asterisk (*) whereas a highly significant difference (P < 0.001) is denoted by a double asterisk (**).

Calcium was higher in biofilms which were exposed to both NaF and Ca-lactate (P ≤ 0.001). On both sampling occasions, the concentration within the PF was over double and, on the 16th day, treble that which was found in the condition where Ca-lactate was not included (Figure 8.3.16). However, from the 8th day to 16th day PF calcium was significantly lower in the samples which were extracted from the dH₂O condition (P = 0.012) whereas the opposite occurred in the PF of biofilms from the
Ca-lactate condition \( (P = 0.004) \). Therefore, the results demonstrated both a higher PF calcium concentration and indicated a level of enrichment when exposed to Ca-lactate. However, due to lack of resolution in the longitudinal aspect of the data, the precise relationship concerning the enrichment of PF calcium given this external source remains to be seen.

An interesting relationship was also found within the levels of magnesium. Under exposure to NaF alone, a gradual increase occurred within the PF \( (P = 0.004) \). In the Ca-lactate condition, no difference was found between the sample sets from this condition \( (P = 0.195) \). Furthermore, PF magnesium was initially lower on the 8th day in the dH2O condition \( (P = 0.002) \) but the fact that an increase occurred under these conditions meant that by the end of the experiment PF magnesium was indistinguishable between dCDFF condition by the end of the experiment \( (P = 0.483) \). It would therefore be indicate that the adjunct effect of Ca-lactate within this model resulted in an accelerated accumulation of magnesium although over a 16-day period, PF magnesium was able to reach a comparable level under exposure to NaF alone.

Chloride remained constant throughout the Ca-lactate condition \( (P = 0.061) \) however in the dH2O condition the PF concentrations decreased significantly between the 8th and 16th days \( (P = 0.007) \). On the 8th sample day there was no significant difference between either condition \( (P = 0.335) \) but the reduction which occurred in PF samples from the dH2O condition meant that significantly higher chloride concentrations were found in the Ca-Lactate condition by the end of the experiment \( (P = 0.001) \).

The remaining 2 analytes which were alluded (sodium and potassium) followed similar trends to that which was found for chloride in that concentrations were numerically higher in PF samples from the Ca-lactate condition and within the dH2O condition concentrations decreased over the course of the experiment. Further to the comparisons with PF chloride, no significant change PF potassium occurred over the course of the experiment in the Ca-lactate condition \( (P = 0.648) \) whereas a significant decrease was detected in the dH2O condition \( (P = 0.023) \). However this was not true for sodium, in this instance PF concentrations remained constant throughout both conditions \( (P \geq 0.118) \). Between conditions, a similarity to chloride was seen between chloride and both sodium and potassium in that, as noted above for chloride, no significant difference was found between biofilms which were exposed to either Ca-lactate or dH2O on the 8th day \( (P \geq 0.120) \) but by the 16th sample day concentration were comparatively lower in the dH2O condition \( (P \leq 0.001) \).
8.4.0 Discussion

8.4.1 Microbial Composition of Plaque Biofilms
The inclusion of Ca-lactate into the exposure strategy appeared to have a strong effect on the microbial populations as a whole. However, in line with the concept proposed by Bowden and Brownstone [Unpublished], the addition of an external source of lactate did not alter the population of Veillonella spp. (Figure 8.3.5) in any way which was not seen for any of the other microbial groups which were sampled [Bowden, 1993]. However, it did appear that the proliferation of each of the microbial groups was altered in some way. For FA (Figure 8.3.1), Streptococcus spp. (Figure 8.3.3), MS (Figure 8.3.4) and Veillonella spp. (Figure 8.3.5), viable counts rose to noticeably higher proportions in the absence of Ca-lactate exposures whereas in its presence, the proliferation of each of these groups appeared to be suppressed. The only exception to this was for Lactobacillus spp. (Figure 8.3.2) where the growth within the Ca-lactate condition was initially suppressed but went on the show an increase by the end of the experiment. In explanation of this finding, it appeared that the viable counts of Lactobacillus spp. were initially lower by the 8th day with the increase being unusual as if the result of a population bloom [Skopek et al., 1993]. Members of this genera which were able to best exploit the conditions within these particular biofilms would tend to proliferate [Kinniment et al., 1996; Marsh, 1994]. However, the observed result for Lactobacillus spp. may be distinct but within the EPH [Marsh, 1994] as the ability to actively compete would be conferred to all aciduric organisms within a cariogenic biofilm but changes in the proportions of species within the aciduric class can occur as a natural process of succession takes place.

Microbial communities possess a wide range of regularity mechanisms which enable them to effectively react to their environment [Hojo et al., 2009]. One such class of reactions are known as negative-feedback loops whereby the accumulation of an end product results in a decrease in the production of the said product. This usually occurs when the end product is toxic in some way and thus the continued production would be deleterious to the survival of the organism. The production of lactate may be one such case. It has been shown that the pH which is induced by the production of this acid can inhibit the metabolism of pH sensitive microbes [Iwami and Yamada, 1980] however Dibdin and Shellis [1988] demonstrated that the addition of neutralised lactate to Streptococcus mutans biofilms resulted in a marked decrease in acid production. Brudevold et al. [1985] explained this on the basis of the buffering capacity of the lactate anion as opposed to an impact of the microbial community directly. Nevertheless, inhibitory activity has been observed in batch culture under controlled pH [Hongo et al., 1986] indicating that some effect on the microbial population may exist which has yet to be described in full.
8.4.2 Comparative Plaque Fluid Composition

Initially, the data concerning the PF composition of the previous dCDFF experiments which included NaF exposures (Section 7.3.3) did not allow for comparisons with the present work as the biofilms here had reached distinctly later stages of maturity. However, the comparisons over what effect Ca-lactate may have had are still possible. For example, an interesting observation was made for PF acetate (Figure 8.3.11). Although viable counts of FA, *Streptococcus spp.* and MS appeared suppressed in the Ca-lactate condition of the present work, PF acetate was significantly higher by the 16th day of the experiment. As was described for the additive effect of calcium and fluoride in altering biofilm structure [Rose and Turner, 1998], if the diffusive entry of sugars was in fact increased under exposure to Ca-lactate then this may explain the greater metabolic activity during a cariogenic challenge [Dibdin and Shellis, 1988] suggested by elevated PF acetate. However, due to the ubiquity of hetero-fermentative pathways [Davis, 1955; Hosseini et al., 2011; Kleinberg, 2002; Marsh and Martin, 2009a; Thomas et al., 1979; Wijeyeweera and Kleinberg, 1989a], it is also likely that part of the increase in lactate observed between the 8th and 16th days in the Ca-lactate condition may have also been the result of microbial fermentation.

8.4.2.1 Organic Acid Production

An enhanced ability for fermentation is also indicated by the comparatively greater amounts of formate and propionate detected in the Ca-lactate condition by the 16th day of the experiment. However, contrary to this, succinate production rose to greater levels in the dH₂O condition. The reason for this may have been due to changes in the un-quantified microbial population such as *Bifidobacterim spp.*, *Prevotella spp.* and *Wollinella spp.* although without quantification of these genera it would not be possible to make any firm conclusion on how the concentrations of these analytes were affected. In order to perform such definitive analysis, an approach inclusive of detailed species identification in conjunction with metabolic capacity would be required [Nyvad et al., 2013]. To this end, butyrate production may have also shed further light on changes in metabolic activity under exposure to Ca-lactate but the difficulties which occurred during separations of this analyte (Figure 8.3.9) did not provide an acceptable level of consistency.

Interestingly higher concentrations of PF sulphate were also found in the Ca-lactate condition however these concentrations were very low and therefore were most likely a product of equilibrium with STGM (Figure 4.3.5). The concentrations of PF magnesium were also unusual as these were initially lower in the dH₂O condition but, by the end of the experiment, PF concentrations had reached statistically similar values. Magnesium was, again, a minor constitute although its presence is unexpected as calcium is known to displace magnesium from biological reservoirs afforded by the bacterial cells and their surface antigens [Rose, 1996; Rose and Hogg, 1995].
However, a greater production of negatively charged binding sites in response to the stress induced by high calcium exposures [Rølla et al., 1978] would also provide further binding sites for magnesium. Therefore, in biofilms which had continually been exposed Ca-lactate, a greater capacity for magnesium binding may have also occurred in the earlier stages thus explaining the greater PF magnesium concentrations detected throughout this condition (compared with the delay in accumulation which was found in the biofilms produced within the dH₂O condition).

PF concentrations of potassium, sodium and chloride behaved in a similar manner although the concentrations were (as with previous results in Section 6.3.3) much lower than what would be expected from in vivo plaque [Margolis and Moreno, 1994]. In the context of the present work, concentrations were numerically lower in the NaF condition than in the Ca-lactate condition where these PF concentrations remained stable over the course of the experiment. In the dH₂O condition, concentrations sequentially dropped to a point which had become significant by the 16th day. The concept that a more diffusive structure had been maintained under exposure to Ca-lactate (which thus allowed for equilibrium with the STGM; Figure 4.3.5) is supported by this trend.

Ammonium production increased in both conditions and, although concentrations were slightly higher in the dH₂O condition, similar values were obtained for both conditions (Figure 8.3.15). Given a higher proportion of viable bacterial counts in the dH₂O condition, greater concentrations of this metabolic end product are not surprising. Bacteria such as Actinomyces naeslundii, Streptococcus sanguinis and Streptococcus mutans have all been shown to possess significant arginolytic activity within mixed cultures [Wijeyeweera and Kleinberg, 1989a]. The proportion of viable MS did increase between the 8th and 16th days (Figure 8.3.4) although a group directly indicative of Actinomyces spp. was not recorded. Alterations in the proportions of these bacteria may have thus occurred outside the scope of the sampling methods applied but what is indicated by the trends in ammonium is that the collective physiology of the biofilms shifted towards a greater capacity for ammonia production in both dCDFF conditions. If diffusion out of the biofilm was a contributing factor then this would have confounded results. Although, as noted previously, further structural analysis [Hope and Wilson, 2006; Wood et al., 2000] would be necessary to quantify this aspect.

8.4.2.2 Mineral Ion Reservoirs
Chander et al. [1982] have argued that phosphate in solution may result in a gradual phase transition of CaF₂ to fluorapatite through surface adsorption of HPO₄²⁻ and subsequent crystal growth [Chander et al., 1982]. Whilst this is certainly possible, the theory lacks relevance to the in vivo situation as a source of phosphate is ubiquitous in both plaque biofilms and saliva (this being true in these in vitro biofilms and the STGM also). Thus, the particulates which are expected to form
are more similar to CaF$_2$ with inclusion of HPO$_4^{2-}$ within the lattice and hence, CaF$_2$-like deposits [Christoffersen et al., 1995]. These deposits are more disordered than pure CaF$_2$ although continued exposure to phosphate from the oral environment increases their persistence as a result of a phase transition in the outermost layer [Kanaya et al., 1983]. An intriguing possibility is the use of this mechanism to aide in persistence of this reservoir so as that a source of both calcium and fluoride remain available [Rølla and Saxegaard, 1990; ten Cate, 1997]. It therefore follows that the production of such deposits is an advantage however the optimisation of this reservoir may require further work [Vogel, 2011]. In addressing this problem, the current investigation demonstrated some level of enhanced retention of fluoride under exposure to Ca-lactate (Figure 8.3.13).

By the 8$^{th}$ day of the experiment, no difference was found in the levels of PF fluoride following a cariogenic challenge however, by the end of the experiment, the amount of fluoride which remained in the biofilms from the dH$_2$O condition was significantly less than that which was found in the Ca-lactate condition (Figure 8.3.13). Pearce [1998] pointed out that cyclic demineralising challenges may deplete the mineral reservoirs within plaque biofilms but the formation of a more extensive mineral reservoir would presumably persist for longer. Depending on the surface area of the mineral deposits within and the severity or duration of the acidic challenges, the release of fluoride from these reservoirs need not be related to the bulk mass of the mineral but the number of acidic challenges which the reservoir would persist under may be more closely dependent on this. Thus, throughout the course of each 16 h exposure cycle (Figure 8.2.2), the fluoride made available from inorganic mineral reservoirs may have lasted longer in the Ca-lactate condition although this would not be captured at the point in the cycle where samples were taken as both conditions would, presumably, support the formation of CaF$_2$-like deposits (Figure 4.4.4). In this instance, PF samples extracted at later stages in the 16 h cycle would have been an advantage. Given heightened PF calcium concentration within the biofilms sampled from the Ca-lactate conditions (Figure 8.3.16), the driving force for mineral precipitation and hence the propensity to form mineral deposits would be greater in this condition. However, this does not explain the relative reduction which occurred in PF fluoride on the 16$^{th}$ day of the biofilm produced in the dH$_2$O condition (Figure 8.3.13).

The penetration of fluoride though mature biofilms is, however, limited [Watson et al., 2005]. Alteration in structure or diffusive nature of the biofilms when under exposure to Ca-lactate is one possible avenue by which the increase in retention may have occurred. However, given the sampling methods which were applied, direct quantification of this aspect was not possible. If a more open structure had indeed developed in the biofilms which were produced within the Ca-lactate condition then both a greater area for the formation of mineral deposits would have been provided along with
greater access to sucrose [Stewart, 2003]. In this case the net effect would be maintenance of an enhanced release following a cariogenic challenged. Further to this, the data illustrated in Figure 8.3.13 shows that PF fluoride was initially high under both conditions but fell lower in the dH₂O condition over time. With heightened PF calcium concentrations saturation of the negatively charged binding sites between cells may have occurred [Rose et al., 1996] and therefore acted to reduce the capacity of mono-dentate cation bridging thus increasing the space between biofilm cells [Rose and Turner, 1998]. It should also be noted that fluoride also possesses this same effect of reducing cation bridging and increasing the extracellular volume [Rose and Turner, 1998] however continually high exposures to Ca-lactate may have maintained saturation of the microbial binding sites and therefore led to the development of a more open structure than occurred in the dH₂O condition. In effect, the penetration of fluoride would be gradually reduced in biofilms which experienced lower exposures to calcium and hence it’s potential to form mineral or biological reservoirs would be less than that in the biofilms produced within the Ca-lactate condition.

Free calcium within the PF has also been implicated in effecting remineralisation [ten Cate, 1994] and plaque calcium has been shown to correlate negatively with caries incidence [Ashley, 1975]. Therefore it is conceivable that any agent which introduces calcium would enhance the process of remineralisation and inhibit demineralisation by increasing the effect imparted on the saturation of the PF [Reussner et al., 1977; van der Hoeven et al., 1989]. However, the question over how long these elevated levels persist within the biofilm is still open to debate [Vogel, 2011]. As noted above, mineral reservoirs would add some increased protective effect by increasing the time for which calcium is available as, during an acidic challenge, it would be released from these reservoirs [ten Cate, 1997; Vogel, 2011]. However, the production of microbial calcium-binding surface structures (such as LTA [Rølla et al., 1978]) has also been suggested to act as a possible calcium-buffering mechanism providing protection from elevated calcium during demineralisation of the mineral substratum [Rose and Dibdin, 1995]. Presumably, the elevated calcium which was introduced following exposure to Ca-lactate would also elicit this same protective response and therefore the biological reservoir active within these in vitro biofilms would be enhanced in the Ca-lactate condition. Unfortunately, it was not possible to delineate the source of PF calcium within this condition as heightened concentrations PF lactate were also detected (Figure 8.3.10) suggesting that a proportion of Ca-lactate had also persisted within these biofilms. As Ca-lactate would provide calcium and lactate in molar ratios of 1:1 and the PF lactate was essentially doubled in the Ca-lactate condition (Figure 8.3.10) but PF calcium more than trebled (Figure 8.3.16). It could also be suggested that a significant proportion of the calcium detected was present in some other form than as free ions which remained following the addition of Ca-lactate [Brudevold et al., 1985] (i.e. bound within
mineral or biological reservoirs which were released following the cariogenic challenge). The formation of a mineral reservoir may also explain the difference observed between the present results and that of Kashket and Yaskell [1992] where calcium introduced from Ca-lactate was depleted from in situ biofilms to a point equal to that of the negative control within 45 min. In the present work, elevated PF calcium was detected some 8 h following exposure to Ca-lactate and crucially following exposure to sucrose. Thus, the formation of mineral reservoirs may serve to explain the detection of elevated PF calcium that occurred after such a period of time.

The influence of the overnight period on the formation of any mineral deposit is also an important point. In comparison to the natural human mouth, the CDFF mode of operation [Pratten, 2005] is dissimilar in that the supply of salivary growth medium is kept constant throughout a 24h period. However, in the human mouth, salivary flow rates are known to experience fluctuations [Dawes, 2004a] whereby the salivary flow rate decreases to almost negligible during sleep [Dawes, 2008]. In this in vitro model the changes in salivary flow rates were not accounted for in the interest of controlling variable factors however it would be reasonable to assume that the enhanced salivary flow rate in the period between cariogenic challenges may have altered the retention of either exposure solution. If both calcium and fluoride were retained for extended periods of time, the transition of relatively unstable CaF$_2$-like mineral deposits to a more stable phase [Rølla and Saxegaard, 1990] would be enhanced. Thus, if “sleep” patterns were included within this model, mineral reservoirs may have formed to a greater extent or a further phase transition to fluorapatite may have formed therefore trapping the more soluble phase within [ten Cate, 1997; Vogel, 2011]. In this instance, release following a cariogenic challenge would possibly be reduced. However, in order to investigate the actual effects of this, further (possibly non-biological) experimental procedures or tests based on alkali solubility would be required [Vogel, 2011].

Phosphate was marginally, although significantly, higher in the Ca-lactate condition when compared to the dH$_2$O condition (Figure 8.3.14). In this case an increase occurred within both conditions demonstrating that PF phosphate increased over the course of the experiment. Substratum demineralisation was not apparent in either of these conditions (Table 8.3.1) and therefore the release of phosphate from the substrata is unlikely. A fraction which was released during the breakdown of relatively high phosphate-containing CaF$_2$-like deposits [Rølla and Saxegaard, 1990] may explain the higher concentrations detected within the PF of biofilms extracted from the Ca-lactate condition. However, anabolic uptake by the biofilm bacteria [Higham and Edgar, 1989] is likely to be a contributing factor. As viable counts were generally higher in the dH$_2$O condition (Figure 8.3.1, Figure 8.3.3, Figure 8.3.4 and Figure 8.3.5), this route is also a plausible explanation of the lower phosphate concentrations found in this condition when compared to those biofilms which
were grown under exposure to Ca-lactate. It should, however, be noted that phosphate concentrations were considerably lower than those found by other authors [Edgar et al., 1986; Edgar and Higham, 1990; Gao et al., 2001] or in previous dCDFF conditions which did not include NaF or Ca-lactate rinses (Figure 6.3.6).

8.4.3 TMR of dCDFF Exposed Enamel Disks
From the results generated within both dCDFF units, it was clear that the addition of fluoride alone was able to inhibit demineralisation of the enamel sections and that the added effect of Ca-lactate showed no further advantaged over NaF alone on sound enamel surfaces (Table 8.3.1). This finding was in agreement with the in situ experiments conducted by Furlani et al. [2009] however the disparity in the measured retention of calcium and fluoride may have due to the extraction methods used. The present work measures calcium and fluoride once released from (presumed) biofilm reservoirs following a presumed cariogenic challenge whereas that performed by Furlani et al. [2009] measured calcium and fluoride following acid extraction from liable sources. However, some greater mineral loss was detected within the lesions extracted from the Ca-lactate condition of the present work. Unfortunately, this particular sample set was severely limited and therefore the differences found were attributed to an anomalous result within this sample. As discussed previously (Section 4.4.1), the solubility, and hence density, of enamel mineral is altered on approach to the EDJ [Anderson and Elliott, 2000; Theuns et al., 1986a] due to both the increasing disorder of the tissue [Shellis, 1984, 1996] and chemical gradients [Theuns et al., 1986b]. ELT of the enamel disk from which this particular surface was measured was also abnormally thin probably due to over abrasion in the production of the disk. Further to this, the tissue also demonstrated an unusual profile which was thought to fault the TMR analysis software although microscope inspection of the radiographs did not indicate demineralisation.

The lack of evidence for demineralisation within either condition is not surprising as both NaF [Biesbrock et al., 2001; Damato et al., 1990; Lynch et al., 2004; Sullivan et al., 1995] and Ca-lactate [Brudevold et al., 1985; Furlani et al., 2009; Kashket and Yaskell, 1992] alone have been shown to inhibit the process. In conjunction, the formation of CaF$_2$-like deposits is thought to provide an enhanced protective effect [Pessan et al., 2006; Vogel et al., 2008]. Given the detection of heightened calcium (Figure 8.3.16) and fluoride (Figure 8.3.13) some 8 h after the exposure, the production of an enhanced reservoir with the use of a Ca-lactate pre-rinse condition is easily conceivable. However, appreciable concentrations of fluoride were also detected in the absence of Ca-lactate (Figure 8.3.13). Therefore, the enhanced effect of the Ca-lactate pre-rinse is difficult to be certain of. When only an initially sound surface is employed, the detection of remineralisation is difficult but transition to a denser mineral phase may be detectable [Arends and ten Bosch, 1992].
Demineralisation of the initial mineral would first be required to provide an opportunity for exchange or precipitation.

However, because the presence of Ca-lactate masked the anion lactate within the biofilm, no real indication of the acidity was gained. It may have therefore been possible that the biofilms within this particular condition were less acidogenic but considering acetate production (Figure 8.3.11), no indication was found that the biofilm’s metabolism was strongly affected. Moreover, substantial concentrations of lactate were detected in the NaF condition indicating that here, at least, an acidogenic biofilm community was produced. In this instance, the pH of the biofilm following a cariogenic challenge [Pratten and Wilson, 1999] would have been a desirable parameter to measure. Alternatively, if cariogenicity can first be established within the model, alterations can be monitored following the introduction of a given agent and this would enable confirmation of anti-caries activity both on an established community and on active caries lesions.

The inclusion of pre-made enamel lesions was therefore a beneficial foresight as the pre-fabrication of a demineralised tissue structure was able to capture a degree of remineralisation which differed between either dCDFF conditions (Figure 8.3.8). Although significant differences were found between the 8th and 16th days in the dH2O condition some level of remineralisation was apparent in all of the enamel lesions which were analysed. The significant change in ΔΔZ was attributed to ΔR and indicated that the major change between these lesions was in the degree of mineralisation in the body of the lesions. However, these calculations only demonstrated that a change in lesion character was captured and therefore, the lack of any difference between groups in the Ca-lactate condition did not show that remineralisation failed take place but rather that the degree of remineralisation had not increased between sample extracted on the 8th and 16th days of the experiment. In this case, remineralisation appeared to occur at an earlier point and did not proceed past this point in the Ca-lactate condition (Figure 8.3.8). A relatively higher SD was the cause of a lack of significance between these measurements. Even when mineral content is assessed within the same tissue section, variation is a known complication of the process [Lippert et al., 2012]. This effect would be expected to be exacerbated within a complex biological model and when considering site specific variations in the tissue [Robinson et al., 1995a; Shore et al., 1995b].

From the data collected, it appeared that the increased level of calcium (Figure 8.3.16) and fluoride (Figure 8.3.13) afforded by the use of a Ca-lactate pre-rinse led to an enhancement of the rate of remineralisation. However, the ultimate efficacy of this strategy was no greater than that of fluoride exposure alone. One possible explanation for this could be enhanced remineralisation of the SL (S\text{Max}). Although this parameter did not change to any manifold degree between baseline and post
exposure measurements, occlusion of the diffusion pores [Pessan et al., 2011] within the outer areas of the tissue may have resulted from the formation of de novo mineral phase which was not detected by the current radiographic technique (TMR). SEM of the lesion surface flowing extraction from the dCDFF may provide a better indication over such fine changes in the porosity of the tissue. In effect, heightened concentrations of mineral ions may induce mineral deposition to a point of preventing penetration into the tissue and thus preventing lesion remineralisation also.

Unfortunately, the analysis of artificial groove structures did not prove an effective means of simulating aspects of the natural occlusal surface within this model. Due to the fragility of the enamel sections [Lagerweij et al., 1996], TMR analysis was not possible on a representative sample set. However, their inclusion did not impact on the on the assessment of smooth surface sites or on the number of sampling occasions which can be designated for analysis (ie. PF or microbial composition). Therefore, their exclusion in furthered studies is not necessary in an economic sense.

8.5.0 Conclusions

PF analysis provides valuable information on both the mineral dynamics and metabolic activity with plaque biofilms. However, pH may be a desirable parameter to measure but only if permitted by the number of sampling occasions required. Ultimately, the information gained by CE analysis of the PF provides a measure of acidogenicity and inorganic ion and thus far greater information than pH measurements alone. Therefore, measurements of acidity at the expense of those which were currently collected cannot be justified.

Evidently, Ca-lactate has some beneficial effects on reducing the viable proportions of bacteria when applied during biofilm formation. However, the specific ecological modifications could not be concluded fully. In depth studies may still be warranted to further investigate the role of this agent in an antimicrobial or anti-biofilm sense, possibly in the absence of fluoride [Shrestha et al., 1982]. Results from the present work were however In-line with that of other authors [van der Hoeven et al., 1989], Ca-lactate pre-rinse appeared to elevate PF calcium and F concentrations. In this way, provided a more effective means of remineralisation in the short term although no additive effect occurs over NaF alone [Furlani et al., 2009]. This was true when considering both sound surfaces and longer-term exposures.

Further to this, agents were only investigated on the basis of their effect on biofilm formation. In many areas of the mouth, mature biofilms persist at inaccessible sites [Batchelor and Sheiham, 2004; Carvalho et al., 1989; Hannigan et al., 2000]. Assessing the effects of anti-caries agents on mature cariogenic biofilms would provide greater insight into possible alterations to established microbial ecology and further allow their efficacy to be tested on a definitively cariogenic community.
Chapter 9: Effect of NaF and Ca-Lactate vs. dH2O Exposures on the Cariogenicity of Established Biofilm Communities.

9.1.0 Introduction
Deng et al. [2005] identified the importance of a lead-in period in monitoring the physiological activity of in vitro biofilms before the introduction of an adjunct agent. In previous works within this thesis, the onus has been on investigating the factors which effect biofilm formation however the effects of anti-cariogenic strategies on established biofilm communities may provide further insight into potential alterations in the biofilm community [Marsh and Bradshaw, 1997]. The establishment of a mature biofilm community would allow the initial state of the microbial ecology before the introduction of the agent to be compared to that following its introduction [Deng et al., 2005]. Further to this, established plaque biofilms exhibit a greater degree of anti-microbial resistance which is afforded by the development of the biofilm structure [Gilbert et al., 2002] and therefore the effect(s) observed previously for NaF and NaF in conjunction with Ca-lactate may differ once the biofilm community has developed.

Difference in the ecological state of biofilms grown under exposure to NaF (Section 7.3.1) were partially attributed to unforeseen variations in the primary culture as it would relate to the minute difference in the inoculum used [Ledder et al., 2006]. Moreover, regular exposures to a selective pressure such as that imposed by NaF exposure may alter the trajectory of community’s development. Whilst this is a worthwhile avenue to consider, several aspects such as role of colonisation resistance [Marsh and Martin, 2009a] cannot be investigated with this experimental design. Alterations in biofilm structure during formation was also suspected to play a role in the observed results during Ca-lactate exposures (Section 8.3.2 and Section 8.3.3). However, investigations based on an established biofilm community would effectively remove these factors relative to each biofilm and therefore allow for a more accurate interpretation of the results. Thus, a sequential element has been introduced into the CDFF model [Peters and Wimpenny, 1988] previously employed for the purposes of achieving a steady-state within the microbial ecology [Dibdin and Wimpenny, 1999; Kinniment et al., 1996].

9.1.1 Aims and Objectives
The work present within this chapter aims to test the effects of NaF exposures on established biofilm communities within a sequential CDFF (sCDFF) and compare the efficacy of this model to the previously applied dCDFF design [Hope et al., 2012]. Further to this, the effect of NaF in combination with Ca-lactate will also be investigated as they would compare to the previously observed results.
9.2.0 Materials and Methods

The effect of Ca-Lactate (150 mM) and NaF (300 ppm F⁻) exposures on established biofilm communities were investigated in comparison with dH₂O in a sequential constant-depth film fermenter (sCDFF) model. This model consisted of single CDFF units (larger 15 pan capacity; commissioned from J. Abbott, West Kirby, Merseyside, UK) which were initially run under a 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy along with a FF STGM supply (Figure 5.2.2). Following 8 days of this cycle, either NaF (300 ppm F⁻), Ca-Lactate (150 mM) and NaF (300 ppm F⁻) or no adjunct agent was introduced by way of additional pulsing events immediately outside of the initial sucrose pulsing strategy and for a further 8 days; the division of these pulsing strategies is also illustrated in Figure 9.2.1 (Exp. S, Exp. SN and Exp. SNC respectively). In an effort to maintain adequate hydration of the biofilms during an FF cycle, in conditions where an adjunct agent was not included, the supply of STGM was extended to cover the intermittent periods.

Figure 9.2.1 (sCDFF Pulsing Strategies for NaF vs. Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O): Each CDFF unit was subject to a 50 mM sucrose pulsing strategy (x8/day for 15 min at 0.72 mL.min⁻¹ every 2 h over 16 h of a 24 h cycle). Following this initial period, either NaF (300 ppm F⁻) or NaF (300 ppm F⁻) and Ca-Lactate (150 mM) were introduced to the cycle for a further 8 days. NaF was pulsed in x2/day for 2 min at 3 mL.min⁻¹ immediately before and after the 16h sucrose pulsing period and Ca-Lactate was pulsed in x2/day for 1 min at 10 mL.min⁻¹ immediately after each NaF exposure.
Biofilms were formed from a pooled human salivary inoculum (Section 5.2.1) with a smaller volume of 500 mL and a flow rate of 0.5 mL.min\(^{-1}\) as it was the growth kinetics within the inoculum vessel which was considered of most importance and with the correction in the volume to account for the inoculation of a single CDFF unit. Both enamel (Modus Laboratories, University of Reading, Reading, UK) and HA disks (Clarkson Chromatography Products Inc., South Williamsport, PA, USA) were used as a substratum to support biofilm growth.

Prior to the commencement of the sCDFF experiments, all enamel disks were painted in an acid-resistant varnish (MaxFactor Nailfinity; Procter and Gamble, Weybridge, UK) so that half of the enamel surface was protected from the conditions within the unit. This was achieved by the same means as described in Figures 7.2.1 and 7.2.2 for smooth and fissured enamel surfaces respectively. Sterilisation procedures were kept identical to that previously performed (Section 5.2.2.1).

The apparatus assembly was similar to that used for the dCDFF experiments but with the following differences (Figure 9.2.2): Firstly, the 10 L supply of sterile STGM and the 50 mM sucrose solutions were fed in at a higher flow rate of 0.72 mL.min\(^{-1}\) to correct for the greater surface area of the turntable (with respect to the number of sample pans). Given that a flow-rate of 0.38 mL.min\(^{-1}\) was adopted for an 8-pan CDFF turntable, the flow rate was increased per sample pan in the larger 15-pan CDFF. The STGM and sucrose supply flow-rates were maintained by the use of previously calibrated peristaltic pumps (101U/R Low Flow Peristaltic Pump; Watson Marlow, Falmouth, UK) as were the flow rates for the NaF (300 ppm F; 3 mL.min\(^{-1}\)) and Ca-Lactate (150 mM; 10 mL.min\(^{-1}\)).

Enamel sections were removed from these experiments at 8 and 16 days from the start of the pulsing strategy immediately after the 5\(^{\text{th}}\) sucrose pulse of the day (Section 5.2.5). Sections were then analysed by TMR as described in Section 5.2.4 and statistical analysis applied (Section 2.2.4). HA disks were used in triplicate for the enumeration of bacteria by selective and non-selective culture (Section 5.2.4) on days 2, 4, 8, 12 and 16 of each experiment. This was performed for FA (FAA supplemented with 5% defibrinated horse blood; Section 5.2.4.1), MS (TYCSB; Section 5.2.4.2), Streptococcus spp. (MSA; Section 5.2.4.3), Lactobacillus spp. (Rogosa; Section 5.2.4.4) and Veillonella spp. (Section 5.2.4.5) following the 4\(^{\text{th}}\) sucrose pulse of the day (2:00 PM).
Effect of NaF and Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O Exposures on the Cariogenicity of Established Biofilm Communities | Ch. 9

Figure 9.2.2 (CDFF Schematic Set-Up) a: Sterile STGM; b: Sterile 50 mM Sucrose Solution; c: Peristaltic Pump 0.71 mL min⁻¹; d: Peristaltic Pump 0.71 mL min⁻¹; e: Peristaltic Pump 5.0 mL min⁻¹; f: Peristaltic Pump 3.0 mL min⁻¹; g: Peristaltic Pump 0.5 mL min⁻¹; h: Y-Connector; i: Grow-Back Trap; j: CDFF; k: Inoculum Flask with Magnetic Stirrer; l: Sterile NaF Solution (300 ppm F); m: Ca-Lactate Solution (150 mM); n: Effluent; *: 0.2 µm Air Filter.
9.3.0 Results

9.3.1 Enumeration of Biofilm Bacteria
Viable counts of FA increased throughout the initial phase of the each of the 3 experiments (Figure 9.3.1). However, counts were not collected on sample day 2 of Exp. S S-SUC and Exp. SN. Therefore, comparisons between experiments on this particular day were not possible. From data collected for Exp. SNC, a significant increase occurred between the 2nd and 4th sample days \((P = 0.002)\), this brought the magnitude of viable FA counts from each experiment within a similar range \((P \geq 0.132)\) however, those from Exp. SN were significantly greater than those from EXP. S \((P = 0.021)\). The differences between experiments were most pronounced on the 8th sample day where comparisons between each of the experiments reached significance \((P \leq 0.014)\). In all case however an increase in viable counts was observed between days 4 and 8 \((P \leq 0.002)\) although, as alluded to from the previous point, the magnitude of these changes were different between experiments, the gradient of the growth curves between Exp. SN and Exp. SNC were strikingly similar however the increase observed in the Exp. S experiment progressed at a noticeably lower rate.

Following the introduction of the adjunct agent (the second phase in Exp. SN and Exp. SNC), a response was noted for each experiment. Interestingly, an alteration in the trend also occurred FA within the within Exp. S (where no adjunct agent was introduced). At this point viable counts within Exp. S increased further \((P < 0.001)\) although this occurred at a faster rate between days 8 and 12 than was witnessed between days 4 and 8 (Figure 9.3.1). By the 12th day of this experiment, results indicated that viable counts within the biofilms had become relatively stable where no further increase could be confirmed statistically between sample days 12 and 16 \((P = 0.858)\). In Exp. SN, the introduction of NaF exposures appeared to trigger either dispersal or a reduction in the net viability with respect to FA \((P = 0.001)\). However, as with Exp. S, viable counts again became stable between days 12 and 16 \((P = 0.543)\). By the 16th day, the difference between biofilms which were subsequently exposed to NaF (Exp. SN) and those which were not had reached a point which was indistinguishable \((P = 0.490)\) with respect to viable counts of FA. However, viable counts made from Exp. SNC were far less similar than with the SSUC or SNAF experiments.

Following the introduction of the adjunct agents (day 8) viable counts move from an intermediate position to one far less than either of the other experiments \((P \leq 0.001)\). Between sample days 8 and 12, this reduction failed to reach significance \((P = 0.838)\) but as the trajectory of the decline increased, the reduction in the proportion of the biofilms FA community which remained viable undoubtedly decreased \((P = 0.002)\).
Effect of NaF and Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O Exposures on the Cariogenicity of Established Biofilm Communities | Ch. 9

Figure 9.3.1 (Fastidious Anaerobes; FA): Both initial (white plot area) and secondary (grey plot area) phases are indicated. Error bars represent the SD of the sample sets (n=3). Where comparisons between sCDFF runs on like sample days were possible multiple comparisons for significant differences (P < 0.050) between experiments are denoted alphabetically where a = Exp. S vs. Exp. SN, b = Exp. S vs. Exp. SNC and c = Exp. SN vs. Exp. SNC.

As with FA, Lactobacillus spp. were, not sampled on the 2nd day of Exp. S and Exp. SN, however where the comparisons can be made, a drastic increase in the viable proportion of Lactobacillus spp. occurred. Between days 2 and 4 in Exp. 3 (P < 0.001) viable counts made rose higher than those obtained from both Exp. S (P < 0.001) and Exp. SN (P = 0.047) on the 4th sample day. Between the 4th an 8th sample days, the increase continued within all experiments (P ≤ 0.037). To this end, the most pronounced increase was observed in Exp. S and the least so occurred in Exp. SNC with Exp. SN occupying an intermediate position (Figure 9.3.2).

Following the introduction of the adjunct agent(s), viable counts within Exp. S (where no agent was actually introduced) continued to increase (P < 0.001) until between the 12th and 16th day where counts became stable (P = 0.981). However in Exp. SN, no further increase was detected, rather the proportion of viable Lactobacillus spp. had either stabilised or was suppressed (P ≥ 0.117) by the
introduction of NaF exposures. This same result was found during statistical analysis of the growth curves for Exp. SNC over this same period. Although in Figure 9.3.2 an increase in mean viable counts is evident for samples extracted on the 12th day, multiple comparisons over the entire period following the introduction of NaF and Ca-lactate rinses (Exp. SNC) did not show say statistically significant differences (P ≥ 0.088). This is not to any that no difference actually occurred following the introduction of NaF (Exp. SN) or NaF and Ca-lactate (Exp. SNC). Clearly the proportion of viable microbes displayed some variability over this period however the difference failed statistical significance. Ultimately the proportion of viable Lactobacillus spp. reached a state which was indistinguishable between all 3 experimental conditions (P = 0.078).

![Figure 9.3.2 Lactobacillus spp.](image)

Figure 9.3.2 (Lactobacillus spp.): Both initial (white plot area) and secondary (grey plot area) phases are indicated. Error bars represent the SD of the sample sets (n=3). Where comparisons between SCDFF runs on like sample days were possible multiple comparisons for significant differences (P < 0.050) between experiments are denoted alphabetically where a = Exp. S vs. Exp. SN, b = Exp. S vs. Exp. SNC and c = Exp. SN vs. Exp. SNC

Remarkably concordant results were observed between Exp. SN and Exp. SNC with respect to Streptococcus spp. in the initial phase of the experiments. On days 4 and 8, significant differences
were found between Exp. S and the 2 other experiments (P ≤ 0.032) however no differences were found between Exp. SN and Exp. SNC over this same period (P ≥ 0.459). Furthermore, from what was indicated by the results obtained on day 2 in Exp. SNC, the number of viable *Streptococcus spp.* underwent a marked increase between the 2nd and 4th sample days (P < 0.001). As noted above, by the end of the first phase the numbers of viable counts had reached statistically equivalent values in Exp. SN and Exp. SNC however Exp. S was lower. By the 12th day, counts within Exp. S increased further (P = 0.047) and at a rate which appeared similar to that experienced in Exp. SN and Exp. SNC between days 4 and 8.

![Figure 9.3.3](Streptococcus spp.) Both initial (white plot area) and secondary (grey plot area) phases are indicated. Error bars represent the SD of the sample sets (n=3). Where comparisons between sCDFF runs on like sample days were possible multiple comparisons for significant differences (P < 0.050) between experiments are denoted alphabetically a = Exp. S vs. Exp. SN, b = Exp. S vs. Exp. SNC and c = Exp. SN vs. Exp. SNC.

Following the highest recorded value on sample day 12, viable counts in *Streptococcus spp.* in Exp. S proceeded to decrease by the 16th day of the experiment (P < 0.001) but this was not the case in Exp. SN and Exp. SNC. In the first set of samples taken following the introduction of the adjunct agent(s),
viable counts immediately decreased (P ≤ 0.002) and although this reduction was most pronounced in biofilms which were exposed to both NaF and Ca-lactate (Exp. 3), the difference between counts taken from Exp. 2 and Exp. 3 was not significant (P = 0.070). However by the 16th day of the experiment (P < 0.001), the difference between these two experiments had reached significance. In Exp. 3, biofilms which were exposed to both NaF and Ca-lactate appeared to decrease further with respect to the numbers of viable *Streptococcus* spp. although the difference itself did not reach significance (P = 0.139). The introduction of NaF alone (Exp. 2) appeared to have this same effect initially however, what was indicated was a comparatively heightened recovery.

As far as difference between experiments with respect to MS went, a much less logical order was found (Figure 9.3.4). An extremely sharp increase was observed between days 2 and 8 in Exp. 3 (P < 0.001). Following the introduction of the NaF and Ca-lactate exposures, the biofilms produced within

---

**Figure 9.3.4 (Mutans streptococci; MS):** Both initial (white plot area) and secondary (grey plot area) phases are indicated. Error bars represent the SD of the sample sets (n=3). Where comparisons between sCFF runs on like sample days were possible multiple comparisons for significant differences (P < 0.050) between experiments are denoted alphabetically where a = Exp. S vs. Exp. SN, b = Exp. S vs. Exp. SNC and c = Exp. SN vs. Exp. SNC.
this particular experiment (Exp. SNC) no significant differences were detected between days 8 and 12 and days 12 and 16 (P ≥ 0.139) although across the entire period of the secondary phase a significant reduction did occur (P = 0.018). In Exp. S, the increase in viable counts proceeded to a maximum on the 12th sample day (P < 0.001) and this was then followed immediately by an obvious decrease in the viable numbers by day 16 (P < 0.001). In this instance, no alteration in the growth trends could be attributed to the transition from the initial to the secondary phases. The growth curves generated from Exp. SN were perhaps the most unusual out of the 3 obtained for MS. On the 4th day, viable counts were far greater than what was found in biofilms produced in Exp. S and Exp. SNC (P ≤ 0.001), they did however reach a point at the end of the first phase which was equal to that found in Exp. SNC (P = 0.176). Following the introduction of the second phase, counts reduced around day 12 (P ≤ 0.001). However, the actual point at which the reduction occurred could not be pinpointed from the current data set. It appears that the sudden introduction of NaF to a previously un-exposed biofilm had some effect on the viable members of the MS community although the immediate severity of such an exposure was not captured.

In comparison of MS to the wider groups of *Streptococcus spp.*, concordance was observed between the growth curves obtained from these 2 groups with respect to samples taken from Exp. S. The magnitude of CFU counts were roughly an order of 10 lower in the in MS groups (Figure 9.3.4) than in the *Streptococcus spp.* group (Figure 9.3.3) however the growth curves mirrored each other well. This same fact was true for Exp. SN; on sample days where a relative increases in viable counts occurred, it was visible in both MS and *Streptococcus spp.* groups. To some extent, this relationship was also observed in Exp. SNC although transposition of the curves as they are does not result in such a harmonious correlation. For example, the reduction seen following the introduction of NaF in *Streptococcus spp.* (Figure 9.3.3) coupled with the relative stability of the MS group would indicate that the proportion of the latter (which was made up from the former) had increase more so than one single curve alone would indicate.

*Veillonella spp.* were not sampled from Exp. SN due to complications related to the production of the growth medium however full growth curves were obtained for Exp. S and Exp. SNC (Figure 9.3.5). Where comparisons between experiments on like sample days were possible, *Veillonella spp.* within Exp. S were consistently lower than in Exp. SNC (P ≤ 0.013) but the shape of the growth curve distributions were similar between both experiments. Sharp increases were captured over the initial phases (P ≤ 0.005) and upon transition into the secondary phase, viable counts remained stable between days 8 and 12 in Exp. S (P = 0.996), between days 12 and 16 the apparent reduction in viable counts was again not statistically significant (P = 0.085). However, the comparison between
days 8 and 16 did show a significant reduction ($P = 0.045$). The weak statistical significance of these results would initially indicate a gradual reduction in counts yet the in viewing the growth curves in Figure 9.3.5, the reduction would be much more pronounced than would be initially suggested from the statistical interpretation of the data alone.

Figure 9.3.5 (Veillonella spp.): Both initial (white plot area) and secondary (grey plot area) phases are indicated. Error bars represent the SD of the sample sets ($n=3$). Where comparisons between sCFFF runs on like sample days were possible significant differences ($P < 0.050$) between experiments are denoted alphabetically where c = Exp. S vs. Exp. SNC.

The increase in viable counts of *Veillonella spp.* in Exp. SNC reached a point on day 4 which was similar the numerical maximum ($P = 0.584$) however like Exp. S, a brief steady-state was reached on by the 8th day of the experiment, in all samples taken from the 8th day and following the introduction of NaF and Ca-lactate exposures, no significant difference could be determined ($P \geq 0.999$). This would therefore indicate that given an established biofilm community, the introduction of Ca-lactate and NaF exposures help maintain a level of stability with respect to the composition of *Veillonella spp.*
9.3.2 TMR of sCDFF Exposed Enamel Disks

Aggregated TMR parameters of ΔZ, LD, R and $S_{\text{Max}}$ are listed in Table 9.3.1 along with the number of enamel disks (n) examined at each point. Mean scan profiles are also presented in Figure 9.3.6a, 9.3.6b and 9.3.6c for Exp. S, Exp. SN and Exp. SNC respectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Sample Day</th>
<th>n (Enamel Disks)</th>
<th>ΔZ ± SD</th>
<th>LD ± SD</th>
<th>R ± SD</th>
<th>$S_{\text{Max}}$ ± SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exp. S</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>419.58 ± 194.51</td>
<td>18.84 ± 6.08</td>
<td>21.29 ± 3.33</td>
<td>67.70 ± 9.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exp. S</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>754.08 ± 346.22</td>
<td>34.75 ± 13.23</td>
<td>20.78 ± 2.45</td>
<td>63.12 ± 4.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exp. SN</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>867.92 ± 198.04</td>
<td>36.75 ± 5.94</td>
<td>23.29 ± 2.19</td>
<td>58.60 ± 3.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exp. SN</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>817.33 ± 69.19</td>
<td>32.93 ± 2.91</td>
<td>24.85 ± 1.47</td>
<td>53.76 ± 4.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exp. SNC</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>625.33 ± 177.02</td>
<td>28.38 ± 10.46</td>
<td>22.61 ± 1.95</td>
<td>61.40 ± 4.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exp. SNC</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1477.50 ± 809.83</td>
<td>57.66 ± 26.34</td>
<td>23.98 ± 5.09</td>
<td>54.88 ± 13.37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.3.1 [TMR Parameters of sCDFF Enamel Lesions]: Parameters of integrated mineral loss (ΔZ), lesion depth (LD), average mineral loss (R), and the degree of SL mineralisation ($S_{\text{Max}}$) along with the sample size (n) are listed in-line with sample day and dCDFF condition.

Immediately from the interpretation of the generated mean scan profiles, some level of demineralisation was apparent for each of the experimental conditions. However, the degree which is indicated by the end of the initial phase (day 8) was less than that from the previous experiments (Section 5.3.2). Variation between individual profiles was reasonable in the lesions produced in Exp. S (Figure 9.3.6a) and Exp. SN (Figure 9.3.6b) but was much higher between the lesions which were extracted on the 16th day of Exp. SNC (Figure 9.3.6c).

Figure 9.3.6a (Mean Scan Profiles of Lesions Created in Exp. S): Mean scan profiles taken from the sucrose only (Exp. S) exposure condition. Mineral volume (%Vol) is expressed relative to sound enamel normalised within each individual measurement. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. For day 8, n = 13 and for day 16, n = 23.)
Effect of NaF and Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O Exposures on the Cariogenicity of Established Biofilm Communities

Figure 9.3.6ba (Mean Scan Profiles of Lesions Created in Exp. SN): Mean scan profiles taken from the sucrose and NaF (Exp. SN) exposure condition. Mineral volume (%Vol) is expressed relative to sound enamel normalised within each individual measurement. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. For day 8, n = 20 and for day 16, n = 15.

Figure 9.3.6c (Mean Scan Profiles of Lesions Created in Exp. SNC): Mean scan profiles taken from the sucrose, NaF and Ca-lactate (Exp. SNC) exposure condition. Mineral volume (%Vol) is expressed relative to sound enamel normalised within each individual measurement. Error bars represent the SD of the sample set. For day 8, n = 11 and for day 16, n = 8).
Interestingly, these lesions also differed from those previously created (Section 5.3.2) in that the SL had not formed to the same degree which was created in these earlier experiments under the same FF STGM flow cycle. In the Sucrose only condition (Exp. S) a progression was noted between samples extracted on the 8th and 16th days as expected (Figure 9.3.6a). In Exp. SN, some change in lesion architecture was indicated following the introduction of NaF exposures in that LD and the SL appeared to increase (Figure 9.3.6b). However, in the conditions which included both NaF and Ca-lactate exposures (Figure 9.3.6c), the effect of the introduction of the combined exposures was more difficult to ascertain. As noted above, a high degree of variation occurred within the samples extracted on the 16th day of the experiment (Exp. SNC). However, variation was not the result of error associated with the TMR process itself and further, ELT did not appear to be a contributing factor. Therefore, these sections were not rejected from the sample set.

Statistically, very little differences were found between the enamel lesion both within sCDFF experiments and between conditions. Within Exp. S, no significant difference was found between ΔZ (P = 0.121) or LD (P = 0.057) although these parameters were numerically higher in samples extracted on the 16th day when compared to those extracted on the 8th (Figure 9.3.7a). R remained steady between these sample point (P = 0.789) as did S_max (P = 0.318). Although a decrease in S_max occurred, its origin can be traced to a change in lesion character (Figure 9.3.6a).
Effect of NaF and Ca-Lactate vs. dH2O Exposures on the Cariogenicity of Established Biofilm Communities | Ch. 9

Figure 9.3.7b (TMR Parameters of Lesions Created in Exp. SN): LD (µm), Smax (%Vol) and R (%Vol) share the left axis. ΔZ (%Vol.µm) measurements are plotted on the right for the purposes of clarity. Results correspond to data in Table 9.3.1 and error bars represent the SD of the sample set.

Figure 9.3.7c (TMR Parameters of Lesions Created in Exp. SNC): LD (µm), Smax (%Vol) and R (%Vol) share the left axis. ΔZ (%Vol.µm) measurements are plotted on the right for the purposes of clarity. Results correspond to data in Table 9.3.1 and error bars represent the SD of the sample set. An asterisk indicated a significant difference (P < 0.050) between sample sets.
Within Exp. SN (Figure 9.3.7b), no significant difference was found between $\Delta Z$ ($P = 0.602$), LD ($P = 0.225$), R ($P = 0.207$) or $S_{\text{Max}}$ ($P = 0.083$). Therefore, it was suggested from these results that NaF exposure prevented the progression of an otherwise active enamel lesion. However, dissimilar results were found when comparing the lesions extracted from Exp. SNC (Figure 9.3.7c). In this case, $\Delta Z$ was significantly higher on the 16$\text{th}$ day of the experiment ($P = 0.048$) and the cause of this increase appeared to be related to a relatively greater LD between these lesions ($P = 0.045$) as R did not show any significant difference between either sample day ($P = 0.587$). These results are echoed in the numerical difference apparent in Figure 9.3.7c. In addition, $S_{\text{Max}}$ was also not significantly different ($P = 0.332$) between sample extracted on either day from this condition.

Between experiments, $\Delta Z$ measured from the samples extracted on the 8$\text{th}$ day (before the introduction of the adjunct agents), were significantly lower in the Exp. S and Exp. SNC than was found Exp. SN ($P \leq 0.009$) however Exp. S and Exp. SNC were not significantly different from each other ($P = 0.279$) indicating that the lesion within Exp. SN (Figure 9.3.7b) had progressed to a more advance state by the end of the initial phase of the experiment. In samples extracted on the 16$\text{th}$ day of each experiment, the no significant difference could be found between any of the experiments which were conducted ($P = 0.063$). These same relationships were true of LD where significant differences were found between the lesions which were created in the initial phase of the three experiments ($P = 0.013$) although it was not possible to confirmed any difference statistically between the lesions extracted on the 16$\text{th}$ day ($P = 0.058$). Both R and $S_{\text{Max}}$ did not show any significant difference between experiments when the lesions extracted on the 8$\text{th}$ or 16$\text{th}$ days where compared ($P \geq 0.096$).
9.4.0 Discussion
In the present work, a steady-state [Kinniment et al., 1996] was not strictly achieved before the introduction of the adjunct agent(s). As all biofilm sampled were composed of those genera which are commonly found in the oral environment [Marsh and Martin, 2009a] and no one run lacked these populations entirely. In refection, a more stable microbial population may have been achieved if the sCDFF was allowed to for a longer period of time. However, it is generally accepted that the risk of contamination increases if the CDFF is allowed to remain in operation for extended periods of time. If external contamination could have been avoided completely then factors relating to the physiological state of the biofilm may have also achieved greater concordance in the initial phases of the experiment and hence, would have provided greater resolution of the effects following the introduction of their respective adjunct agent in the secondary phase. Although for the purposes of studying the degree of substratum mineralisation, the length of time for the sections are exposed is an important aspect to control. Therefore, the continuation of an experiment which includes enamel lesions as an assessable parameter with the hopes of achieving a steady state would result in an incompatibility of, arguably, the most important aspect of the caries process (the lesions which are ultimately produced).

9.4.1 Microbial Composition in Response to Agent Exposures
Nevertheless, some interesting observations were made based on viable counts of the biofilms which were produced. FA (Figure 9.3.1) continued to increase in Exp. S until a relatively stable state was reached between the 14th and 16th days of the experiment. In comparison, the introduction of NaF resulted in a reduction in viable counts indicating some antimicrobial effect of NaF on the wider biofilm community [Bowden, 1990; Marquis, 1995b]. However, the introduction of NaF with Ca-lactate did not show this immediate reduction (Figure 9.3.1). This may have been due to the relative availability of fluoride within the biofilm. For fluoride to exhibit its antimicrobial or inhibitory effects, it must be present as the free ion in solution so to allow for the formation of HF and therefore cross microbial cell membranes where its effect of dissipating ΔpH [Kashket and Kashket, 1985; Sutton et al., 1987], cytoplasmic acidification and enzyme inhibition [Curran et al., 1994] can occur. If the formation of mineral reservoirs is favoured (such as during the addition of Ca-lactate) then less fluoride would be available to partake in the processes of metabolic inhibition.

Assuming that a reduction in the antimicrobial activity of the fluoride ion was in fact the source of this depression in viable counts, the comparative effects on a more resistant population may serve to support this view. Lactobacillus spp. are known to possess resistance to NaF exposure [Green and Dodd, 1957; Sutton et al., 1987] and the lack of any noticeable change following the introduction of NaF would support this capacity (Figure 9.3.2) although there did appear to be some level of
suppression at work where viable counts within both Exp. S and Exp. SNC, appeared to increase. However, it should be noted that a reduced susceptibility to fluoride does not equate to total residence. The fact that viable counts did not increase further in Exp. SN but did in Exp. S and Exp. SNC may be in some way related to the removal of the antimicrobial effect of fluoride.

A much more obvious change was seen in *Streptococcus* spp. following both the introduction of NaF and NaF in conjunction with Ca-lactate (Figure 9.3.3). Interestingly, this effect appeared more pronounced in the Ca-lactate condition. Further to this, MS appeared to be least effected by the combined exposure of Ca-lactate and NaF (Figure 9.3.4). These relationships therefore become more difficult to explain. As discussed previously, cation binding may play a role in bridging gram positive cocci such as *Streptococcus* spp. [Rose, 2000a] and although the EPS provides a matrix in which these cell are embedded [Leme et al., 2006], disruption of the calcium bridging mechanism can lead to an increase in the volume between cells [Rose and Turner, 1998]. Further to this, fluoride may disrupt this mechanism [Rose et al., 1996]. The introduction of fluoride may have therefore promoted dispersal whereas excess calcium led to saturation of the mono-dentate calcium bridges. Alternatively, this particular community may have been more sensitive to the deleterious effects of fluoride [Marquis et al., 2003] or calcium [Trombe et al., 1992]; these mechanisms could have induced dispersal of *Streptococcus* spp. either mechanistically or in response to the environmental stress respectively.

Within the MS group, as similar reduction occurred in the biofilms exposed to sucrose only (Exp. S) as to what was found in the for *Streptococcus* spp. as a whole indicating that the proportion of MS to *Streptococcus* spp. did not change significantly in this group and, on closer inspection, the same was true within Exp. SN. To this end, the only clear difference was when the *Streptococcus* spp. in Exp. SNC were compared to MS within this same experiment. In this instance, the proportion of non-MS bacteria fell to an extremely small proportion of the *Streptococcus* spp. group. A similar albeit lesser effect was also noted in previous dCDFF experiments (Figure 8.3.3 compared with Figure 8.3.4). However, an enrichment of MS occurred in both conditions and therefore the actual effect of a combined Ca-lactate exposure may not have been responsible. Rather, natural population shifts [Skopek et al., 1993] may have exerted a combined effect with a decrease in the ionic fluoride within the biofilm. If the inhibitory effects of fluoride were lifted following exposure to NaF and Ca-lactate then the ecological advantage of MS would be afforded as described within the EPH [Marsh, 1994]. However, without measurements of PF fluoride, the exact cause of this relationship remains unclear although a reduction in the non-MS bacteria in favour of MS is nevertheless indicative of a more acidic or cariogenic biofilm [Bradshaw and Marsh, 1998].
Viable counts of *Veillonella spp.* were obtained only for Exp. S and Exp. SNC (Figure 9.3.5). Here, viable counts were variable but appeared to remain higher under exposure to NaF and Ca-lactate whereas in the absence of these agents viable counts of *Veillonella spp.* were reduced over the course of the experiment. This result was not observed previously and would therefore indicate that *Veillonella spp.* within these biofilms performed differently than was previously noted (Figure 8.3.5). As with previously described groups, analysis of the PF may have shed further light on the reasons for this result. However, in addressing the initial aims of this study, the use of a lead-in phase before the introduction of the adjunct agents [Deng et al., 2005] was effective in a sense that the variations in the microbial were able to be compared to a period before the agent was introduced. However, comparisons between conditions were limited in that the microbial composition between subsequent sCDFF experiments was initially dissimilar. Factors such as these are known to complicate matters when using microcosm inocula [Sissons, 1997; Tatevosian, 1988] and although a relatively comparable culture can be created [Kinniment et al., 1996] the control of this by way of sharing the inoculum is the most effective means described to date [Deng and ten Cate, 2004; Hope et al., 2012]. Therefore, the use of a shared microsomal inoculum within a sCDFF design may prove more effective in controlling variation between the initial phases of the experiments.

**9.4.2 TMR of sCDFF Exposed Enamel Disks**

In continuation of this point, differences were apparent in the initial state of the lesions which were produced in each of the sCDFF experiments. This may have contributed to the progression of the lesions as caries lesions have been shown to respond differently given their initial condition [Lynch and ten Cate, 2006]. In explanation of the difference, viable counts of highly acidogenic *Lactobacillus spp.* (Figure 9.3.2) were higher in the initial phase of Exp. SNC indicating a more cariogenic state of the biofilm within this condition. However, *Veillonella spp.* were also higher (Figure 9.3.5) and these species have been shown to augment cariogenicity, reducing caries when present in elevated proportions of the biofilm community [Mikx et al., 1972]. However, the balance between acid production and consumption is central to this process [Mikx et al., 1976] and therefore the actual metabolic activity within these biofilms is important to consider.

Ultimately, cariogenicity is defined by the ability to produce caries lesions and to this end, caries lesions were produced within each of the enamel sections which were sampled. Further to this, the introduction of NaF and NaF in conjunction with Ca-lactate appeared to inhibit demineralisation of what can be defined as cariogenic biofilm as opposed to inhibiting the production of a cariogenic state as was observed during investigations under conditions of biofilm formation.
The results are similar to previous experiments which have shown that the introduction of NaF exposures prevent demineralisation by elevating fluoride within the plaque biofilm [Tenuta et al., 2008; Vogel et al., 2000]. Furthermore, the increased demineralisation which was seen during exposure to both NaF and Ca-lactate when compared to NaF alone (Table 8.3.1) was previously attributed to natural variations in the enamel tissue (Section 8.4.3) however, this result was again found in the present study. It is therefore less reasonable to assume that the additive effect of Ca-lactate was purely beneficial and therefore some negative effect may occur as a result of the introduction of this agent. Negative effects of Ca-lactate itself have not been demonstrated on enamel mineralisation although the Ca-lactate salt has been shown to be less effective than other possible alternative such as Ca-acetate or Ca-propionate [Brudevold et al., 1985]. The reasons for this were explained on the basis of both disassociate of the calcium ion and the buffering capacity of the salt base. Lactate may complex with calcium [Gray and Francis, 1963] with a relatively higher affinity than other bases which do not contribute to buffering capacity but for which complete disassociation would be expected [Brudevold et al., 1985]. However, within a saturated solution, neutralised lactate alone would not promote demineralisation.

Brief exposure of plaque biofilm to fluoride is restricted with the greatest concentration found in the surface of the biofilm [Watson et al., 2005] and under higher driving forces for mineral precipitation (ie. elevated plaque calcium), a greater proportion of fluoride deposition may have occurred in the outer layers of the biofilm which were exposure (Figure 9.4.1). Therefore, fluoride-containing mineral deposits may also be restricted away from the enamel surface. The release of mineral ions from these reservoirs [Pearce, 1998] may also be partially limited to the areas in which they form.

Figure 9.4.1 (Fluoride Penetration as a Function of Plaque Calcium): Hypothetical illustration of fluoride deposition with or without elevated calcium; a) Plaque biofilm relatively lower in free calcium ions; b) Plaque biofilm relatively higher in free calcium ions; c) key relating calcium and fluoride concentrations as indicated by the intensity of the gradient.

Analysis of the entire biofilm structure would not capture the spatial distribution of these reservoirs as they would exist within the biofilm and therefore the results obtained in the previous studies
Effect of NaF and Ca-Lactate vs. dH₂O Exposures on the Cariogenicity of Established Biofilm Communities | Ch. 9

(Section 8.3.5) which centred on PF analysis would not provide a measure of the ionic composition of the phase in immediate contact with then enamel surface. Rather an average composition of the entire fluid phase within the plaque would be collected. In some respects, this can be regarded as a limitation of the analysis methods which were previously applied however, as discussed above, analysis of the degree of mineralisation within the enamel substratum provides a definitive results concerning the ultimate efficacy of any given agent.

Nevertheless, one fundamental limitation of the experimental design of the sCDFF is the assumption that each biofilm within each condition behaved in a similar manner. Continual inoculation by way of the scraper blade would help to maintain a relatively constant environment within each unit however sites-specific variations in the ecology between samples is a possibility. This may have led to a greater degree of mineral loss in the sections which were extracted on the 16th day of Exp. SNC before the agent was introduced. Thus, the additive effect of Ca-lactate may have in fact been to reverse the effects of, or inhibit, demineralisation although this was not captured in the samples which were analysed. It should also be noted that heterogeneity between biofilm samples is likely to be exacerbated by the use of a larger (15 pan) CDFF when compared to the smaller units (8 pan) used in previous dCDFF experiments.

Ultimately, proof of concept was achieved [Deng et al., 2005] in that a period of growth prior to the commencement of the exposure period provide further information thus enabling a period of quantification irrespective of exposure to adjust agents. However, issues with the variability of the microcosm biofilms [Sissons, 1997; Tatevossian, 1988] were nevertheless identified as a cause disparity between the activity of the biofilms in the initial phase of the experiments. Furthermore, in the case of biological models which include a lead-in period [Deng et al., 2005] such as the sCDFF, the use of non-biological models to produced pre-made lesions (as was applied in Section 8.2.0) may not be an effective means of controlling this issue as even pre-made lesions would be subject to these same issues. In this case, variability may be controlled by moving away from the use of a microcosm inoculum and testing the effects of a given agent (or agents) on single- [Deng et al., 2005; Pratten, 2005; Pratten et al., 1998b] or multi-species [Bradshaw et al., 2002; McKee et al., 1985] biofilms should be applied. However, contrary to the benefits of this strategy, key interactions of the microcosm inoculum may be lost when such defined cultures are used [Burmolle et al., 2006; Sissons, 1997; Tatevossian, 1988; Wimpenny, 1988] and therefore any presumed effects should also be tested with the use of a microcosm [Pratten et al., 1998b; Sissons, 1997] as even given a propensity for variation, the microcosm is ultimately a closer approximation to the natural in vivo situation and therefore provides the greatest clinical relevance of an in vitro model.
9.5.0 Conclusions
Ca-Lactate pre-rinses within resulted in a reduction of the viable counts of key microbial species within biofilms when compared to pre-rinses consisting of dH$_2$O. Given the parameters introduced, it is concluded that an effect of increased plaque lactate may provide some inhibitory effect on microorganisms which use the cytoplasmic expulsion of this end product to generate energy by proton motive force ($\Delta$pH) [Hamilton and Ng, 1983]. However, microbial groups which do not depend on this mechanism for energy production (eg. *Veillonella* spp.) were also affected. Therefore, it appears that the effect of Ca-lactate on the microbial community reach further than this mechanism alone. Elevated calcium, the persistence of biological an inorganic mineral reservoirs and variation in the primary culture [Ledder et al., 2006] may all contribute to the observed results and therefore deserve further investigation.

Comparisons between the results obtained from the initial and secondary phases for each experiment also enable true relationships to be identified within the particular communities present within each sCDFF run. From this, the concept of a lead-in period before the introduction of the agent to be tested is also concluded as an effective means of assessing the effect(s) of an exposure strategy [Deng et al., 2005]. However, the variation in the biofilm community is still a significant issue; particularly with the use of microcosm biofilms. Ultimately, further information can be gained from the use of more complex inocula [Sissons, 1997] but this benefit is gained at a cost of the resolution in the results that are collected.

As the results of the sCDFF experiments were somewhat dissimilar to that of the dCDFF experiments which focused on exposure during biofilm formation, entire comparisons were not possible also a significant insight was achieved in that the protection conferred by Ca-lactate pre-rinses is less effective on fully formed biofilms. Thus, further work is needed in order to ascertain the effects of Ca-lactate pre-rinses on both biofilm formation and, in particular, the relative efficacy of this strategy in preventing enamel demineralisation. In particular, spatial organisation of mineral deposits should be investigated as a function of the DS of the biofilm with respect to relevant mineral phases.

Interestingly, Ca-lactate pre-rinses were no more effective that NaF exposures alone when considering remineralisation efficacy. In this instance, elevation of biofilm calcium may have resulted in an excessive driving force for remineralisation and therefore limited the depth at which such supposed mineral deposits form within the biofilm itself. However, the negative effects observed may have been the result of a limitation of the CDFF model as the behaviour of mineral phases within this system is expected to be different from the conditions *in vivo.*
Chapter 10: General Discussion

Abiotic model systems afford a level of clarity in their use which enables specific chemical interactions to be investigated in detail [Arends, 1995; Arends and Christoffersen, 1986; White, 1995]. However, these systems are unable to simulate dental caries in its entirety due to the fact that a biological element is purposefully removed. Nevertheless, well-designed abiotic experiments may be used to accurately determine the effects of individual aspects of a complex process [Vogel, 2011]. Their ease of use allows their application whilst consuming minimal resources and, with this in mind, abiotic model systems were initially employed to produce caries lesions in artificial groove structures. Ultimately this led to the rejection of assembled grooves on the basis of the efficacy of the method itself however the fact that such an intricate surface was able to be explored provides further support for this view [Arends, 1995; White, 1995]; elucidation of the factors responsible for the results observed would not have been possible had a biological caries model been used in this instance as the behaviour of the demineralising challenges would have lacked the level of conformity needed.

Further to this, abiotic systems were also used to investigate enamel demineralisation within narrowed grooves carved directly into the surface of polished sections of bovine incisal tissue. These result were able to indicate that enamel demineralisation within the groove was possible, as has been produced by others [Smits and Arends, 1986; Yassin, 1995], but the processing of enamel sections for analysis by TMR is difficult due to the fragility of the tissue [Lagerweij et al., 1996]. Albeit indiscriminate with respect to the sections that were affected, the propensity to fracture was identified early on. This again provided an advantage in that further studies can anticipate this complication and adjustments were made to quantify further aspects of the biological systems, thus reducing losses. It addition to this, the specifics of the processes involved in using enamel sections were also able to be investigated. Even given the previous reports of fragility noted above, an attempt to apply this protocol was not without merit as further development of skill may have, or may still allow for, the extraction of high quality data. The reports of Anderson and Elliot [2000] were also corroborated and incorporated into the theoretical progression within enamel groove structures. Had enamel grooves proved effective for analysis by TMR, patterns of demineralisation should be interpreted on the basis of variable rates of mineral loss on the approach to the EDJ due both to prism junction density [Shellis, 1984, 1996] and composition variations in the tissue itself [Theuns et al., 1986a; Theuns et al., 1986b].
Abiotic systems may also be used in conjunction with biological models to address the issues associated with the reproducibility of plaque biofilms [Sissons, 1997; Tatevossian, 1988]. Within the context of the experiments presented, this was applied in instances where remineralisation was expected such as under dual exposure to caries inhibiting agents (Chapter 8). However, caries lesions may also be produced within the CDFF before the introduction of an agent and this approach would allow for the effects of the agent to be assessed on both an active lesion and on a cariogenic biofilm community. Deng et al. [2005] were first to explore this concept. With the use of a microcosm inoculum, issues relating to the reproducibility of the biofilm community between runs [Hope et al., 2012] was most likely the cause of difference in the state of the lesions before the introduction of the agents tested (Chapter 9). However, within each of the sCDFF experiments, proof of concept [Deng et al., 2005] was achieved in that it was possible to ascertain more definite relationships without the confounding effects of the adjunct agent(s) on the processes of initial attachment and biofilm development; the differences upon maturity which may result from alterations in initial colonisation [Ledder et al., 2006; Sissons et al., 1995] were effectively removed.

10.1 Efficacy of the CDFF Models for Caries Research
Several other model systems are available which include a microbial element [Dibdin and Wimpenny, 1999; Sissons, 1997; Wilson, 1999]. In theory, the relationships which have been demonstrated in the current work could also be demonstrated with the use of other in vitro biological models although unlike the other systems currently available, the CDFF is able to mimic a pattern of acid production which is similar to that which results in natural microbial biofilm communities as was demonstrated in Chapter 6. By design [Peters and Wimpenny, 1988], the CDFF mimics aspect of the oral environment through the flow of the growth medium (STGM) over the surfaces of the microbial biofilms in much the same way as would occur in the natural oral environment [Sissons, 1997; Wilson, 1999]. Further to this, what has been proven throughout the studies presented in this thesis is that this model is able to produce enamel caries lesions which are ultimately the most definitive marker of biofilm cariogenicity.

This was similar to the experiments conducted by Zaura et al. [2011] however, within the model we have designed, PF composition was measured as opposed to the total organic acid content of the biofilm (including that within the cells themselves). Whilst the work of Zaura et al. [2011] provides great insight into the metabolic activity of the collective community, the PF concentrations of organic acid species were not determined in the form which they would interact with the enamel tissue. Further to this, mineral ions relevant to the caries process were also collected within the works presented in this thesis. To date, such a comprehensive analysis of organic acids and inorganic ions has not been performed within the CDFF model.
The production of caries lesions has been shown in various in vitro biological models [Arthur et al., 2013; Deng and ten Cate, 2004; Deng et al., 2005; Fontana et al., 1996; Shu et al., 2000; Zaura et al., 2002; Zaura and ten Cate, 2004; Zaura et al., 2005] however the production of enamel caries within the CDFF model has not previously been shown. Of the CDFF studies conducted, dentine was employed as a substrate [Deng et al., 2004; Deng and ten Cate, 2004; Deng et al., 2005; Zaura et al., 2011; Zaura et al., 2002; Zaura and ten Cate, 2004; Zaura et al., 2005] or enamel lesion were produced following a cariogenic challenge external to the CDFF unit [Aires et al., 2006; Arthur et al., 2013].

High levels of microbial variation occur with the use of a pooled salivary inoculum [Sissons, 1997] however the use of this pooled source should ensure a degree of conformity between aliquots [Dietz, 1943]. Even when a relatively extensive level of processing is applied, bacterial aggregation invariably results in some level of inhomogeneity [Hope et al., 2012] and although the vast majority of parameters are controlled with the use of a CDFF [Pratten, 2005], even minor differences in the inoculum can be amplified in primary culture [Ledder et al., 2006] and hence in the biofilms which are produced. In a sense the difference observed between biofilm compositions in Chapter 9 (before the introduction of the adjunct agent) and between sequential repeats in Chapter 7 could be attributed to this source.

The dCDFF model was developed to prevent variation as much as possible between microcosm inocula [Hope et al., 2012]. However, in a robust series of experiments conducted by Hope et al. [2012] variation was apparent between both CDFF units on the dCDFF model although this variation was considerably less than that which occur between CDFF units which did not share the same primary culture (i.e. those which made use of separate a inoculum between each run). The cause of this residual variation is yet to be described in full however this may be due to chance variations in the initial colonisation stages [Ledder et al., 2006]. In much the same way that aggregates can lead to differences in the primary inoculum, aggregation within the primary culture could also lead to an inhomogeneity in the inoculum which is fed into either unit of the dCDFF model.

Controlling this variation is an extremely difficult process and, to some extent, may not be achieved with consistency when using the current operating procedures. However, further precautions such as the use of a steady-state culture within chemostat to inoculate both dCDFF units [Bradshaw et al., 2002; Kinniment et al., 1996] would help to control for variations which arise from an altered microbial composition within the inoculum [Bakht et al., 2009; Ledder et al., 2006]. For these reasons, assessment of the microbial population alone may provide much less information on the factors which relate to caries lesion formation than could be gained from in-depth chemical analysis.
of the system. In the present works, the lesions which were produced exhibited a level of biological variation which was reflective of that which was observed in the microbial population. Moreover, organic acid responses also appeared somewhat variable however within the context of each experimental design. The consideration of these parameters in conjunction did prove an effective means of meeting the initial aims and objective of each. Thus, microcosm biofilm may be inherently variable but nevertheless represent laboratory models of the natural system from which relevant relationships originate and may also evolve [Wimpenny, 1988]. In this sense, each of the responses which were investigated were able to demonstrate a valid relationship although it should be remembered that other responses may also be possible due to an in-built adaptive capacity of the microcosm biofilm [Buchen, 2010; Molin and Tolker-Nielsen, 2003].

One limitation of the CDFF model is the sampling constraints which are associated. This relates to both the treatment and handling of the samples within proper operating conditions [Pratten, 2005] and the number of sampling occasions which are provided by each CDFF run. The most appropriate in vitro biological models should provide high number of samples [Dibdin and Wimpenny, 1999] however, the CDFF is only able to provide samples to a limited extent. Each unit allows for only finite number of sampling occasions and these are defined by the number of sample pans. Aseptic removal is another prerequisite of operation [Dibdin and Wimpenny, 1999; Pratten, 2005] and therefore does not permit the re-insertion of sample pan once removed because of the risk of external contamination once the unit has commenced operation. Without the range of endogenous factors present in vivo [Auschill et al., 2004], external contamination has the potential to result in overgrowth of organisms which are not typical of the oral environment and thus a form of colonisation resistance [Marsh and Martin, 2009a] from the formation or maintenance of a cariogenic biofilm. In such situations, concomitant measurements of acidogenicity and substratum mineralisation would be possible but would, almost by definition, be un-representative of the situation caries occurring in vivo.

Nevertheless the ability of the CDFF to produce an adequate amount of data is for the interpretation of the effects of anti-caries agents or strategies was possible; when interdisciplinary techniques are applied (such as measurements of the microbial ecology, PF composition and the degree of substratum mineralisation), a wealth of information can be acquired. However, due to the sampling constraints discussed above, the choice of which techniques should be applied must be considered carefully. In fact the sheer number of parameters which have been collected from the current work may have been investigated from several angles and to this end the conclusions drawn from this
thesis are by no means exhaustive but, relative to this caries process, these factors should be viewed as a whole.

If the variation which exists between biofilms can be controlled in a more effective way then the potential of the CDFF model may be even greater. As was attempted within the study presented in Chapter 9, the production of a reproducible culture was investigated by the use of a lead-in period [Deng et al., 2005] before the introduction of any adjunct agent (sCDFF) and afford a much greater level of confidence in the results which are produced. Variation between sCDFF runs was an issue [Hope et al., 2012] however within each experiment, the comparisons made following the introduction of the agents alone or in combination was able to demonstrate an interesting relationship in that the combined effect of NaF and Ca-lactate appeared to be less beneficial than the effect of NaF exposures alone. Technical complications aside, the CDFF provides a powerful means by which both existing chemical relationships and new adjunct agent(s) can be tested within a biological context. This provides a great advantage over the use of in situ trial in that the cost of producing a single run is much less than that which is would be needed to provide a similar advance if an in situ model or clinical trials were in place.

10.2 Investigating the Effects of Adjunct Agents
Previously established relationships can be demonstrated within the CDFF model (Chapter 6). Previously, the CDFF has however been used as a tool to investigate dental caries and has also demonstrated the effects adjunct agents on cariogenic biofilms by way of the degree of dentine demineralisation [Deng and ten Cate, 2004; Deng et al., 2005; Zaura et al., 2011]. However, with respect to enamel caries, the work present within this thesis is the first to be conducted and to this end, definitive caries lesions [Arends and Christoffersen, 1986] were produced. In refection, the diversity of these lesions was at times considerable although in comparisons to that which occurs in in vivo [Fejerskov et al., 2008b], the CDFF model was seen to exert a degree of control over the suggestively uncontrollable [White, 1995] process of biological lesion formation.

Some authors were able to induce remineralisation in dentine grooves when both 0.2% chlorhexidine digluconate and 135 ppm F (from NaF) were introduced to a mono-species culture of Streptococcus mutans C180-2 [Deng et al., 2005]. Interestingly a much greater reduction in lactic acid was induced under exposure to NaF in their studies illustrating the susceptibility of this species to NaF exposures. However, within the present works MS appeared much less susceptible to NaF exposures indicating the greater resistance of microcosm biofilms when compared to their single species counterparts [Gilbert et al., 2002; Sissons, 1997] and further supporting the need for applications of microcosm biofilm research within caries research. Whether the observed results
were a product of interactions between members the microcosm community or due to variations in the initial microbial lineage which gave rise to the particular plaque biofilm remains to be explored.

As was demonstrated in Chapter 7 and Chapter 9, NaF exposures which are representative of those suggested for normal oral hygiene [Parnell and O'Mullane, 2013] provide some modulatory effect on the plaque community within the CDFF model, however this response was not consistent with respect to the microbial composition of the biofilms which were reproduced. Nevertheless, a consistent response was seen in the inhibition of demineralisation. This aspect of the system was therefore shown to provide the most definitive response factor. Whereas others such as the PF composition and the state of the microbial lineage which gave rise to the particular plaque biofilm remains to be explored.

Ca-lactate exposures show some inhibitory activity on the microbial community and this may be a result of the inhibitory effect of lactate exposure on bacterial cells [Hamilton and Ng, 1983] although the heightened concentrations of calcium may also play some role within this response. It should be noted that killing efficacy was not measured within the present studies and therefore the results based on viable counts would only be a reflection of growth or the potential to grow. Thus, antimicrobial activity of either of the agents involved (or in conjunction with each other) cannot be confirmed. An inhibitory effect on the biofilm (antibiofilm) or the proliferation within (antiproliferative) was however observed following exposure to Ca-lactate which was less apparent under NaF exposures alone. In this sense, the anticaries effect of Ca-lactate pre-rinse may reach further than the essentially inorganic mechanisms proposed thus far [Pessan et al., 2006; Vogel et al., 2008].

Unfortunately it was not possible to determine exactly to what extent the STGM would alter bacterial adhesion and thus biofilm formation from that which would be expected in vivo. However the medium was known to consist of several substances which would help to mediate adhesion to the surface of and HA or enamel substrate. Furthermore, it should be noted that some early colonisers (Streptococcus spp.) are able to adhere to bare HA surfaces [Tanaka et al., 1996]. Nevertheless, given the fact that a CDF model enables the strict control almost every parameter associated with its operation, the model lends itself well to many of the applications which have previously required the use of non-biological systems. For example, providing evidence of strict physiochemical mechanisms involved in caries lesion formation as was applied in Chapter 5, contributing the knowledge of an ambivalent response within a fixed environment (Chapter 6), or investigating plaque-mediated reservoirs as was conducted in Chapter 7, Chapter 8 and Chapter 9.
For future applications in such research, the growth medium used should however be altered as without complete knowledge of the medium to which the biofilms are exposed, the applicability of this model to in vivo situations is limited [Shellis, 1978; Wong and Sissions, 2001].

Of course, the pooled salivary samples [Dietz, 1943] used to inoculate CDFFs introduce some of the factors which can confound in situ and clinical trials; this being variation in the microbial consort [Ledder et al., 2006]. However, the human element of this situation is reduced by the removal of the personal factors. Factors specific to the oral environment such as the flow rate of saliva, the physical structure of the surface, and the composition of the medium in contact within the plaque biofilm (Figure 1.1) are effectively controlled. However, with the use of a microcosm inoculum the microbial element appears to remain problematic with respect to interpretations and possibly function although defining the activity of the biofilm based on the latter may be a more effective means by which to contribute to this area of research [Sissons, 1997].

The relatively recent appreciation of microbial biofilms and the myriad of interactions which can take place within calls for a microbial community which retains the collective physiological capacity of a natural plaque biofilm and therefore the use of a microcosm inoculum to study the effects of preventative agents [Sissons, 1997] such as NaF and Ca-lactate and their relationships within such biofilms should be explored further.

What remains to be seen is can the plaque biofilm revert back to a less cariogenic state once the ecology has been directed towards the induction of caries? Microbial populations have demonstrated the ability to regenerate following severe destruction of the original community [Buchen, 2010] and, within the EPH [Marsh, 1994], the physiological state is determined by the plaque ecology which is dictated by the relative advantages or disadvantages of members within the community. In the case of caries, acid production (acidogenicity) and acid tolerance (aciduricity) provide an advantage over those organisms which lack such capacities. However, although some acid sensitive oral streptococci, such as *Streptococcus sanguinis*, have a greater affinity for sucrose than cariogenic species such as *Streptococcus mutans* [van der Hoeven et al., 1985], it has been demonstrated that the acidity of the medium is responsible for the advantage posed by acidogenic microorganisms as opposed to their ability to utilise sugars [Bradshaw et al., 1989]. Thus, logically, the removal of this advantage may result in a reversion to a less cariogenic state as the microbial community adjusts to suit the members for which the environmental conditions are optimal. The exact response of biofilm under these or any conditions which are imposed is only truly able to be demonstrated once all relevant species are included within the community. Thus, the microcosm biofilm comprises a difficult although essential avenue for in vitro research.
10.3 Clinical Relevance
In planning clinical trials, difficulties are met in that cost of running such an investigation adds a significant weight to each of the decisions which are made during this process. Often, the need to ensure that the most effective avenue of research is met through extensive literature search and comparisons of other, presumably, similar interventions. However, this approach, whilst accepted on the basis of need, is by no means the most effective way to proceed as the plethora of extraneous variables inherent in such situations can easily lead to unexpected results. Although this is not always the case, any such unknown quantity has the potential to invalidate the outcome. The CDFF can be used to estimate the outcome of a specific intervention to a much greater degree of accuracy that has previously been thought. Thus, the clinical relevance of a fully functional biological caries model such as those described within this thesis would prove extremely valuable for predicting the role of multispecies oral biofilm communities in the caries process.

In addition to this, an agent may be expected to show some effect in a clinical setting from data which is available from more simple in vitro models. In this case, clinical trials may be justified only to find that the agent is not effective when tested on a microcosm community or on cariogenic biofilms living in the true biofilm form. An example of such an instance can be found in studies cited previously and in the outcomes which were observed. Bradshaw et al. [1990] demonstrated that, in a defined multispecies community, exposure to fluoride caused a significant alteration to the ecology within their biological model. Initially, it could be concluded that such an exposure would have the same effect clinically. However, as was observed within the works presented within this thesis, this was certainly not the case when a more complex biological model was applied. In the case of fluoride, this result may perhaps not have been surprising as fluoride has been in use for over 50 years; thus a definitive effect on enamel demineralisation with a variable effect on plaque ecology has been well document within the literature [Duckworth, 2013] but the fact that extensive clinical research has been conducted in the past only serves to strengthen the use of the CDFF as a concordance with observations from a clinical setting was found. In essence, any new agent or exposure strategy can first be tested within the CDFF model before embarking on costly clinical trials therefore saving funds which can then be spend more appropriately; furthering wider areas of research by removing, arguably, the most prominent limitation of clinical research [NIH, 2001].

10.4 Future Perspectives
One of the most interesting results to be captured within the present work was apparent remineralisation upon exposure NaF and NaF following Ca-Lactate pre-rinses (Figure 8.3.8). In these instances, not only was enamel remineralisation captured within the CDFF system but fine differences between the effectiveness of Ca-Lactate pre-rinses and NaF exposures alone were also
identified. As discussed above, these observations provided a substantial level on insight into the possibly benefits (or lack thereof) of the use of a Ca-Lactate pre-rinse in vivo. However, the foresight to include pre-made enamel lesions within the CDFF system may have much further implications than this particular example alone. Exploring the effects of therapeutic agents which are thought to augment the process of enamel demineralisation clearly has its own merit in that the discovery of an agent or strategy which can inhibit demineralisation may have important uses in the fight against dental decay. However, the fact of the matter remains that carious demineralisation occurs worldwide and for many individuals. Therefore, the reversal of the demineralisation experience would be necessary to restore affected individuals to their optimum state of oral health. Thus, exploring strategies or agents which may promote remineralisation is of particular interest and, as has been demonstrated in the experiments presented thus far, is also a distinct possibility.

![Figure 10.1 (Control of Bi-Phasic Fluoride Exposures):](image)

Figure 10.1 (Control of Bi-Phasic Fluoride Exposures): By varying the flow rates of two solutions fed into the same CDFF inlet (300 ppm F\(^-\) and dH\(_2\)O) a bi-phasic fluoride exposure can be set to mimic that found within the oral environment. In the above example, the net flow rate is maintained at 3 mL.min\(^{-1}\) for the purposes of clarity however, salivary flow rates can be introduced by simple manipulation of the mathematical equations used (as can reservoir release stages). Bi-phasic fluoride release data obtained from Duckworth [1993].

One of the original perspectives provided by the work presented within this thesis was that the effect of fluorides on biofilm ecology were investigated using an exposure strategy which could be expected of the average individual [Parnell and O'Mullane, 2013] living in a non-fluoridated area. Another interesting area to explore would thus be a continuation of this theme. Although exposure from dentifrice would be limited to the time with which the slurry persisted within the oral cavity, it
is now well understood that exposure to fluoride is not [Duckworth, 1993]. In the majority of individuals, fluoride persists within the oral cavity from gradual release of multiple reservoirs resulting in a bi-phasic delivery (Figure 10.1) [Duckworth, 1993, 2013]. Simple modifications to the equipment could easily enable this aspect of in vivo persistence to be explored. For example, by having one solution consisting of dH₂O and another of 300 ppm F⁻ fed into the same inlet port, varying the flow rate between the two solutions during a during an exposure would allow for the amount of F⁻ delivered to each biofilm to be precisely controlled (Figure 10.1) therefore enabling investigations on the effects of this phenomenon to be explored.

Variation with respect viable counts of microcosm communities was without a doubt a significant issue within the present work. However, it was concluded that initial variation between dCDFF units was, in part, responsible for the observed results. As discussed above, this argument formed the pretence which led to the development of the sCDFF model. In practice, initial variation between biofilms may also play a significant part within this model however the potential of the sCDFF to enable much more accurate comparisons between CDFF experiments remains. Unfortunately, development past this point was not pursued although integration of the sCDFF and dCDFF models may have provided a major advance in the effective functionality of the CDFF. With a sequential element within the dCDFF apparatus, the reduction in variable afforded by the use of a shared microcosm inoculum [Hope et al., 2012] could be qualified within each experiment by an initial lead-in period [Deng and ten Cate, 2004]. With this amendment, not only would initial variation be expected to be reduced but all benefits provided by the sCDFF would be conferred to the dCDFF model. Cariogenicity, metabolic activity and microbial composition could all be compared in much greater confidence than ever before with the additional benefit of a relative point to compared between completely separate experiments. In effect, the best of both approaches would be available therefore providing an extremely powerful system for use in future research.

Moreover, past endeavours which sought to address the issues associated with multi-species biofilms [Bradshaw et al., 2002; Deng et al., 2004; Mattos-Graner et al., 2000; Pratten et al., 1998b; Shu et al., 2000; Valappil et al., 2013] are by no means redundant. With the use of a microcosm inoculum, ambiguity in the results obtained may remain an unavoidable complication and therefore the discovery of discrete interactions may continue to prove elusive. With this in mind, a pertinent step would be not to dismiss the use of simpler microbial innocula but rather to run systems consisting of a defined culture based on evidence gained through experiments based on microcosa. However, in many respects the practical implications of such efforts may prove to be a sever limitation and would therefore need to be based on sound scientific reasoning; judging the cost of
time spent against the potential for scientific discovery. Within the present work, this was not a particular issue as all events witness were able to be explained on the basis of information which was already available although, had such a situation arose, dissection of the superoragnism [Buchen, 2010] to reveal the basis of an observed functionality would certainly have been pursued.

However, the ability to employ a microcosm biofilm would always be an essential quality for any system which aims to fully simulate the natural oral environment. In this sense, a simplified model would never possess the full capacity of one which includes a microcosm source [Wimpenny, 1988]. But if such an all-inclusive approach is to be maintained, analytical techniques which are able to accurately capture changes to this community must also be employed [Nyard et al., 2013]. To this end, the assessment of full community profiles should be applied [Aas et al., 2005] in place of the traditional culture techniques used within the present work. The wealth of information which would thus be gained from each run may, to some extent, be clouded by those which serve no purpose toward the function of the biofilm. Nevertheless, if this information is not available then no further insight can be gained. Furthermore, traditional culture was used within the present works to serve as a marker of the generalised community structure; to link these \textit{in vitro} biofilms to those which are found \textit{in vivo} and to further provide an indication as to plaque function based on the relative proportions of acidogenic, aciduric or cross-feeding community members [Marsh and Martin, 2009a; Spratt and Pratten, 2003] and the fact remains that, if molecular biology approaches were applied, this same information could be attained with the further potential for much more and at no expense to the current functionality of the model itself.

One aspect which was not presently addressed was the role of biofilm thickness on the caries process. Recently, mathematical modelling has demonstrated that a relationship exists between caries lesion formation and thickness of the plaque layer [Ilie et al., 2013]. Analogous to the efforts of Bollet-Quivogne et al. [2005], investigations into the effect of the thickness of the diffusion layer (in the present case, the plaque biofilm itself) may also be warranted as this could reveal previously unknown relationships that exist between such a dimension and the development of caries. Moreover, the accurate determination of such a parameter may also show direct clinical relevance in that the diagnostic ability of healthcare professionals would be improved. Until now, no model system has been able to provide the level of controlled afforded by the CDFF but, with its advent, such a parameter could easily be tested. In summation, the perspectives discussed above are by no means exhaustive. Some amendments to the model may be within closer reach than others but ultimately, the application of this system is limited only the imagination of the investigator.
10.5 General Conclusions

In developing a fully functional biological caries model, the aims of this thesis were met in full. Not only were carious lesions formed within the dCDFF model but the aim was, in fact, surpassed by the further development of an alternative model, the sCDFF. In all cases, representative microbial cultures were produced that exhibited the full range of responses expected on natural in vivo or in situ plaque. However, the current composition of the STGM should be reviewed although, with the drawbacks associated with a complete re-design of this medium, the fact that its commotion has been analysed extensively now means that its use can be justified within an approximation to the physiochemical relationships within this in vitro model being an acceptable compromise.

The extension of biochemical analyses to the PF itself also served to strengthen confidence in the CDFF model as an extremely close approximation to natural oral biofilms in that, even given a disparity between STGM and natural human saliva, microbial biofilm homeostasis was observed to maintain a PF environment irrespective of the external fluid medium. In addition to this, PF composition was found to be exceptionally similar to that found in natural oral biofilms when subjected to comparable nutritional circumstances [Gao et al., 2001; Higham and Edgar, 1989].

Conversely, in modelling occlusal surfaces, this was not entirely the case as significant technical limitations were experienced. However, the ability to monitor remineralisation was achieved. Had occlusal surface been modelled more effectively, remineralisation within these structures could also have been explored thus serving to demonstrate the breadth of functionality provided by the models which were developed. Technical complications aside [Lagerweij et al., 1996], the successful modelling of occlusal surface is an easily conceivable possibility and thus remains an avenue which can be pursued with complete certainty in the not so distant future.

In elucidating a discrete quantifiable effect of NaF exposures, the aims were also not fully met. However, the reasons for this could be traced directly back to the massive adaptive capacity of the oral biofilm itself. In a sense, a discrete effect on the microbial ecology of a microcosm biofilm was never expected to be achieved within the present work. More likely, was capturing an effect imparted on the plaque function [Sissons, 1997]. Nevertheless, strategies for which their effects could be viewed though alterations to the specific microbial ecology were found. Unfortunately, further biochemical analyses of the PF were not possible within the current operating conditions of this model however measurements of plaque pH and tests for alkali solubility of inorganic mineral reservoirs would have been a clear advantage. Although, at the expense of other aspect of the system (such as a reduction in sampling occasions), these parameters can be assessed; possibly at a later stage in a process which can be expected to require continual extension.


Duckworth RM: Fluoride in plaque and saliva; in. Amsterdam, University of Amsterdam, 1993, vol PhD.


Hamilton IR, Ng SKC: Stimulation of glycolysis through lactate consumption in a resting cell mixture of streptococcus salivarius and veillonella parvula. FEMS Microbiology Letters 1983;20:61-65.


Ilbert M, Bonnefoy V: Insight into the evolution of the iron oxidation pathways. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - Bioenergetics 2013;1827:161-175.


Kumar JV: Is water fluoridation still necessary? Advances in Dental Research 2008;20:8-12.


Lynch RJM: Zinc in the mouth, its interactions with dental enamel and possible effects on caries; a review of the literature. International Dental Journal 2011;61:46-54.


Lynch RJM, ten Cate JM: The effect of lesion characteristics at baseline on subsequent de- and remineralisation behaviour. Caries Research 2006a;40:530-535.


Margolis HC, Moreno EC, Murphy BJ: Basic biological sciences importance of high pka acids in cariogenic potential of plaque. Journal of Dental Research 1985;64:786-792.


Marsh PD: Dental plaque as a microbial biofilm. Caries Research 2004;38:204-211.


Marsh PD, Bradshaw DJ: Physiological approaches to the control of oral biofilms. Advances in Dental Research 1997;11:176-185.


Rose RK: The role of calcium in oral streptococcal aggregation and the implications for biofilm formation and retention. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - General Subjects 2000a;1475:76-82.


Rose RK, Hogg SD: Competitive binding of calcium and magnesium to streptococcal lipoteichoic acid. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - General Subjects 1995;1245:94-98.


Skopek RJ, Liljemark WF, Bloomquist CG, Rudney JD: Dental plaque development on defined streptococcal surfaces. Oral Microbiology and Immunology 1993;8:16-23.


ten Cate JM: In situ models, physico-chemical aspects. Advances in Dental Research 1994;8:125-133.


ten Cate JM: The need for antibacterial approaches to improve caries control. Advances in Dental Research 2009;21:8-12.


Thomas TD, Ellwood DC, Longyear VMC: Change from homo- to heterolactic fermentation by streptococcus lactis resulting from glucose limitation in anaerobic chemostat cultures. Journal of Bacteriology 1979;138:109-117.

Tong H, Chen W, Merritt J, Qi F, Shi W, Dong X: *Streptococcus oligofermentans* inhibits *streptococcus mutans* through conversion of lactic acid into inhibitory \( \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \): A possible counteroffensive strategy for interspecies competition. Molecular Microbiology 2007;63:872-880.


dan der Hoeven JS, de Jong MH, Camp PJM, van den Kieboom CWA: Competition between oral *streptococcus* species in the chemostat under alternating conditions of glucose limitation and excess. FEMS Microbiology Letters 1985;31:373-379.


Vogel GL, Chow LC, Carey CM: Calcium pre-rinse greatly increases overnight salivary fluoride after a 228 ppm fluoride rinse. Caries Research 2008;42:401-404.


